



**akYtec ALP v3.1**

**Programming software**

**User manual**

akYtec ALP v3.1\_3-EN-130795-2.4  
© All rights reserved  
Subject to technical changes and misprints

## Contents

|                                              |           |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>1. Introduction.....</b>                  | <b>5</b>  |
| 1.1. System requirements .....               | 5         |
| 1.2. Terms and abbreviations .....           | 5         |
| <b>2. Installation .....</b>                 | <b>7</b>  |
| <b>3. User interface.....</b>                | <b>10</b> |
| 3.1. Main menu .....                         | 10        |
| 3.2. Toolbars .....                          | 12        |
| 3.3. Library Box.....                        | 13        |
| 3.4. Property box.....                       | 16        |
| 3.5. Variable Box .....                      | 16        |
| 3.6. Workspace .....                         | 18        |
| 3.7. Status bar .....                        | 19        |
| 3.8. Display manager.....                    | 20        |
| <b>4. General information .....</b>          | <b>23</b> |
| 4.1. Program execution.....                  | 23        |
| 4.2. Project creation .....                  | 23        |
| 4.2.1. Protecting a project with a key ..... | 24        |
| 4.3. Program creation .....                  | 26        |
| 4.3.1. Text field .....                      | 28        |
| 4.3.2. Standard variable block .....         | 29        |
| 4.3.3. Constant block .....                  | 33        |
| 4.3.4. Delay line.....                       | 34        |
| 4.3.5. Network variable .....                | 35        |
| 4.3.6. Read from/Write to FB .....           | 36        |
| 4.3.7. Conversion block.....                 | 37        |
| 4.3.8. Arrange elements.....                 | 38        |
| 4.3.9. Execution sequence .....              | 38        |
| 4.4. Display programming .....               | 39        |
| 4.4.1. Monochrome text LCD .....             | 40        |
| 4.4.2. Graphic color LCD .....               | 45        |
| 4.5. Simulation .....                        | 52        |
| 4.5.1. Visualization Simulation .....        | 55        |
| 4.5.2. ST code simulation .....              | 56        |
| 4.6. Connection to device.....               | 60        |
| 4.7. Upload project to device .....          | 61        |
| 4.8. Online debugging .....                  | 62        |
| 4.9. Project information.....                | 65        |
| 4.10. Component manager .....                | 67        |
| 4.11. Macro development.....                 | 70        |
| 4.12. Using ST function.....                 | 79        |
| 4.13. ST function blocks.....                | 84        |
| <b>5. Device configuration .....</b>         | <b>89</b> |
| 5.1. Display.....                            | 89        |
| 5.2. Clock .....                             | 90        |
| 5.3. Data exchange .....                     | 91        |

|                                            |            |
|--------------------------------------------|------------|
| 5.3.1. Interfaces .....                    | 91         |
| 5.3.2. Modbus working .....                | 97         |
| 5.4. Extension modules .....               | 115        |
| 5.5. Inputs and outputs .....              | 116        |
| 5.6. Password .....                        | 117        |
| 5.7. Connecting to akYtec Cloud .....      | 118        |
| <b>6. Variables .....</b>                  | <b>120</b> |
| 6.1. Data types .....                      | 127        |
| 6.2. Service variables .....               | 128        |
| 6.3. Network variables .....               | 129        |
| 6.4. Binding variables to parameters ..... | 130        |
| 6.5. Copy-paste variable block .....       | 131        |
| <b>7. Library .....</b>                    | <b>133</b> |
| 7.1. Functions .....                       | 133        |
| 7.1.1. Logical operators .....             | 133        |
| 7.1.2. Mathematical operators .....        | 136        |
| 7.1.3. Relational operators .....          | 139        |
| 7.1.4. Bitshift operators .....            | 141        |
| 7.1.5. Bit operators .....                 | 143        |
| 7.2. Function blocks .....                 | 145        |
| 7.2.1. Triggers .....                      | 145        |
| 7.2.2. Timers .....                        | 147        |
| 7.2.3. Generators .....                    | 151        |
| 7.2.4. Counters .....                      | 152        |
| 7.2.5. Analog .....                        | 155        |
| 7.3. Project macros .....                  | 162        |
| 7.4. ST functions .....                    | 163        |
| 7.5. ST function block .....               | 166        |
| 7.6. Display elements .....                | 170        |
| 7.6.1. Text box .....                      | 171        |
| 7.6.2. I/O box (INT/REAL) .....            | 171        |
| 7.6.3. I/O box (BOOL) .....                | 172        |
| 7.6.4. Dynamic box .....                   | 173        |
| 7.6.5. ComboBox .....                      | 174        |
| 7.7. Basic graphic elements .....          | 175        |
| 7.7.1. Text .....                          | 181        |
| 7.7.2. Indicator .....                     | 182        |
| 7.7.3. Progress bar .....                  | 183        |
| 7.7.4. Dynamic box .....                   | 184        |
| 7.7.5. REAL/INT input/output .....         | 187        |
| 7.7.6. Time input/output .....             | 191        |
| 7.7.7. Input/output of IP address .....    | 192        |
| 7.7.8. Line .....                          | 194        |
| 7.7.9. Polygon .....                       | 195        |
| 7.7.10. Circle .....                       | 196        |
| 7.7.11. Button .....                       | 197        |
| 7.7.12. Switch .....                       | 199        |

|                                                                                    |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 7.7.13. Switch group .....                                                         | 201        |
| 7.7.14. Image .....                                                                | 204        |
| 7.7.15. Menu .....                                                                 | 206        |
| 7.7.16. Chart .....                                                                | 208        |
| <b>8. Device .....</b>                                                             | <b>213</b> |
| 8.1. Device information .....                                                      | 213        |
| 8.2. Cycle time .....                                                              | 214        |
| 8.3. Firmware update / repair .....                                                | 214        |
| 8.4. Calibration.....                                                              | 215        |
| 8.4.1. Input calibration.....                                                      | 216        |
| 8.4.2. Output calibration .....                                                    | 217        |
| 8.5. Change target device .....                                                    | 217        |
| <b>9. Plugins .....</b>                                                            | <b>219</b> |
| 9.1. Replication master .....                                                      | 220        |
| 9.1.1. Writing a program to the device via the Replication master on Windows ..... | 224        |
| 9.1.2. Writing a program to a device via the Replication master on Linux .....     | 227        |
| 9.2. Exporting the device to akYtec Cloud .....                                    | 228        |
| <b>10. Keyboard shortcuts .....</b>                                                | <b>230</b> |
| <b>11. Program examples.....</b>                                                   | <b>232</b> |
| 11.1. Task 1: Light switch with automatic switch-off .....                         | 232        |
| 11.2. Task 2: Mixer control.....                                                   | 234        |
| 11.3. Task3. Direct connection of PR103 to akYtec Cloud .....                      | 237        |
| <b>12. ST language .....</b>                                                       | <b>242</b> |
| 12.1. Syntax .....                                                                 | 242        |
| 12.1.1. Bitwise access to variables.....                                           | 242        |
| 12.1.2. Using functions in other ST program elements .....                         | 242        |
| 12.1.3. Using one function block in another.....                                   | 243        |
| 12.1.4. Comments in ST editor .....                                                | 244        |
| 12.1.5. Copying ST elements between projects .....                                 | 244        |
| 12.2. Documentation in the ST editor .....                                         | 245        |
| 12.3. Data types .....                                                             | 246        |
| 12.3.1. Reserved keywords .....                                                    | 247        |
| 12.3.2. Arrays.....                                                                | 248        |
| 12.4. Language structures .....                                                    | 250        |
| 12.4.1. Operations .....                                                           | 251        |
| 12.4.2. Assignment operation .....                                                 | 253        |
| 12.4.3. IF statement.....                                                          | 253        |
| 12.4.4. CASE statement.....                                                        | 254        |
| 12.4.5. RETURN statement.....                                                      | 255        |
| 12.4.6. FOR statement.....                                                         | 255        |
| 12.4.7. WHILE statement .....                                                      | 257        |
| 12.4.8. REPEAT UNTIL statement .....                                               | 257        |
| 12.5. System functions .....                                                       | 258        |
| 12.5.1. Date and Time functions .....                                              | 258        |
| 12.5.2. Mathematical functions .....                                               | 260        |
| 12.5.3. Logarithmic functions .....                                                | 262        |
| 12.5.4. Trigonometric functions.....                                               | 264        |

---

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| 12.6. System Function Blocks ..... | 265 |
| 12.6.1. Triggers .....             | 265 |
| 12.6.2. Timers .....               | 269 |
| 12.6.3. Generators.....            | 275 |
| 12.6.4. Counters.....              | 277 |

## 1 Introduction

ALP is a programming software for programmable devices of akYtec GmbH. ALP uses graphical language FBD (Function block diagram) and ST (Structure Language) as programming languages, according to IEC 61131-3. The software enables simulation and debugging of the created program and its upload to the non-volatile memory of the device.

Created project contains minimum one circuit program and device configuration. The first workspace contains the main circuit program. In separate workspaces user can create macros as circuit programs. If the target device has a display, it can be programmed using display forms in separate workspaces. Only one project can be opened in ALP at a time.

akYtec ALP has different functions for the following groups of devices:

- first generation devices (PR100, PR102, PR200 and SMI200)
- second generation devices (PR103, and devices with a graphical color LCD (PR205, PR225))

Basic akYtec ALP functionality is available for all devices, functionality and interfaces for devices on the second generation are not available for first generation devices.

### 1.1 System requirements

Operation systems:

- Windows 7 (SP1+)
- Windows 8.1
- Windows 10
- Windows 11

System libraries:

- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.8
- Microsoft .NET Desktop Runtime 6.0.8
- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015-2022

Recommended hardware requirements:

- 3.2 GHz processor
- 4 GB RAM
- 700 MB available hard disk space
- Free USB port
- Keyboard and mouse
- Screen resolution 1280×800

Internet connection is required for:

- Software update
- Device firmware update
- Macros download in Component manager

### 1.2 Terms and abbreviations

- **ALP** — programming software for programmable devices of akYtec GmbH.
- **EEPROM** — electrically erasable programmable read-only memory of the device.
- **FBD (Function Block Diagram)** — graphical programming language supported by IEC 61131-3.
- **Function** — Structural program unit with one return value. The function does not store information about its internal state, i.e. if the function is called with the same input values, it returns the same output value.
- **Function block** — Structural program unit with internal memory and one or more output values. It is used in program as an instance, i. e. a copy with its own memory.
- **LoRa (Long Range)** — wireless data transmission technology.
- **LoRaWAN (Long Range Wide Area Network)** — The protocol that manages communication over the LoRa network.
- **Macro** — user function block.
- **Program cycle** — execution time of the circuit program, which depends of its complexity.
- **Project** — user application created for a specific device with ALP software, includes the circuit program.

- **Slot** — a connection point in the device, enabling the attachment of an interface or an extension module.
- **ST (Structured Text)** — a text programming language supported by IEC 61131-3.
- **Target device** — device type for which the project is created.
- **Workspace** — graphic area in the user interface for the program creation, modification and debugging.

## 2 Installation

1. Download and run the akYtecALP.exe file on your PC.
2. Select setup language.

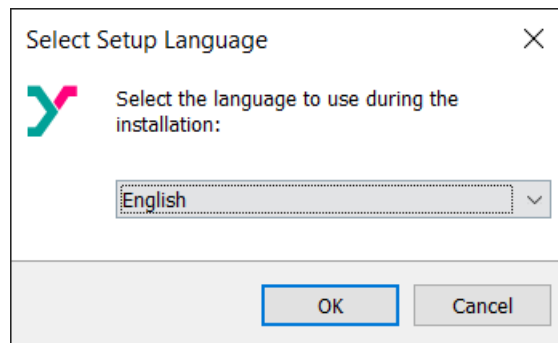


Fig. 2.1 Setup language selection



### DANGER

**Limitations:** ALP must be installed and run under the same user account. During installation, ALP creates a folder in the AppData directory (for example, `C:\Users\user\AppData\Roaming\akYtec\akYtec ALP`) that contains files required for the proper operation of the program. This directory is accessible only to the user who performed the installation. This behavior is a limitation of the Windows operating system

3. The installation wizard window will open. Review the information and click the **Next** button.

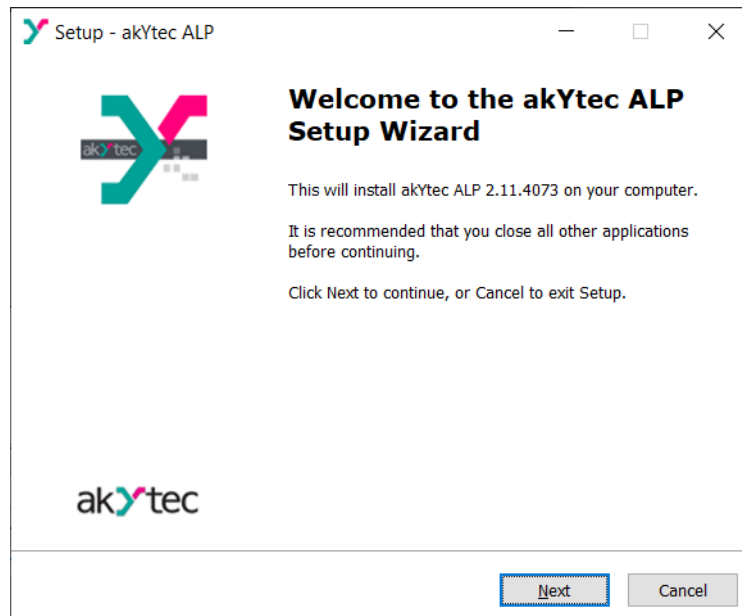


Fig. 2.2 Installation Wizard Window

4. Select the installation folder for akYtec ALP and the folder for the Start menu shortcut. Click the **Next** button.
5. If necessary, enable the corresponding checkboxes to create a desktop shortcut, create a quick launch panel shortcut, associate files with the .owl and .owle extensions with akYtec ALP, and install the .NET6 SDK library for creating a Replication Wizard for Linux OS. Click the **Next** button.

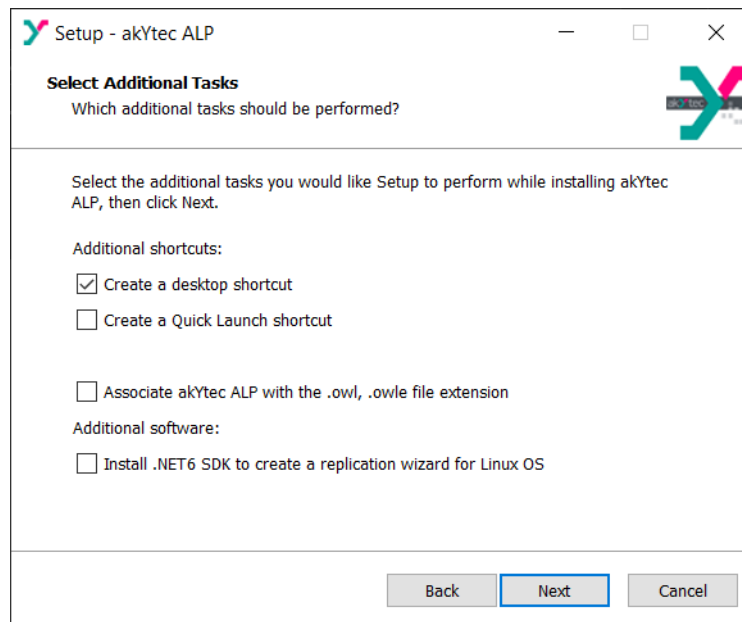


Fig. 2.3 Selecting Additional Tasks

6. Review the installation information and click the **Install** button.

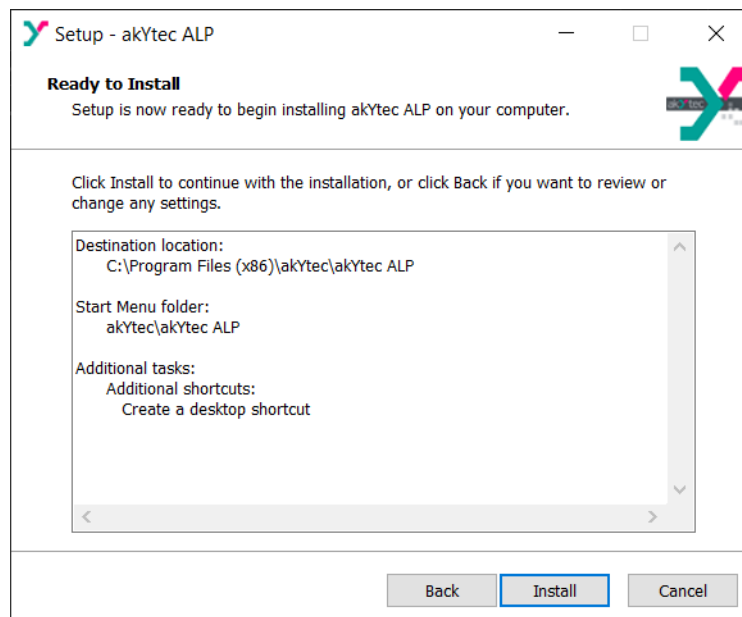


Fig. 2.4 Installation launch window

7. A window will open displaying the installation progress.

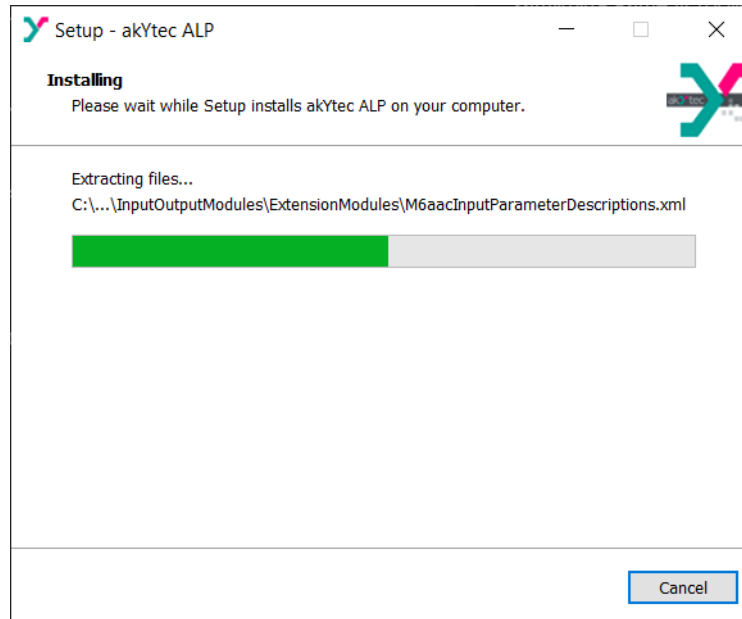


Fig. 2.5 Program installation process

8. Wait for the installation to complete and, if necessary, check the **Launch akYtec ALP** checkbox.

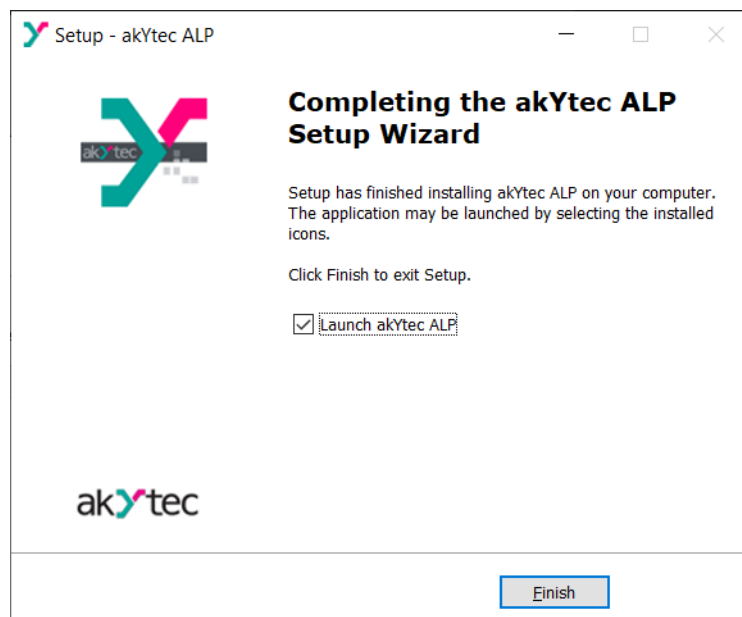
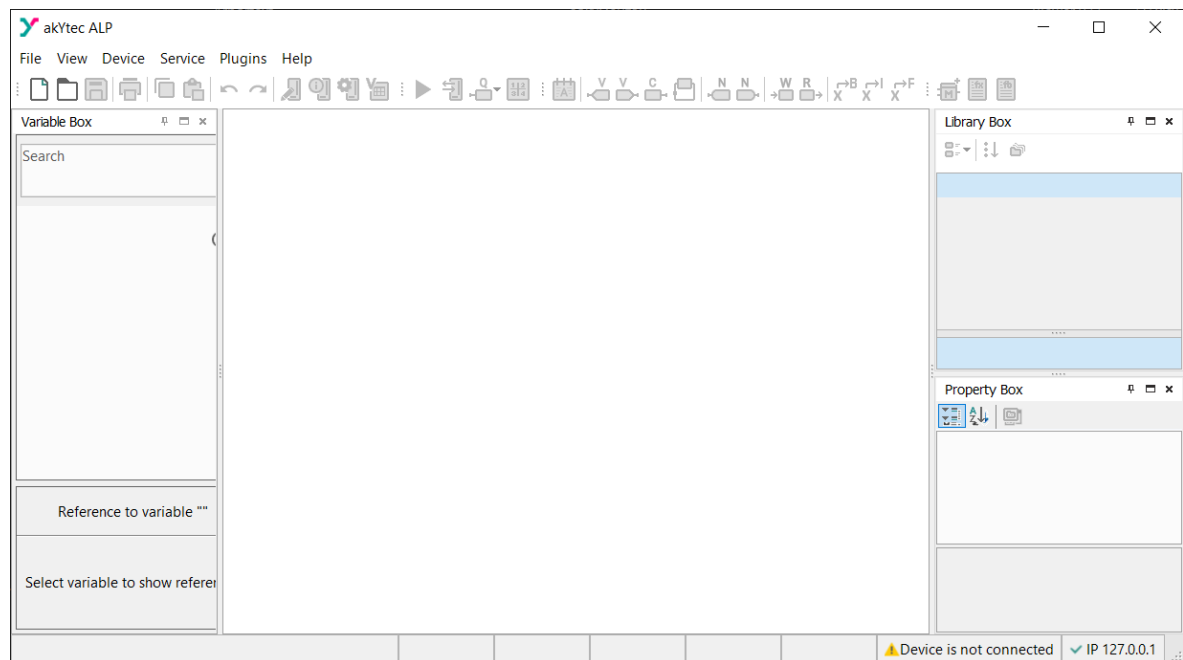


Fig. 2.6 Installation completion

9. Click the **Finish** button.

### 3 User interface



1. **Title bar** — shows the name of the software and the path to the open project file.
2. **Menu bar** — contains following groups: File, View, Device, Service, Plugins and Help.
3. **Tool bars** — Standard, Service and Insert: quick access to the essential functions of ALP.
4. **Library box** — the panel shows all the functions, function blocks, and macros that can be used in the project (drag-and-drop using).
5. **Property Box** — panel for viewing and modifying properties of the selected project element
6. **Workspace** — graphic area for creating and modifying circuit programs, ST programs, display elements or display forms.
7. **Status bar** — shows status and error messages, target device memory usage, status of the connected device and the programming interface.
8. **Display Manager** — a tool to program the display information (available only for the devices with display).
9. **Variable Box** — this panel shows all project variables with their parameters and references (drag-and-drop using).
10. **Component manager** — special tool in a separate window to access Online Database and to add the elements from the Online Database to the offline library or to the project library. Internet connection is needed.

#### 3.1 Main menu

##### File

|                              |                                                                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>New project</b>           | Open a new project. The current project will be closed                     |
| <b>Change target device</b>  | Change the target device in the project                                    |
| <b>Open project</b>          | Open a previously saved project                                            |
| <b>Save active workspace</b> | Save the active workspace                                                  |
| <b>Save project</b>          | Save the current project                                                   |
| <b>Save project as...</b>    | Make a copy of the project in a different folder or under a different name |

|                            |                                                                                             |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Create key file...</b>  | Create a file with a key to protect the project from unauthorized access                    |
| <b>Project information</b> | View and modify the <u>information about the project</u>                                    |
| <b>New macro</b>           | Open a new macro in the separate <u>workspace</u>                                           |
| <b>Import</b>              | Import a macro, an ST function or an ST function block from a file into the project library |
| <b>Export</b>              | Save the current macro, ST function or ST function block as file                            |
| <b>Component manager</b>   | Open the <u>Component manager</u> interface                                                 |
| <b>Print</b>               | Open the dialog to set the print options and print the active workspace                     |
| <b>Recent projects</b>     | List of recently opened projects                                                            |
| <b>Exit</b>                | Close ALP                                                                                   |

**View**

|                          |                                                                |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Undo</b>              | Undo the last action                                           |
| <b>Redo</b>              | Redo the last undone action                                    |
| <b>Status indicators</b> | Add / remove the in indicators to / from the <u>status bar</u> |
| <b>Library Box</b>       | Show / hide <u>Library Box</u>                                 |
| <b>Property Box</b>      | Show / hide <u>Property Box</u>                                |
| <b>Variable Box</b>      | Show / hide <u>Variable Box</u>                                |
| <b>Display manager</b>   | Show / hide <u>Display Manager</u>                             |
| <b>Reset layout</b>      | Restore the default panel layout                               |

**Device**

|                                       |                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Transfer application to device</b> | Upload the current project to the device memory                                   |
| <b>Firmware update</b>                | Update the firmware of the connected device                                       |
| <b>Device information</b>             | <u>Information</u> about the software, the target device and the connected device |
| <b>Variable table</b>                 | The <u>editable table</u> of the project variables with their parameters          |
| <b>Calibration</b>                    | Start analog I/O <u>calibration</u>                                               |
| <b>Device configuration</b>           | Open <u>Device configuration</u> interface                                        |
| <b>Port configuration</b>             | Settings of the <u>programming interface</u>                                      |

**Service**

|                         |                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Arrange elements</b> | Function blocks of the same type are automatically renumbered in the workspace from top to bottom and from right to left |
| <b>Simulation mode</b>  | Start / stop <u>simulation</u> mode                                                                                      |

|                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Language</b>     | Select the interface language |
| <b>OFFLINE mode</b> | Activate OFFLINE mode         |

### Help

|                               |                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Automatic update check</b> | If activated, the update check is performed on program startup      |
| <b>Check for updates...</b>   | Check for software updates                                          |
| <b>Help</b>                   | Open Help window                                                    |
| <b>Version history</b>        | Running list of the changes have been made in all software versions |
| <b>About Software</b>         | Information about the current software version                      |

## 3.2 Toolbars

### Standard



|  |                                       |                                                                            |
|--|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>New project</b>                    | Open a new project. The currently opened project will be closed            |
|  | <b>Open project</b>                   | Open a previously saved project                                            |
|  | <b>Save project</b>                   | Save the current project                                                   |
|  | <b>Print</b>                          | Set the print options for the active workspace                             |
|  | <b>Copy</b>                           | Copy the selected element                                                  |
|  | <b>Paste</b>                          | Paste the copied element                                                   |
|  | <b>Undo</b>                           | Undo the last action                                                       |
|  | <b>Redo</b>                           | Redo the last undone action                                                |
|  | <b>Transfer application to device</b> | Upload the current project to the device memory                            |
|  | <b>Device information</b>             | Information about the software, the target device and the connected device |
|  | <b>Device configuration</b>           | Device configuration                                                       |
|  | <b>Variable table</b>                 | Table of project variables                                                 |

### Service



|                                                                                   |                         |                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Simulation</b>       | Start / stop simulation                                                                                                  |
|  | <b>Online debugging</b> | Start / stop online debugging                                                                                            |
|  | <b>Execution order</b>  | Change the execution order for the outputs or delay lines on a circuit program or in a macro                             |
|  | <b>Arrange elements</b> | Function blocks of the same type are automatically renumbered in the workspace from top to bottom and from right to left |

### Insert

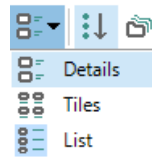
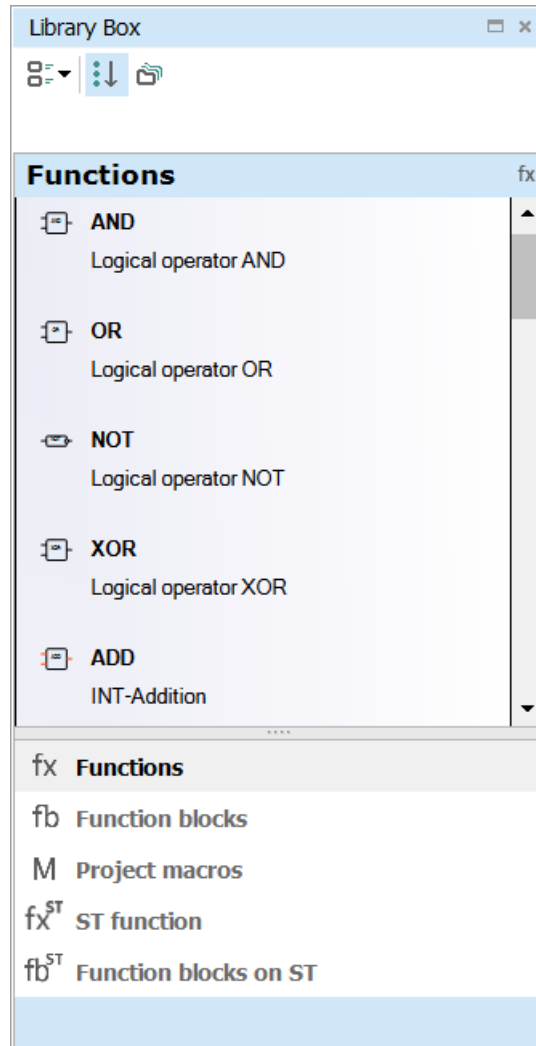
|                                                                                     |                                      |                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   |                                      |                                                                                                                                   |
|    | <b>Text field</b>                    | Text field to comment the program                                                                                                 |
|    | <b>Variable output block</b>         | Block for writing a variable into the program                                                                                     |
|    | <b>Variable input block</b>          | Block for reading a variable from the program                                                                                     |
|   | <b>Constant block</b>                | Constant value                                                                                                                    |
|  | <b>Delay line</b>                    | Feedback with one-cycle delay                                                                                                     |
|  | <b>Network variable output block</b> | Block for writing a variable via network                                                                                          |
|  | <b>Network variable input block</b>  | Block for reading a variable via network                                                                                          |
|  | <b>WriteToFB block</b>               | Connects the output value of the block to the selected parameter of the selected function block. Allows you to edit the parameter |
|  | <b>ReadFromFB block</b>              | Connects the output value of the block to the selected parameter of the selected function block. Allows you to read the parameter |
|  | <b>Conversion to BOOL</b>            | Conversion of any values to a BOOL value                                                                                          |
|  | <b>Conversion to INT</b>             | Conversion of any values to an INT value                                                                                          |
|  | <b>Conversion to REAL</b>            | Conversion of any values to a REAL value                                                                                          |
|  | <b>New macro</b>                     | New user macro                                                                                                                    |
|  | <b>New ST function</b>               | New user function in ST language                                                                                                  |
|  | <b>New ST function block</b>         | New user function block in ST language                                                                                            |

### 3.3 Library Box

The **Library Box** panel is a summary of program blocks available in the project. The panel consists of libraries:

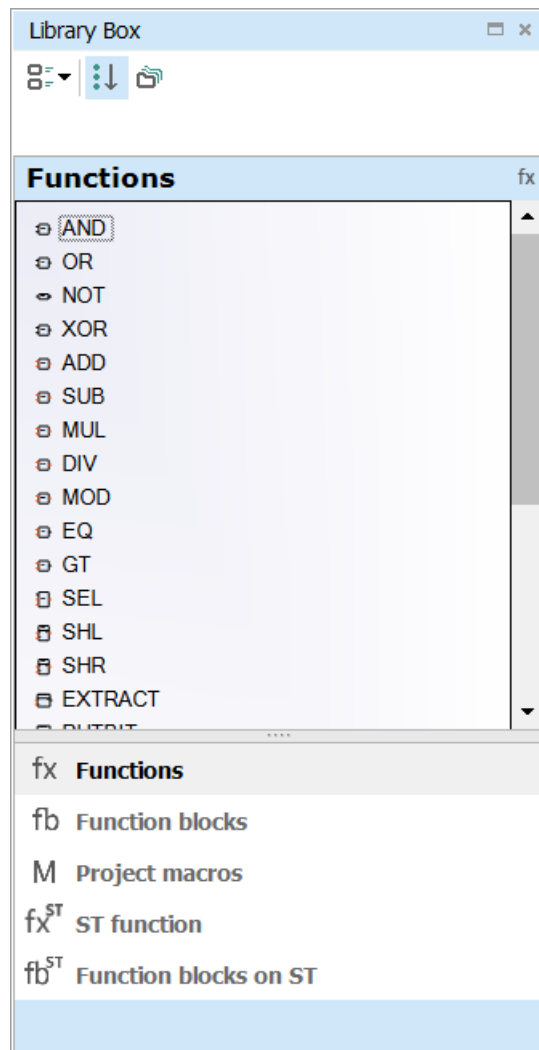
- Functions
- Function blocks
- Project macros
- ST functions
- ST function blocks

Select an item on the lower toolbar of the panel to show the respective content.  
The standard position of the panel is the upper right window corner (can be changed).

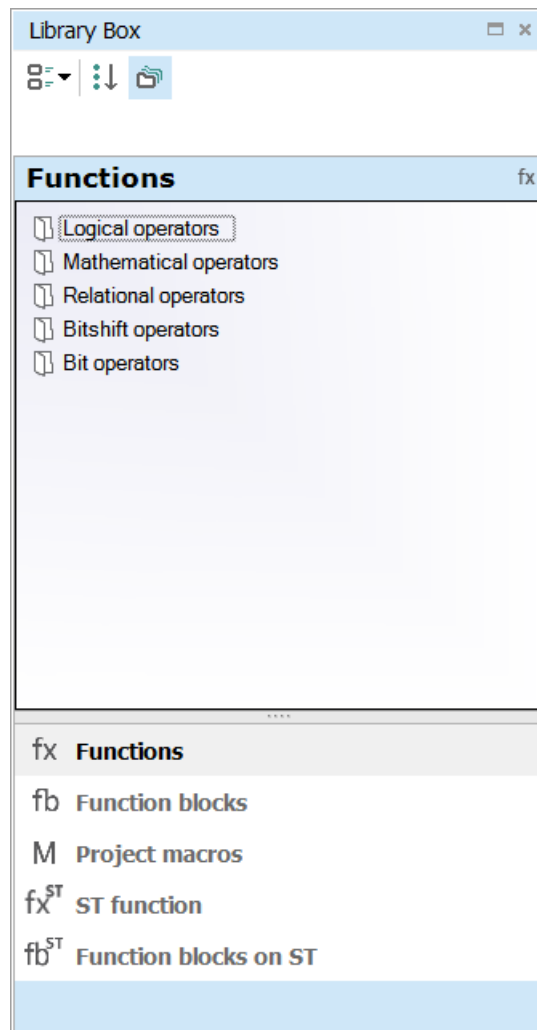


The panel view can be changed using the icons on the upper toolbar.

- Click the icon  **Show all** to show all the blocks of the selected library.



- Click the icon  **Show grouped** to show the blocks of the selected library group. Double-click the folder to open it.



For description of the library groups and individual blocks see section [Library](#).

### 3.4 Property box

The panel Property Box is used to view and modify the parameters of the program elements. Select the element to view its properties. If no item is selected, the panel displays the properties of the workspace.

The standard position of the panel is the lower right window corner (can be changed).

The parameters are shown grouped by categories by default.

To show them in alphabetical order, click the icon .



To show them grouped, click the icon .

Select the parameter input field to edit its value.

### 3.5 Variable Box

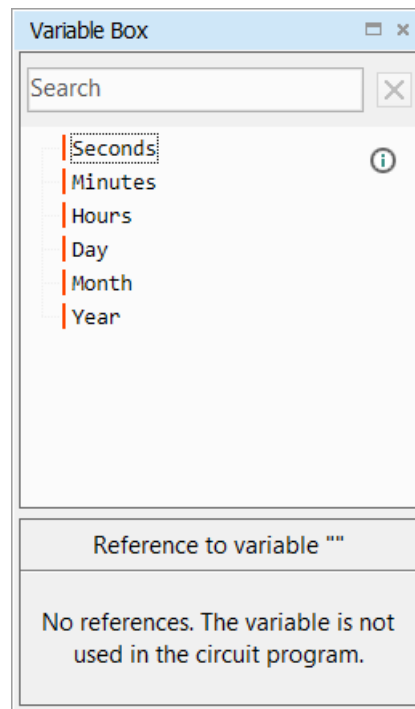
The panel **Variable Box** shows the project variables from the variable table.

The standard position of the panel is the upper left window corner (can be changed).

The variable properties are available in a tooltip text.

#### Variable block in the workspace

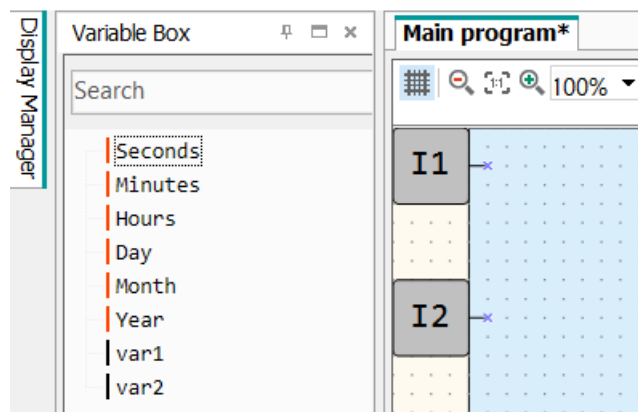
Drag-and-drop a variable to place it in the circuit program as an input block.



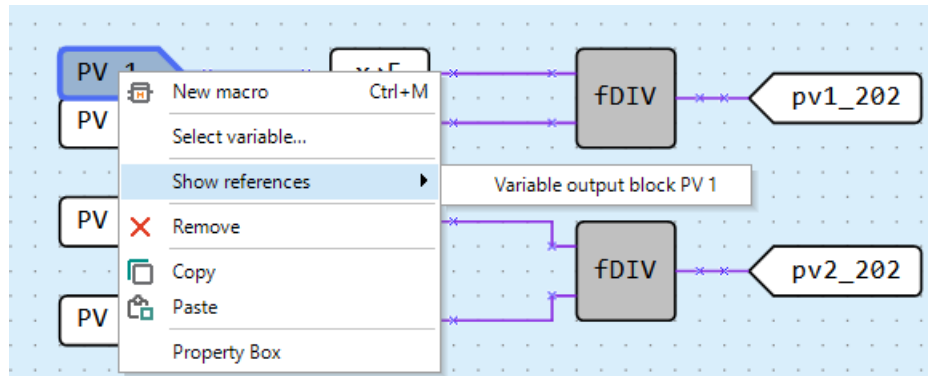
To use a variable as an output block, hold the Shift key pressed as you drag-and-drop the variable. If a variable is drag-and-dropped onto a connection pin of a block, the created variable block is connected to this connection pin.

### References

The variable references are shown as links in the lower panel part. If you click on the link, the block to which the variable is referred is highlighted in the workspace.



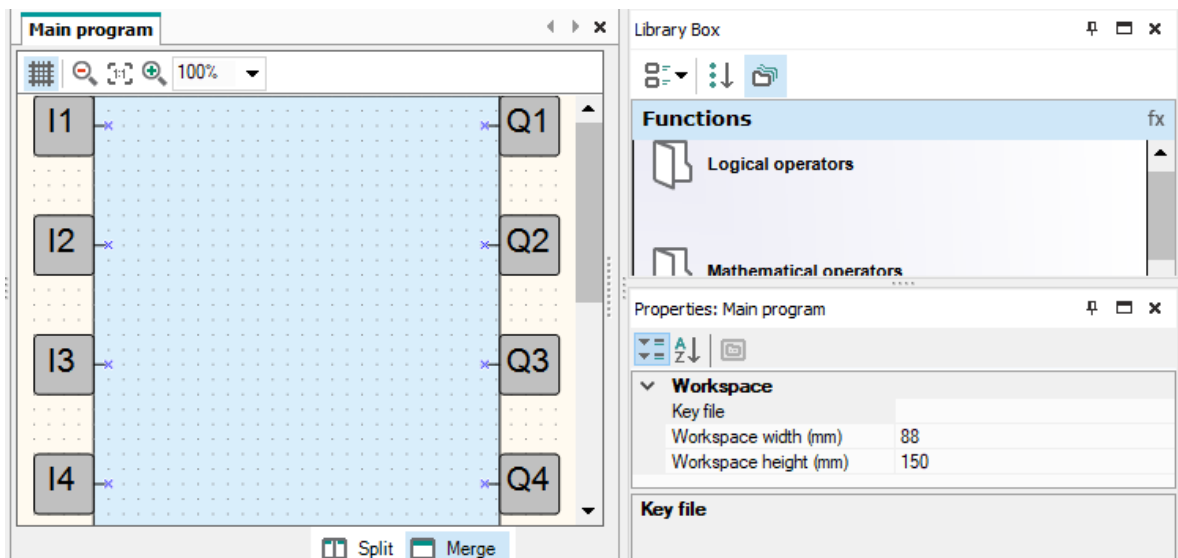
If a variable is used at more than one place in the project, all the references can be viewed with the item **Show references** in the variable block context menu. Click on the link to view the reference.



### 3.6 Workspace

When a project is open, the workspace with the tab **Main program** is shown in the middle of the window.

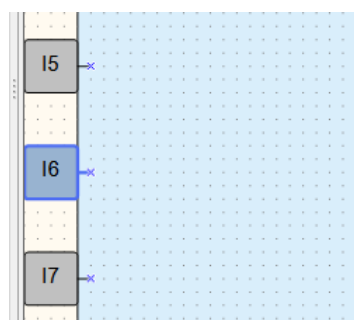
If your device supports ST functions, the **Function Editor** tab appears.



Circuit program is built by placing program blocks and connecting lines between them in the workspace. The size of the workspace can be changed in Property Box. The inputs (left) and outputs (right) are signed as follows:

- **Ix** – digital inputs
- **AIx** – analog inputs
- **Qx** – relay outputs
- **AOx** – analog outputs
- **Fx** – LED indicators

The numbers (x) correspond to the ordinal numbers of physical I/O points of the target device. I/O points can be moved up and down along the workspace by drag-and-drop.



**Workspace toolbar**

|                                                                                   |                         |                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Show / Hide grid</b> | Show / hide vertical and horizontal rulers and a grid in the workspace. If the grid is visible, the blocks and connecting lines are snapped to the grid |
|  | <b>Zoom –</b>           | Decrease the workspace by 10 %                                                                                                                          |
|  | <b>Original size</b>    | Return to the original size (100 %)                                                                                                                     |
|  | <b>Zoom +</b>           | Increase the workspace by 10 %                                                                                                                          |

You can set the required scale using the drop-down menu to the right of the buttons described above.

The icons  **Merge** and  **Split** are located on a toolbar below the workspace. Use the icon  **Split** to show the same circuit program in two workspaces. It can be useful if the program is too large and you want to view two different parts of the program at the same time. Use the icon  **Merge** to return to one workspace.

**3.7 Status bar**

Status and error messages are displayed in the left field of the status bar.

**View**

The right field of the Status bar has different status indicators that show information about the memory usage of the target device (resource indicators), status of the connected device and the programming interface. Contents of the status bar depend on the type of the target device.

|        |         |             |         |         |                 |         |     |
|--------|---------|-------------|---------|---------|-----------------|---------|-----|
| FB: 0% | Var: 0% | EEPROM: 13% | ROM: 1% | RAM: 6% | ✓ PR200-24.2(4) | ✓ COM10 | ... |
|--------|---------|-------------|---------|---------|-----------------|---------|-----|

Resource indicators show the used resource in percent of the total available amount. Move the mouse cursor over the indicator to see the absolute amount of the resource.

**Indicators**

If the device is connected, Status bar contains the following information:

- **FB** — number of the used and available function blocks.
- **Var** — number of the used and available variables.
- **Stack** — percentage of the available and used stack memory. The stack is used for intermediate calculations in the program.
- **Sys EEPROM** — percentage of used and available system non-volatile memory. The indicator is full if the project uses network variables, if variables are linked to visualization/device parameters, or if the project uses expansion modules.
- **EEPROM** — percentage of used and available non-volatile memory. The indicator is full if the project uses standard non-volatile variables.
- **ROM** — used and available ROM memory.
- **Sys RAM** — used and available system RAM memory. This indicator appears when the RAM is over 80 % full.

**NOTE**

*ALP software automatically calculates the available resources of the device and shows a warning if the critical value is reached.*

- **RAM** — used and available RAM memory.
- **System Visualization ROM** — the available visualization ROM of the device as a percentage of the total volume (only for devices with a graphic color LCD).

- **User Visualization ROM** — the available visualization ROM for bitmap images (only for devices with a graphic color LCD).
- **Visualization RAM** — the available visualization RAM of the device as a percentage of the total volume. The calculation is performed for the most heavily loaded screen (only for devices with a graphic color LCD).
- **Device** — device model, if connected

**NOTE**

Click the *Device* indicator to switch to **OFFLINE** mode. In this mode the connection to device is interrupted. The next click disables the **OFFLINE** mode.

- **COMx** — the selected COM port number (programming interface)

**NOTE**

Click on the indicator to open the window **Port settings**.

**NOTICE**

If any of the indicators overflow, writing a program to the device is disabled.

You can customize the number of indicators on the Status bar in the **View** menu.

**OFFLINE mode**

**OFFLINE** mode interrupts the connection between ALP and the device.

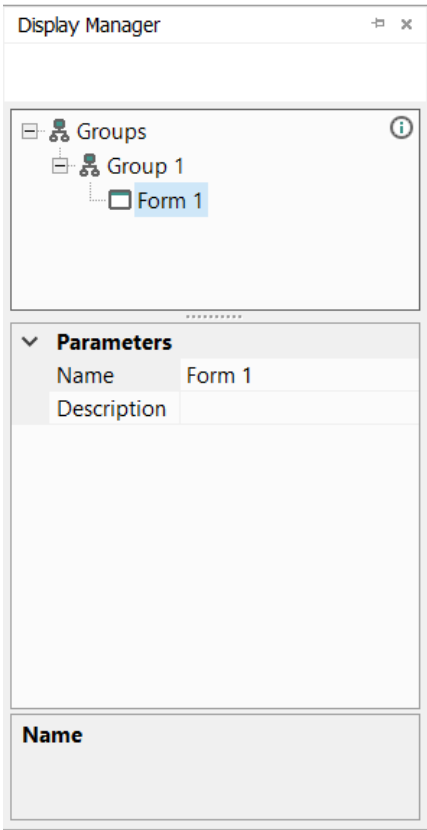
OFFLINE mode can be activated / deactivated using the menu item **Service > OFFLINE mode** or by clicking the status indicator **Device**. The next click disables the OFFLINE mode.

For more details see section [Upload project to device](#).

**3.8 Display manager**

If the target device has a display, you can program the displayed information using one or more display forms. For further details about display programming see section [Display programming](#)

The programming is carried out using the programming tool **Display Manager**. The tab Display Manager is located in the upper left corner of the window. Click the tab to open the panel. The panel contains a toolbar, a hierarchical structure (tree) of display forms and the parameters of the selected object.

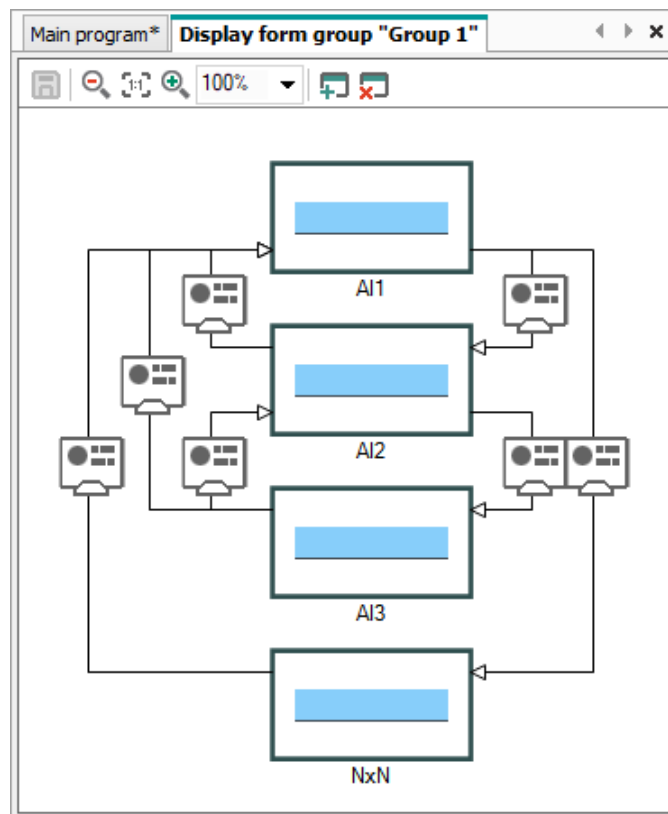
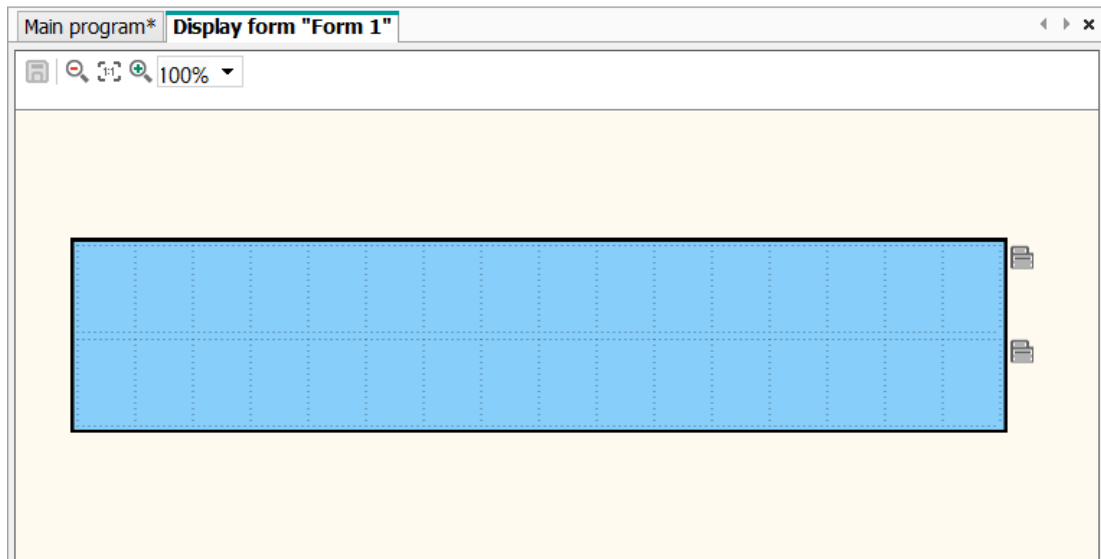


The parameters of the selected display form are shown in the lower part of the panel. To program the selected form, open it in a separate workspace **Display Editor**, using the context menu or double-click the form in the group.

|                                                                                     |                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
|  | Add display form    |
|  | Delete display form |
|  | Edit display form   |

The workspace shows the selected display form with the icons  to the right of it, which are used to change the number of displayed rows. The rows displayed first are bold outlined. Working with screens is discussed in detail in the [section 4.4.1](#).

If there are more than one display forms, you should specify “jumps” between them so that the operator can switch between forms to see the required information. It can be done in a separate workspace **Structure Editor**, which represents the graphical structure of display forms with “jumps” and their conditions. To open it, use the command **Edit group** in the group context menu.



Workspace Structure Editor has the following functions (buttons at the top):

|                                                                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
|  | <b>Save workspace</b>   |
|  | <b>Zoom out by 10 %</b> |
|  | <b>Original size</b>    |
|  | <b>Zoom in by 10 %</b>  |

The scale can be changed with the drop-down menu to the right of the buttons.

## 4 General information

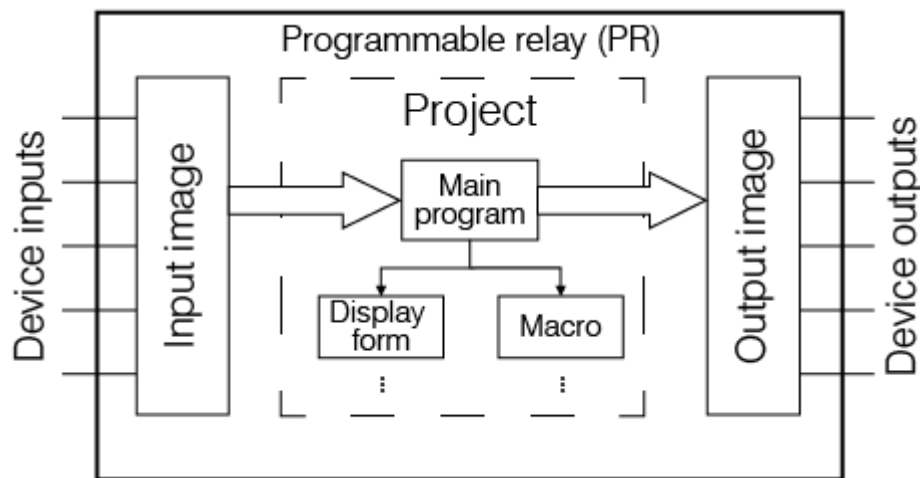
This section describes the basic principles of operating a programmable relay (further referred to as "device") and programming this device:

- Program execution
- Project creation
- Program creation
- Display programming
- Simulation
- Connection to device
- Upload project to device
- Online debugging
- Project information
- Component manager
- Macro development
- ST function
- ST function block

### 4.1 Program execution

The selected target device determines the number of available inputs and outputs and the availability of a real-time clock.

General structure of a programmable relay:



Programmable relay is a programmable logical controller (PLC) with a cyclically executed project:

**Step 1** – Device saves the status of physical inputs to the input memory cells (Input Image Table).

**Step 2** – Device reads out the input memory cells and the main program is executed from its first command to the last one.

**Step 3** – Device saves the results to the output memory cells (Output Image Table) and applies them to the outputs. When the last step is completed, the project runs again from Step 1.

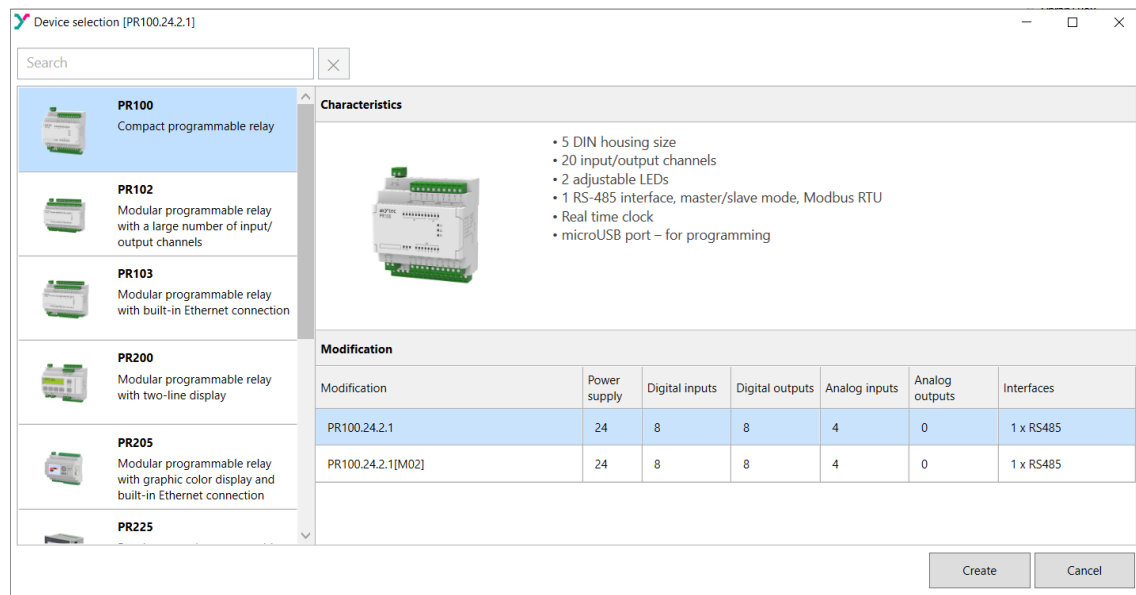
When the last step is completed, the program runs again from the first step.

### 4.2 Project creation

#### Project creation

To create a new project:

1. Click icon  in the taskbar or select **File** → **New project...** in the main menu.
2. Select the target device in the dialog window **Device selection** and confirm it with **OK**.



The new project appearance:

- **Workspace** – empty circuit program
- **Status bar** – information about available resources
- **Library Box** – available program blocks
- **Property Box** – workspace properties



#### NOTE

If the device is already connected to PC, ALP will offer the device model in the selection window.

If the selected device has a display, the **Device Manager** tab appears to the left from the workspace. With this tool you can **program** the displayed information.

You can save the current project or open a saved project using the corresponding buttons on the toolbar or in the main **File** menu.

## Circuit program development

Now you can create the **main circuit program** in the workspace using the common program blocks from the toolbar **Insert** and the specific program blocks from **Library Box**. Draw connecting lines between inputs, outputs and blocks to establish logical connections in the program.

## Simulation

Program can be simulated offline. Start the **simulation mode** using the menu item **Service**

→ **Simulation** or the toolbar icon , change the state of the inputs and notice the state of the outputs to check how the program works.

## Online debugging

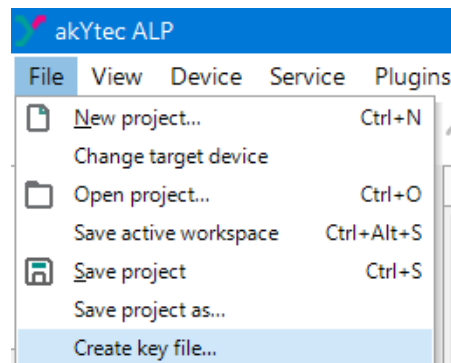
If the device is connected and the program in the device and in ALP is the same, you can use **online debugging** to check the correctness of the program in the device.

### 4.2.1 Protecting a project with a key

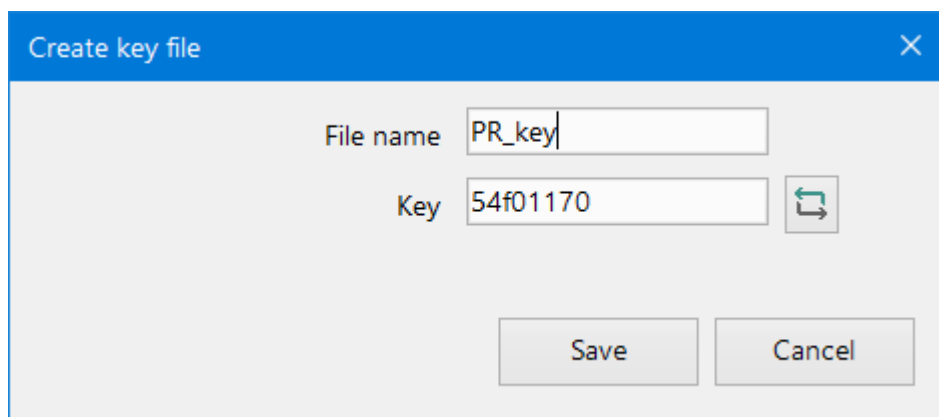
#### Creating a file with a key

To create a file with a key:

1. Select from the main menu **File** → **Create key file...**



2. In the dialog box that opens, enter file name and generate the key. You can edit the key by clicking the button  or manually.

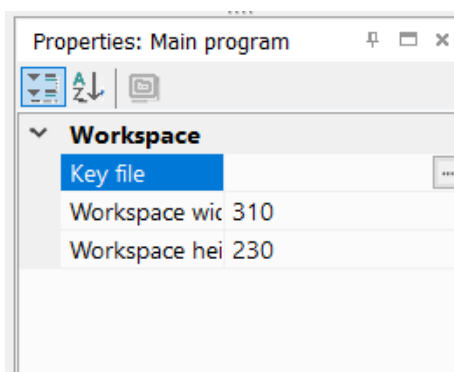


3. Save file. By default ALP saves the key file to folder `C:\Users\User name\documents\ALP\Keys`.

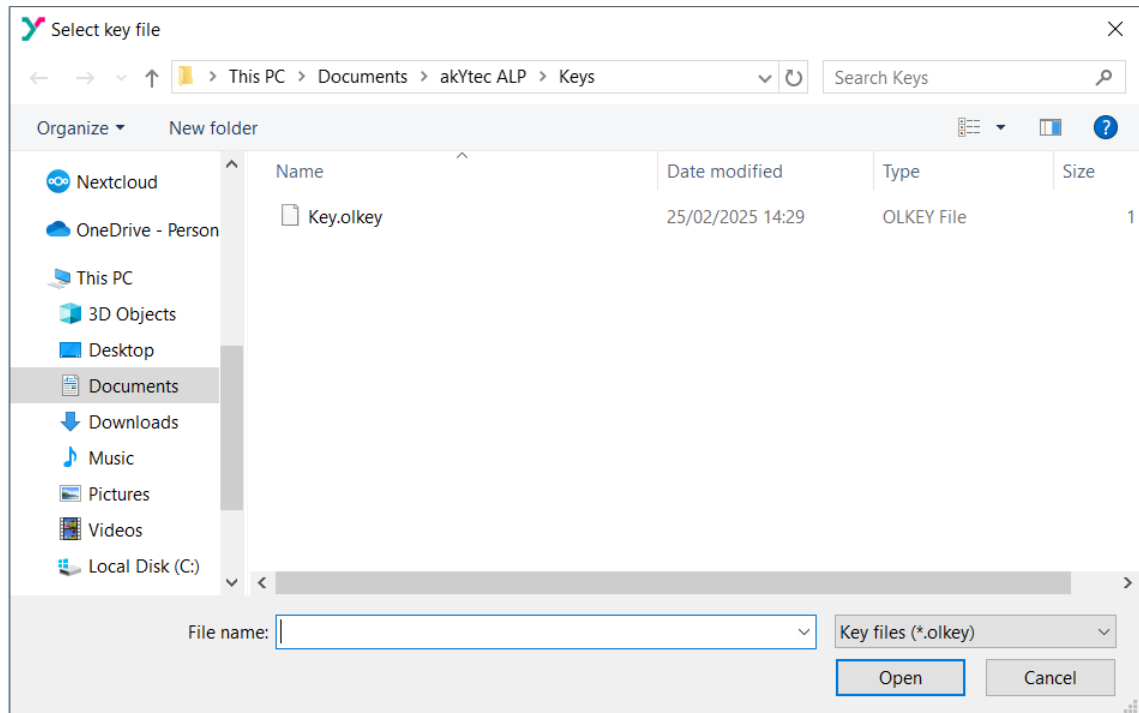
### Binding a key file

To bind a key file to a project:

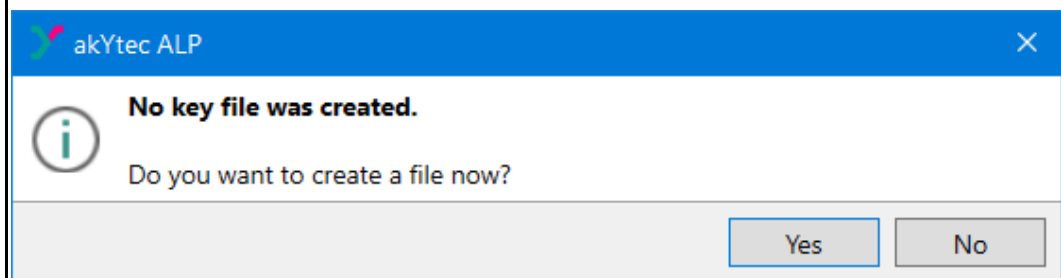
1. Click on icon "..." in the file properties (**Properties: Main program** panel).



2. Select the key file in the new window.

**NOTE**

If there is no key in the folder `C:\Users\User name\documents\ALP\Keys`, ALP will offer to create a new key.



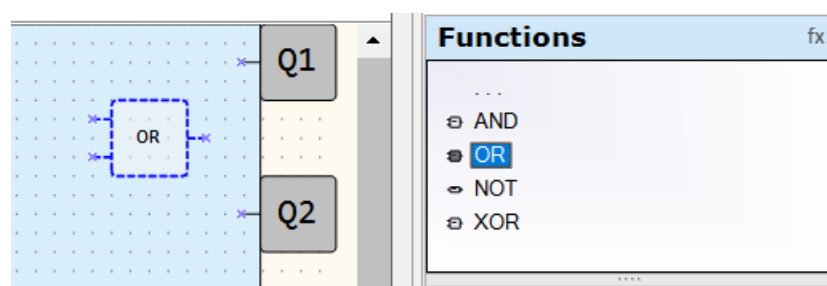
3. Press the **Open** button.

### 4.3 Program creation

Before creating a program it is recommended to plan it. The plan should describe all possible states of the device during operation in form of a mode diagram, a table of I/O states, an electrical or functional diagram, etc.

When all the operation tasks are defined, you can create the program using the standard block from the toolbar Insert and the specific blocks from the project library. The project library presented in Library Box contains the functions and the function blocks available for the target device, as well as the macros added to the project.

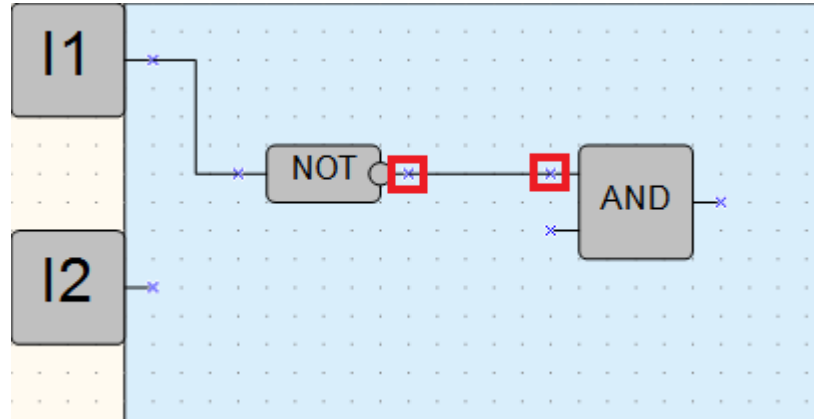
To add a library block into the circuit program, select the block in Library Box and move it to the workspace by drag-and-drop.



To draw connecting lines between inputs and outputs of the device and program blocks, use the left mouse button:

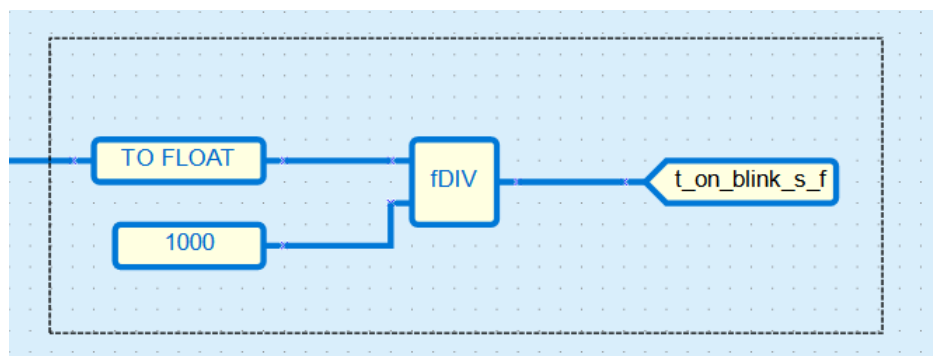
- Click the input pin of the device. The line is attached to it and follows the mouse cursor.
- To change the line direction, click a point in the workspace.
- Pull the line up to the input pin of a block and click on it to finish the line.

The connecting line can be drawn only between connection pins assigned to the same data type.



If the input and output data types of components do not match, the connection line cannot be created. For more information, refer to the [Variable types](#) section.

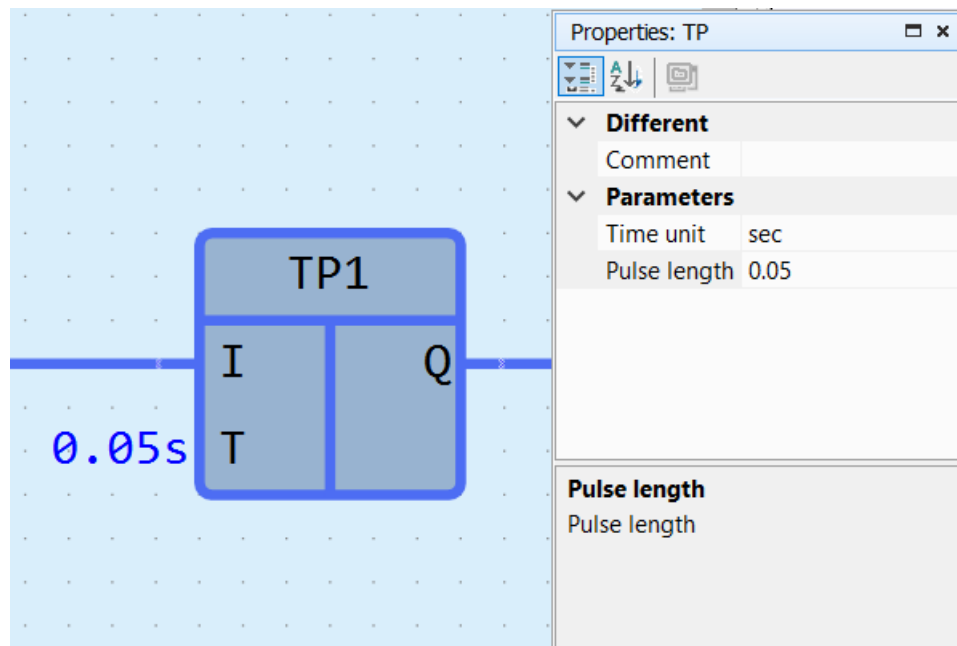
Click the block to select it. To select a group, pull the rectangle around several blocks.



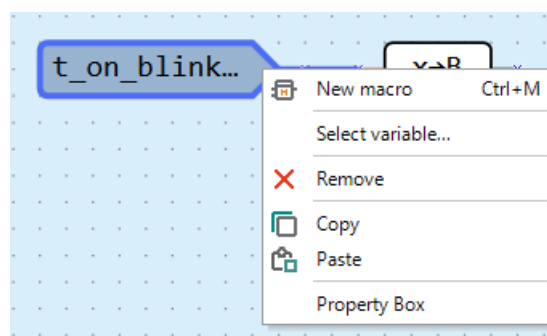
**Unused variables** do not participate in the program logic and do not occupy device memory.

### Component settings

You can edit properties of each element in [Property Box](#).



Use block context menu for all manipulations available for the element.



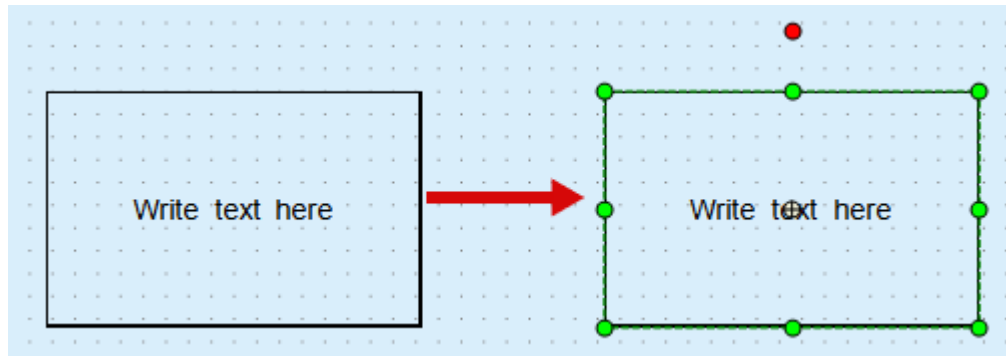
Toolbar **Insert** has following blocks and functions for program development:

|                               |                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Text field</u>             | Placing a text comment on the circuit program                                                   |
| <u>Variable block</u>         | Placing a variable block for writing or reading program values                                  |
| <u>Constant block</u>         | Placing a block with a fixed numeric value                                                      |
| <u>Delay lines</u>            | Creating a delay for one cycle of transferring a value from the component's output to its input |
| <u>Network variable block</u> | Placing blocks for data exchange between devices connected to a common network                  |
| <u>Read / write to FB</u>     | Writing/reading the values of individual parameters from the FB to a variable and vice versa    |
| <u>Conversion blocks</u>      | Converting values of different types for transmission                                           |
| <u>Arrange elements</u>       | Reassignment of sequence numbers of FB schemes                                                  |
| <u>Execution sequence</u>     | Changing the order in which program output values are calculated                                |

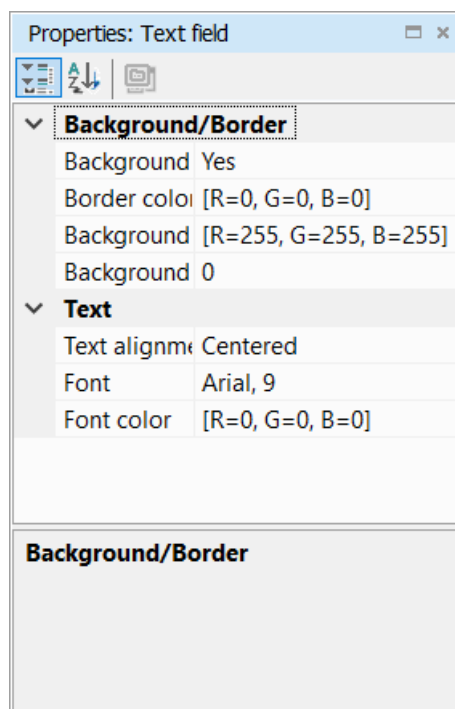
#### 4.3.1 Text field

The text fields are used to explain the program.

To add a text field to the program, click the icon  in the toolbar **Insert**, then click a point in the workspace to place the upper/left corner of the text field and draw a rectangle to set its size.

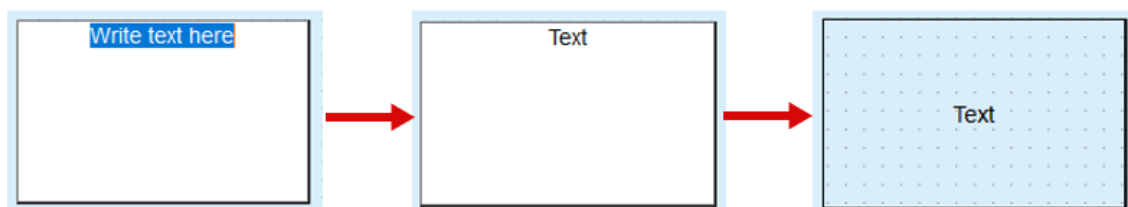


The parameters of the text field can be changed in **Property Box**.



To make the background color of the text block visible, it is recommended to set the **Background transparency** greater than 20 %.

Double-click the text field to write the text.



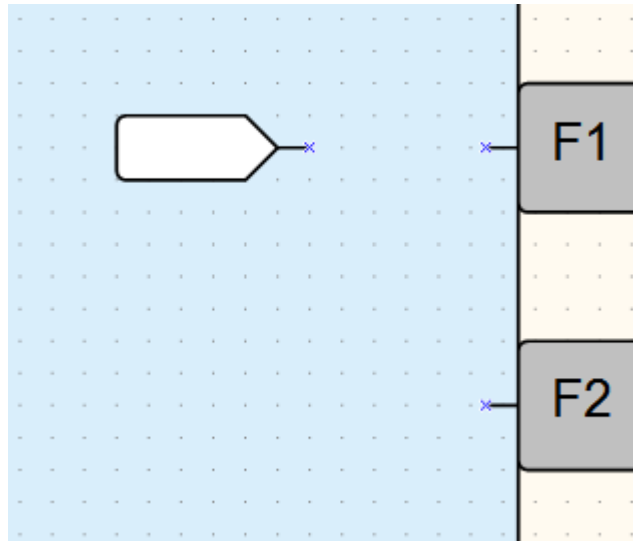
#### 4.3.2 Standard variable block

The variable block enables the use of a variable in a circuit program.

To add a variable block to the program, click on its icon in the insert panel:

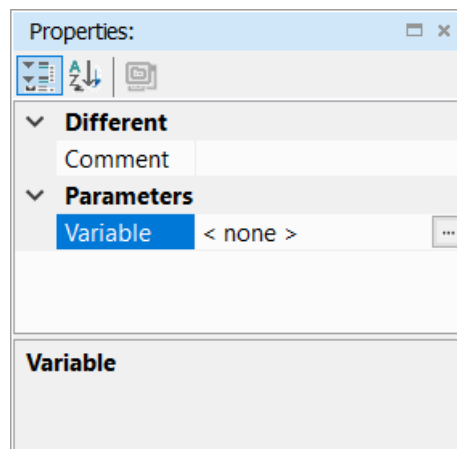
-  **input variable block** — this block writes a variable into the program;

-  **output variable block** — block reads a variable from the program.  
Click the point in the workspace to place the variable block.

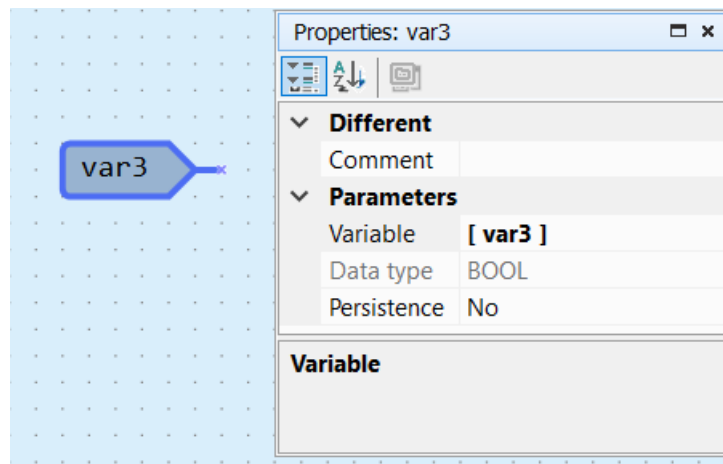


You can also add a variable block to the program from Variable table.  
To assign a variable to a variable block:

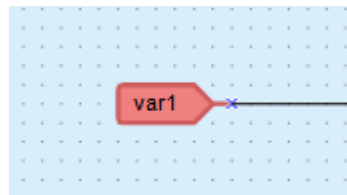
1. Select a variable block.
2. Double click the block or click on icon “...” in the Variable row in the Property Box. Variable table opens. Select a variable or create a new one. Only the editable tabs in the table are available for selection. The availability is limited by the block type.



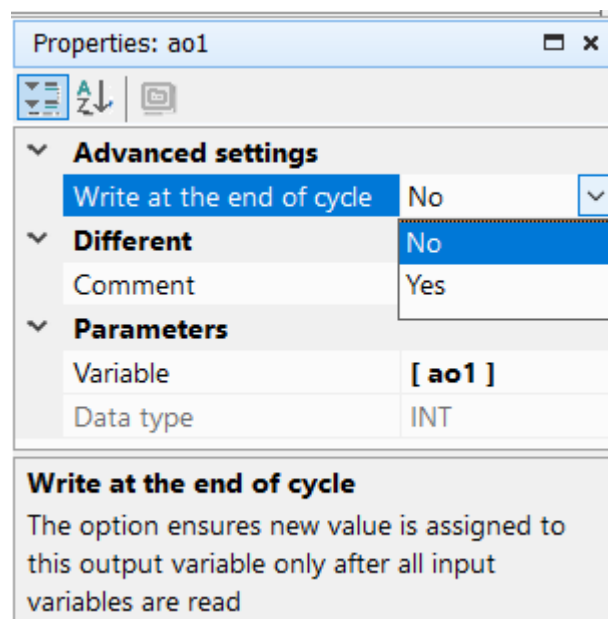
3. Confirm the selection with **OK**. The variable is assigned to the block.



Connect the variable block to the necessary element in the workspace.  
If the variable block is highlighted in red, it means that the creation is incorrect or not completed.  
Information about the error is shown in the status bar.



Creating variables in the variable table is the recommended first step in programming.  
If the variable is used more than once in a project, all references can be followed with the item **Show references** in the variable block context menu. The function is also available in simulation and online debugging modes.  
For an output variable block that is bound to a device parameter or a visualization element, the **Write at the end of cycle** setting is available. This setting writes the value to the variable after all read operations in the working cycle 4.1.



The default value for the **Write at the end of cycle** setting is determined based on the **Persistence** property of the variable bound to the output block:

- if the **Persistence** checkbox is unchecked, then **Write at the end of cycle** is set to "No";
- if the **Persistence** checkbox is checked, then **Write at the end of cycle** is set to "Yes".

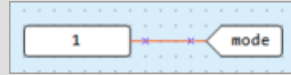
The default value for the **Write at the end of cycle** setting is updated in the following cases:

- each time the variable binding to the output block is changed;
- each time the **Persistence** property of the variable bound to the output block is changed.

Examples of using the **Write at the end of cycle** parameter setting with recommended values:

**Example:**

A variable named *mode* has been created and bound to a visualization element. The variable is initialized with a value from the canvas.



An operation needs to be performed on this variable in the first working cycle 4.1.

When **Write at the end of cycle** is set to "Yes":

| Non-Persistence                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Persistence                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The <i>mode</i> variable in the input variable block will be initialized with the default value (e.g., 5):</p> <p>A diagram showing the 'mode' variable initialized with the default value 5. The variable is represented by a box with 'mode' and a value '5' next to it.</p> | <p>The <i>mode</i> variable in the input variable block will be initialized with a zero value:</p> <p>A diagram showing the 'mode' variable initialized with a zero value. The variable is represented by a box with 'mode' and a value '0' next to it.</p> |

When **Write at the end of cycle** is set to "No":

| Non-Persistence                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Persistence                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The <i>mode</i> variable in the input variable block will be initialized with the value from the canvas:</p> <p>A diagram showing the 'mode' variable initialized with the value from the canvas (1). The variable is represented by a box with 'mode' and a value '1' next to it.</p> | <p>The <i>mode</i> variable in the input variable block will be initialized with the value from the canvas:</p> <p>A diagram showing the 'mode' variable initialized with the value from the canvas (1). The variable is represented by a box with 'mode' and a value '1' next to it.</p> |

It is recommended to use **Write at the end of cycle "No"**.

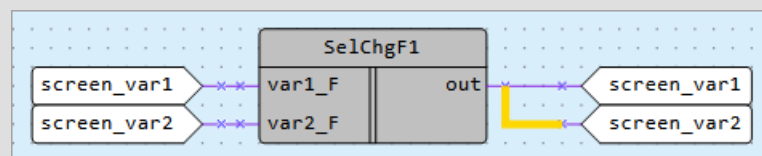
**Example:**

Two standard variables, *screen\_var1* and *screen\_var2*, have been created and bound to different visualization elements that can be modified from the device screen.

Synchronization of these variables' values is required. This can be achieved using the SelChg/SelChgF macros from the component manager.

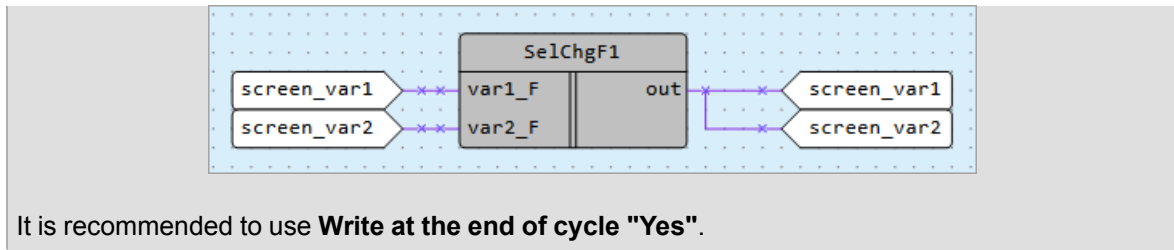
The SelChgF macro is designed to modify an int/float type variable using two variables. The output of the macro records the most recent change from either of the two variables.

When **Write at the end of cycle** is set to "No" (default for volatile variables):



A cyclic dependency appears on one of the variables (in this example, *screen\_var2*, highlighted in yellow), which prevents modifying the variable's value from the screen, as *screen\_var2* will take the value of *screen\_var1*.

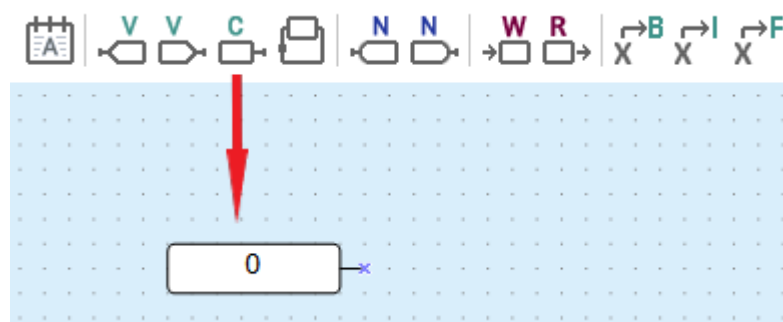
When **Write at the end of cycle** is set to "Yes" (default for non-volatile variables) for the *screen\_var2* variable, the cyclic dependency disappears, and both variables become modifiable from the screen:



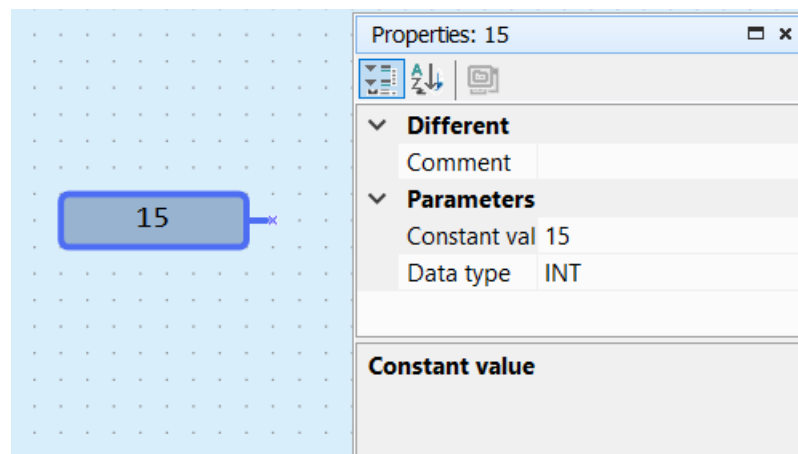
The information provided in the examples is advisory in nature. The user has the option to set the exact value that ensures the required behavior in this part of the diagram.

### 4.3.3 Constant block

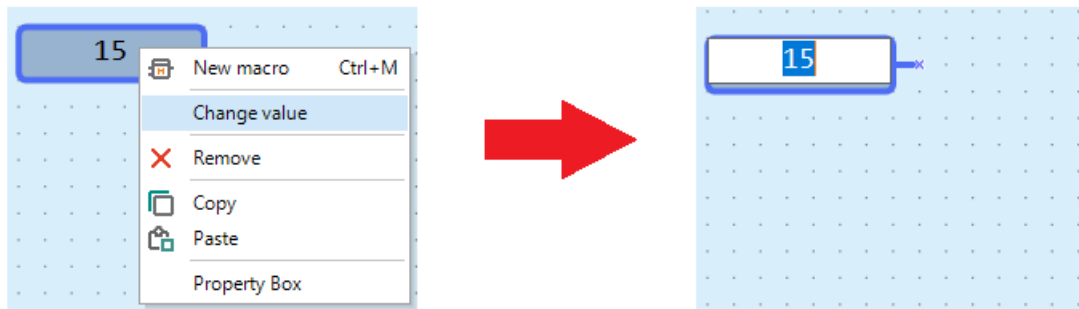
To add a constant value to the program, click on icon  in the **Insert** toolbar, then click the point in the workspace to place the constant block.



Select the data type using “...” in row **Data type** and enter the value on row **Constant value** in **Property Box**.



The value of the constant block will not change throughout the program execution. You can edit it by double-clicking on the constant block, in **Property Box** or by selecting **Change value** in the block context menu.



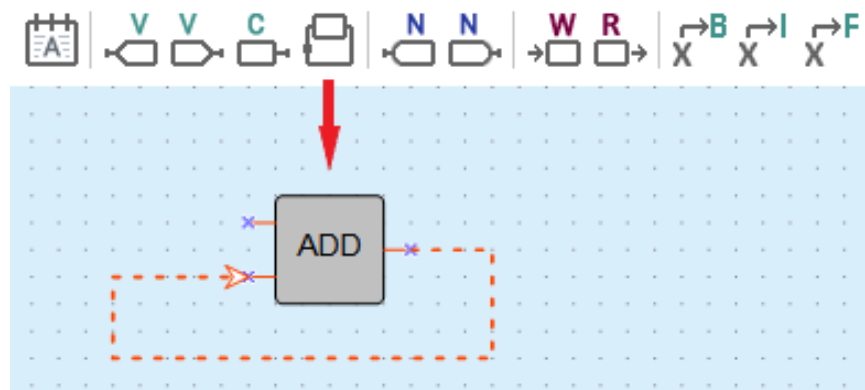
Data types valid values:

|      |                                |
|------|--------------------------------|
| BOOL | 0 / 1                          |
| INT  | 0 ... 4,294,967,295            |
| REAL | -3.402823e+38 ... 3.402823e+38 |

#### 4.3.4 Delay line

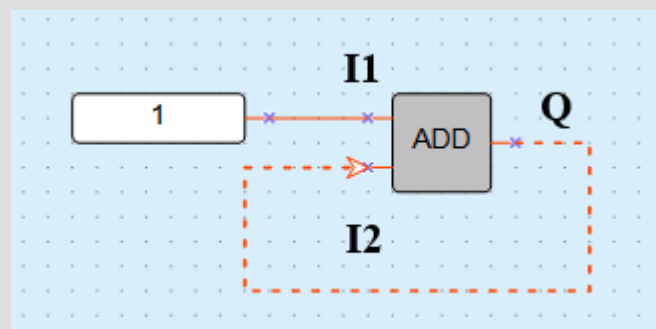
The delay line is used to transfer the value from the block output to the block input, delayed for one cycle. The output and input may belong to different blocks.

Click the icon  in the toolbar **Insert** and draw a line from the output to the input of a function block. The delay line is displayed on the diagram as a dashed line with an arrow, with the color corresponding to the variable's data type.



#### Example:

A constant value 1 is transferred to the input I1 of the addition block ADD (Integer). A value from the block output (Q) calculated in the previous cycle is transferred to the input I1 over delay line.



Cycle signal values:

| Cycle | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| I2    | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9  |
| Q     | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |

#### 4.3.5 Network variable

The network input and output variable blocks are special type of variable blocks for data exchange between devices connected to a common network.

-  – Network output variables are the variables that can be read via the network.
-  – Network input variables are the variables that can be written via the network.

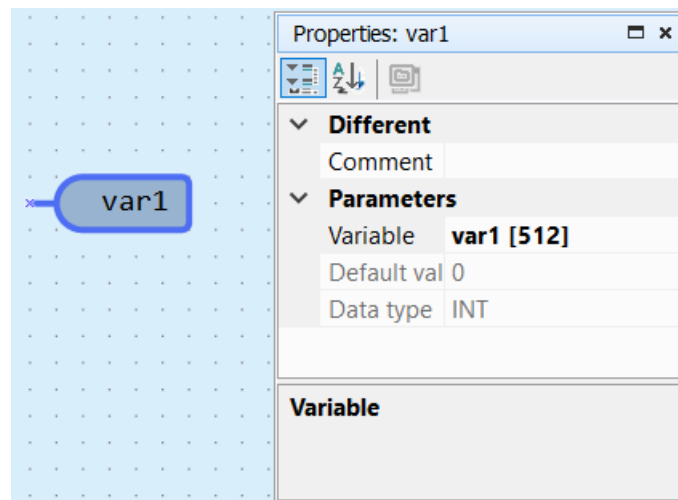


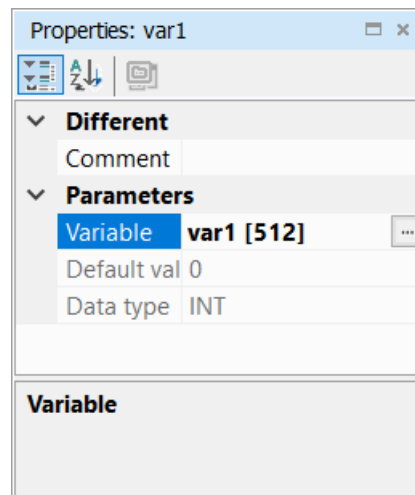
#### NOTE

A variable cannot be assigned to the block if there are no communication interfaces in the device configuration.

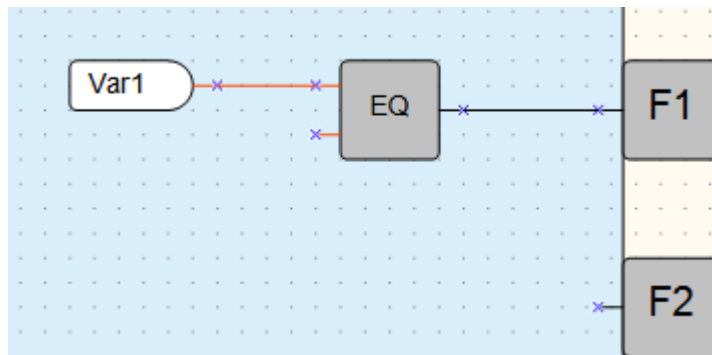
To add a network variable to the program:

1. Click on icon  or  in toolbar **Insert**.
2. Click the point in the workspace to place the variable block.
3. Double click the block or click on icon “...” in the Variable row in the Property Box. Variable table opens. Select a variable or create a new one. Only the editable tabs in the table are available for selection. The availability is limited by the block type.
4. Confirm the selection with **OK**. The variable is assigned to the block.





Connect the network variable block to the necessary element in the workspace.



If the variable block is highlighted in red, it means that the creation is incorrect or not completed. The information about the error is shown in the status bar.

Creating variables in the variable table is the recommended first step in programming.

If the variable is used more than once in a project, all references can be followed with item **Show references** in the variable block context menu.

#### 4.3.6 Read from/Write to FB

The ReadFromFB/WriteToFB blocks are used to read or write a parameter value of a function block during the program execution.

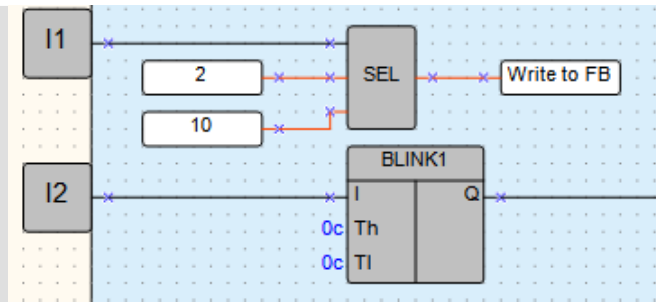
The following blocks can be added to the circuit:

-  — to write the value to a FB;
-  — to read the value from a FB.

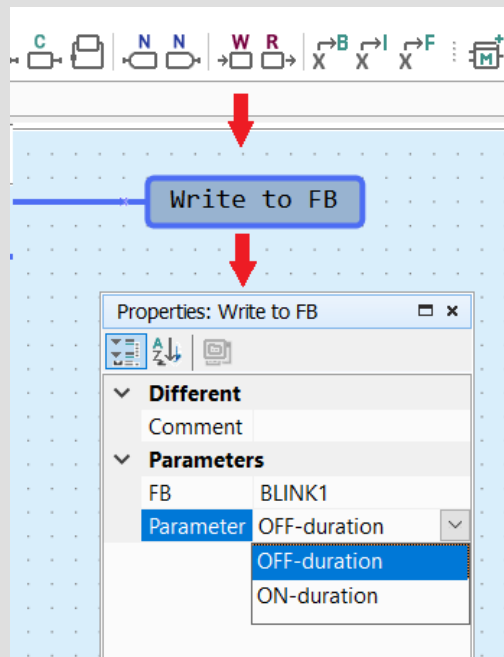
The block **WriteToFB** () is used to change an FB parameter during the process.

##### **Example:**

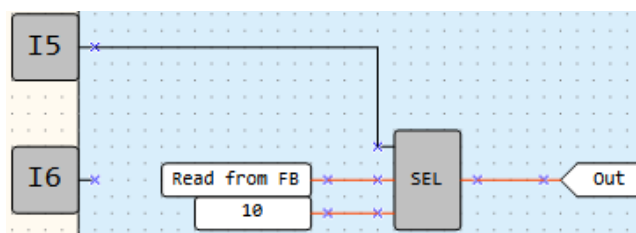
The value of the parameter **ON-duration** of the FB **BLINK1** should be 2 or 10 depending on the value at the input **I1**.



Go to **Property Box**, select the FB **BLINK1** in the row **Function block** and the parameter of the FB in the row **Parameter in FB**.



The block **ReadFromFB** () reads the current value of an FB parameter and uses it in the program. Editing is similar to the **WriteToFB** block.

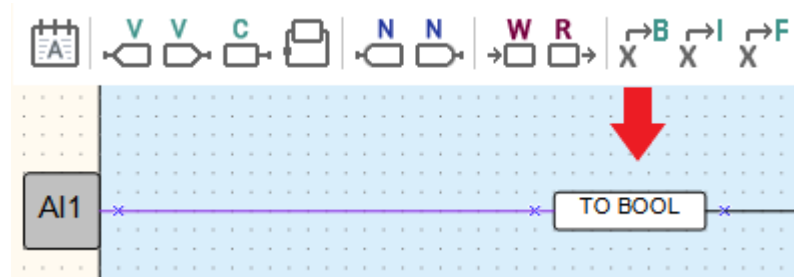


#### 4.3.7 Conversion block

A connection line between program components can only be created for an input and an output of the same type: Boolean, Integer, Floating Point, or Array (with the same number and type of elements). To create a connection between an input and an output of different types, use conversion blocks.

Using conversion blocks with variables of the Array type is not possible. Conversion of individual array elements is allowed.

To add the conversion block to the program, click the corresponding icon in the toolbar **Insert**, then click the required place in the workspace.



Conversion blocks:

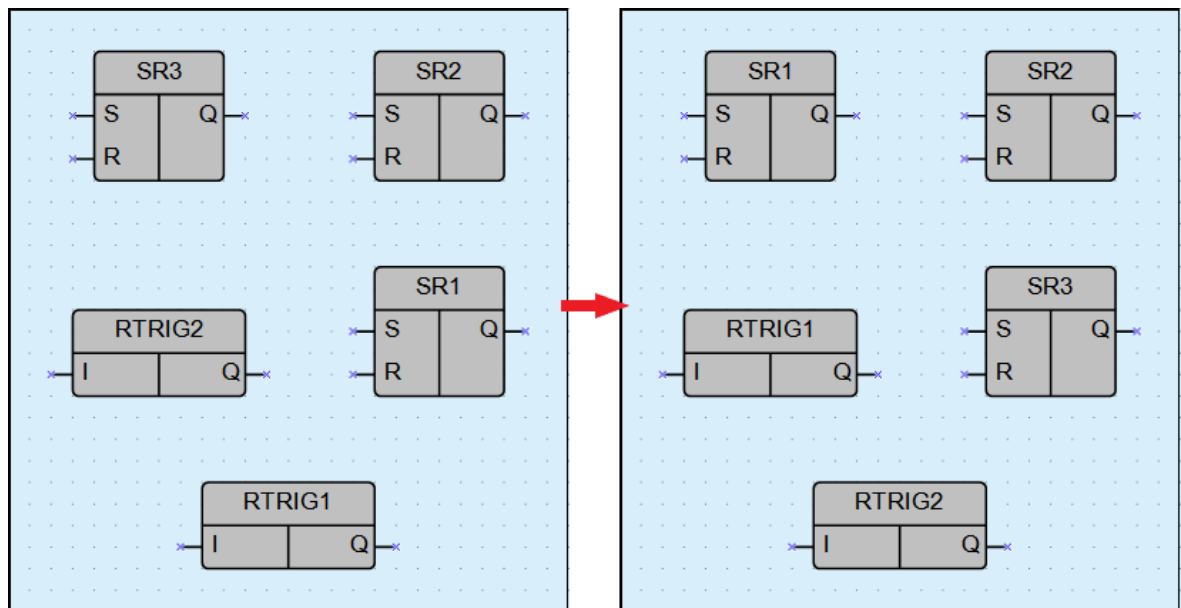
|       |                           |                                                                                               |
|-------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $x^B$ | <b>Conversion to BOOL</b> | Converts INT or REAL to BOOL<br>If the input value > 0, the output = 1 (True)                 |
| $x^I$ | <b>Conversion to INT</b>  | Converts BOOL or REAL to INT<br>REAL is rounded down to INT, negative value is converted to 0 |
| $x^F$ | <b>Conversion to REAL</b> | Converts BOOL or INT to REAL                                                                  |

#### 4.3.8 Arrange elements

The sequence numbers of the function blocks can be automatically reassigned by clicking the button



**Arrange elements** in the toolbar **Service**. The blocks of the same type are numbered sequentially from top to bottom and from left to right.



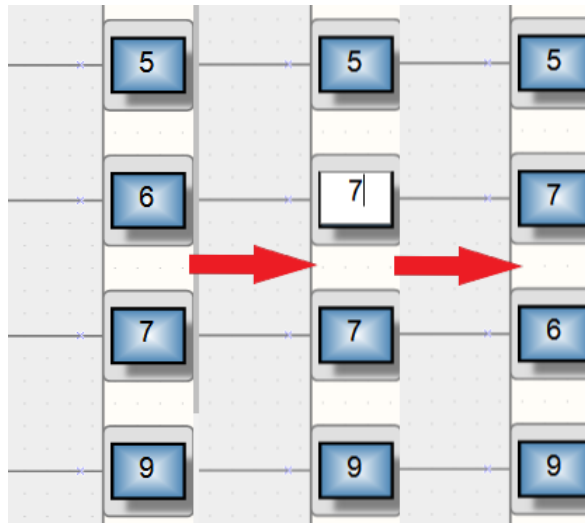
#### 4.3.9 Execution sequence

Calculation of the values for outputs and delay lines is performed in a certain order. To see this order,

click the arrow near the icon  in the toolbar **Service** and select **Delay lines** or **Outputs**.

ALP will switch to the execution order setting mode – the sequence numbers of the execution order will be displayed near the outputs and feedbacks.

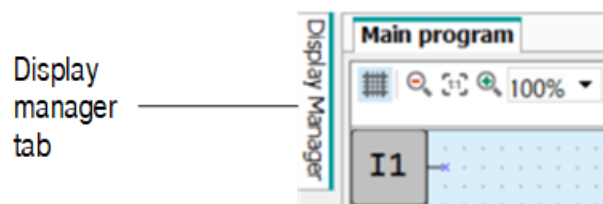
To change the order, double-click an output or a delay line and enter the required number.



Click the icon  once more to deactivate the edit mode.

#### 4.4 Display programming

If the device is equipped with a display, it can be used to show various information according to the algorithm defined in the program. The screen can display text, graphic components, and program variable values. The *Display Manager* is used for programming the display. To open the Display Manager, click its tab title on the left side of the workspace.



The display manager differs between devices with graphical color LCDs and those with monochrome text LCDs as follows:

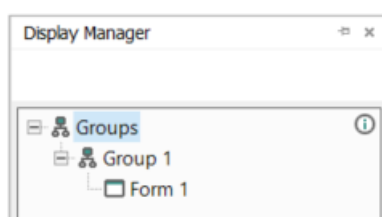


Fig. 4.1 Display manager for devices with a monochrome text LCD

By default, Form 1 is added to Group 1:

- Group 1 can be edited
- Group 1 cannot be deleted

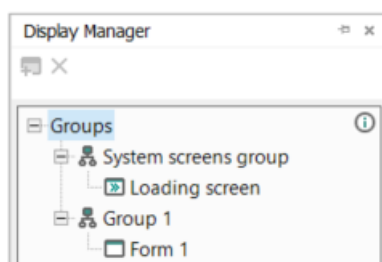


Fig. 4.2 Display manager for devices with a graphical color LCD

By default, a Loading screen is added to the System screens group:

- The System Screens group and the Loading screen cannot be edited or deleted.

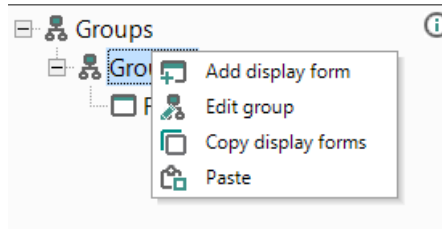
By default, Form 1 is added to Group 1:

- Group 1 can be edited
- Group 1 cannot be deleted

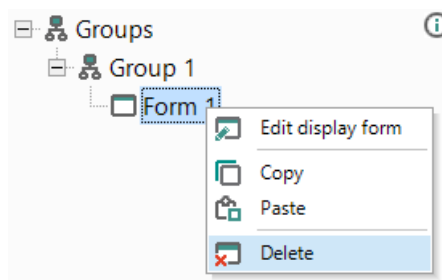
### Adding Screens

You can add multiple display forms in the display manager. It is possible to configure display form jumps on the device's display triggered by button presses or variable changes. The configuration of jumps differs between *monochrome text LCDs* and *graphical color LCDs*.

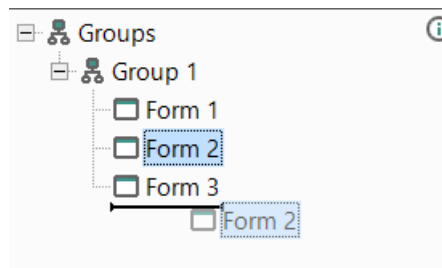
To add a screen, right-click on the **Group 1** element and select **Add display form** from the context menu.



To delete a screen, right-click on the desired screen and select **Delete** from the context menu.



To change a display form's position, use the drag-and-drop method while holding down the **Shift** key.



When moving a display form, the new position will be indicated by a horizontal marker.

### Display form editor

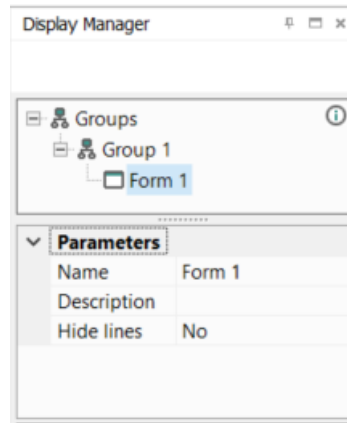
The functionality of the display form editor depends on the type of display in the device:

- Monochrome text LCD
- Graphical color LCD

#### 4.4.1 Monochrome text LCD

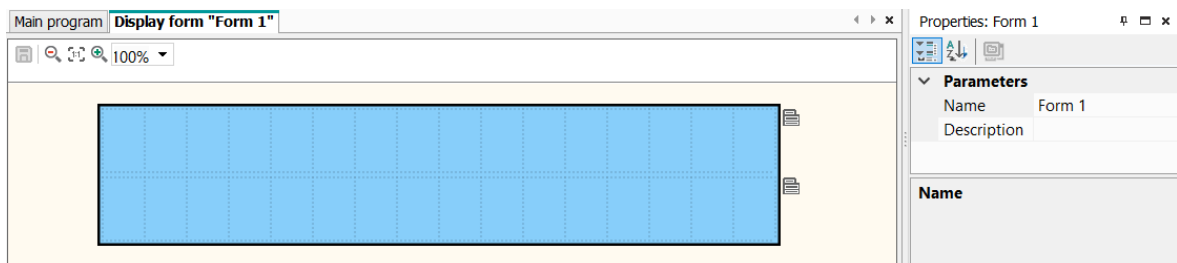
##### Display parameters

**Display parameters** are displayed in the properties box of the **Display manager**.



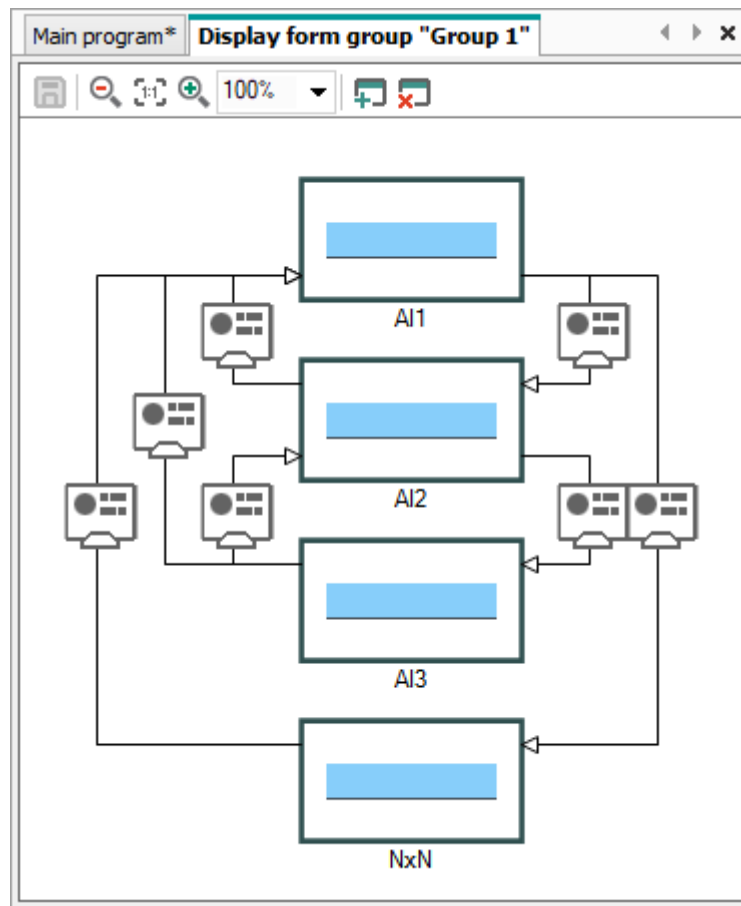
- **Name** – displayed in the **Display manager** and in the display editor's title bar.
- **Description** – a text description of the display form.
- **Hide lines** – hides or shows empty rows on the device's screen.

To display the **parameters** of a display form in the Property Box panel, double-click the desired display form in the **Display manager**.



### Display form group editor

For devices with a monochrome text LCD, the Screen Group Editor is also available. It is opened by selecting the **Edit Group** command from the context menu of a screen group in the **Display manager**.



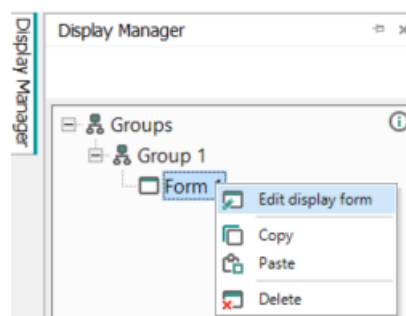
At the top of the Screen Editor and Screen Group Editor windows, the following buttons are available:

|                                                                                     |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|  | <b>Save Document</b> |
|  | <b>Zoom Out</b>      |
|  | <b>Actual Size</b>   |
|  | <b>Zoom In</b>       |

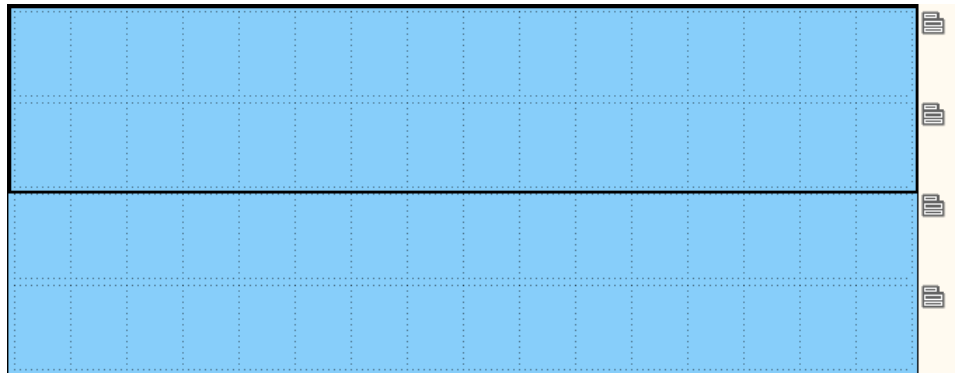
The zoom level can also be changed using the dropdown menu to the right of these buttons.

### Display editor

To open the selected form in **Display Editor**, use the command  **Edit display form** in the form context menu or double-click the form in the tree.



An icon  on the right edge of each row represents the row context menu, which is used to change the number and the order of the displayed rows.



Put the display elements 7.6 from **Library Box** by drag-and-drop onto the form.

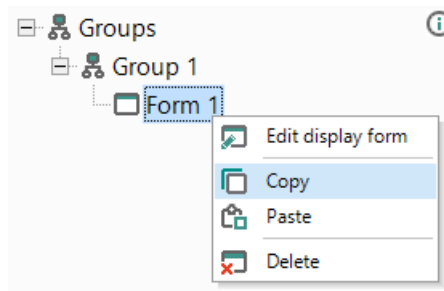


### NOTE

The character set is implemented within the Windows-1251 encoding.

### Copy-paste display form

In the Display Manager, you can copy forms for pasting into the current or another project. To copy selected forms, select the **Copy** command in the context menu of a form or group of forms, or press the **Ctrl + C** key combination. Multiple screens can be selected by holding down the **Ctrl** or **Shift** key.



To paste copied forms, select the **Paste** command in the context menu of a form or group of forms, or press the key combination **Ctrl + V**.

All controls and screen properties placed on the form are copied along with the form. The variables associated with the form are also copied, according to the rules described in the section Copy-paste variables.

Jumps between the selected forms are copied as well. If the form has a related jump outside the selected area, this jump is deleted.

### Jumps

If the display structure consists of more than one form, “jumps” should be defined to enable the navigation between forms.

To create a jump:

1. Right-click on the **Group 1** element in the display manager tree and select **Edit group** in the context menu. The screen group editor tab will open.
2. Select the start form in the form group editor.
3. Click on icon “...” in row **to display form** in **Property box**. Jump dialog window will open.

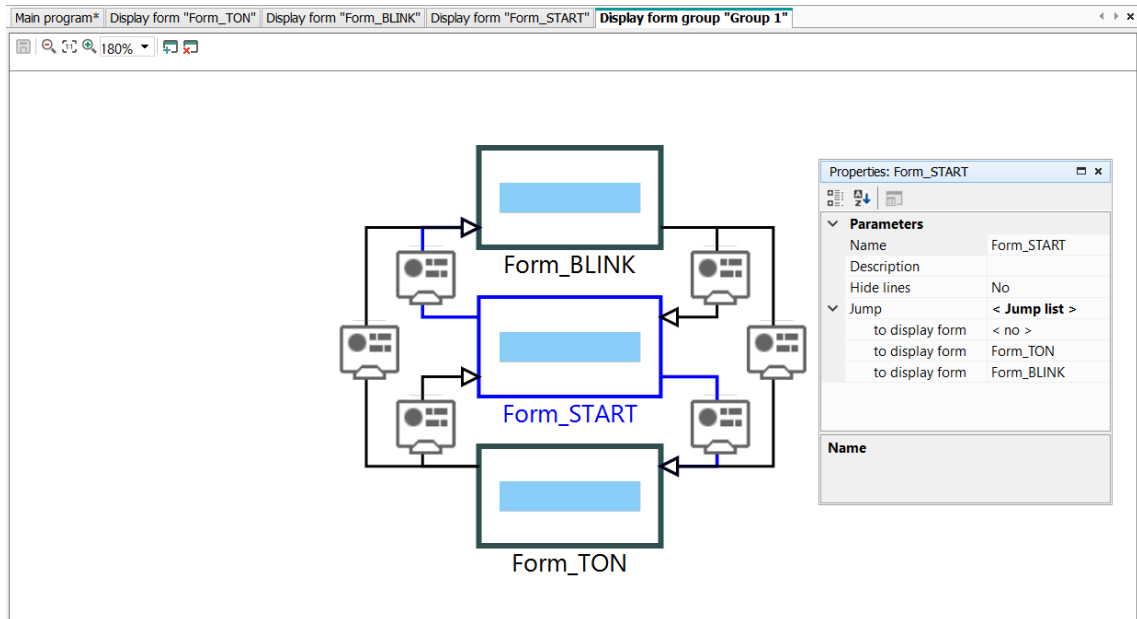
In the drop-down menu, select another form to go to.

4. Select the event in section **Jump condition** as device event or change of a variable by value.  
 A button event can be selected as **Device event**.  
 A BOOL variable can be selected for **Change by value** event.

**NOTE**

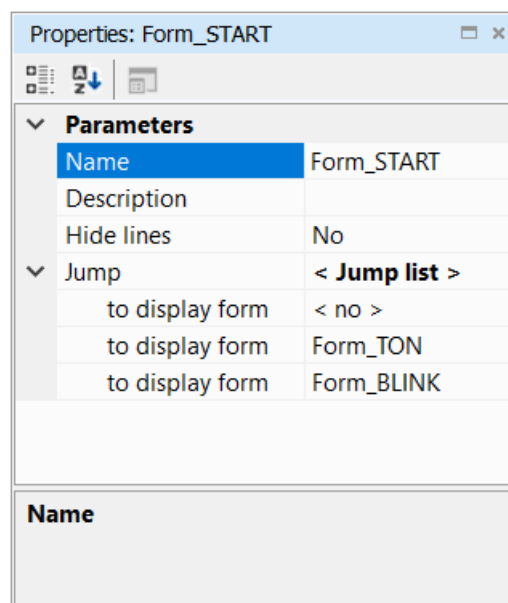
An unconditional transition is used to configure a jump when none of the specified events or variable value changes occur, for example, to switch to an alarm screen.

5. Confirm with **OK**. The created jump is shown in the structure.



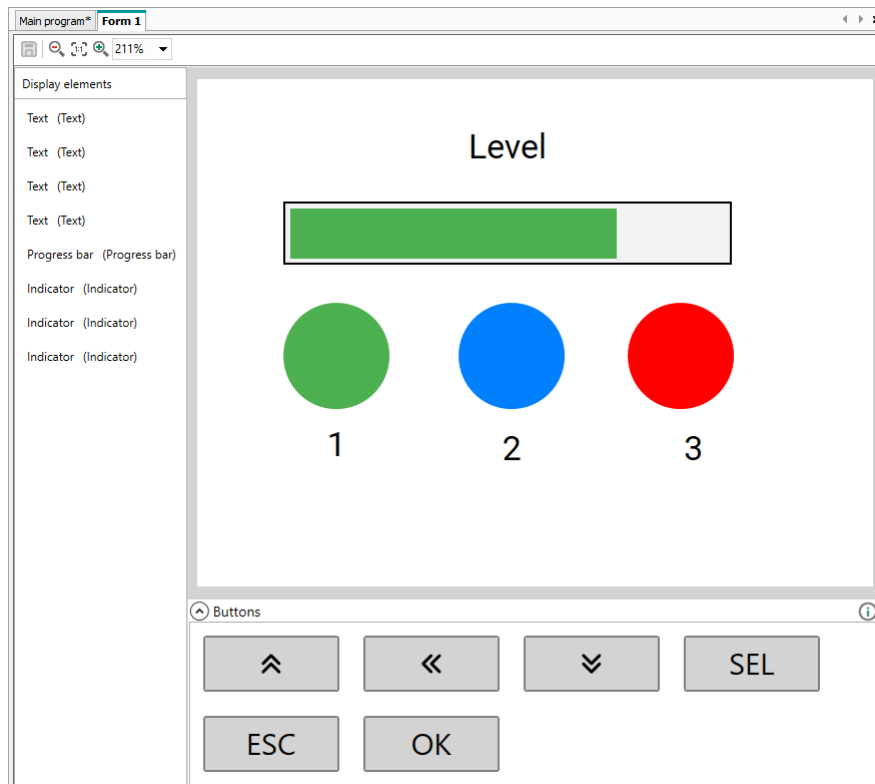
The jumps can occur based on various events. To accommodate this, multiple jumps **collection** can be configured. Jumps are added in the same way as described above.

To edit or delete a transition, select it in the screen's properties and configure the corresponding parameters. A transition will be deleted if the value in the **Jump list** field of the transition creation menu is set to **<no>**.



#### 4.4.2 Graphic color LCD

For devices with graphic color LCD, the display output is programmed using graphic elements.



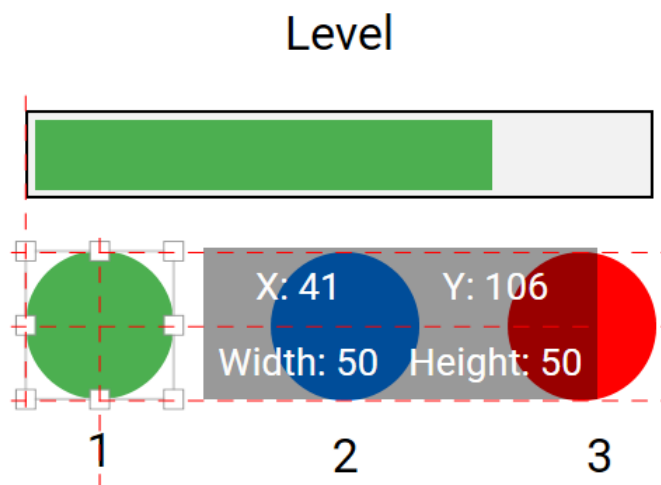
Screen Editor Areas:

- **Screen elements panel** is used to display the list of components located in the screen field. In the screen elements panel, you can also change the order of graphic elements and assign names to them;
- **Screen field** is used for arrangement of graphic elements;
- **Buttons** are used to program the device buttons.

Graphic elements to be placed into the screen field can be selected from the **Library Box**. Element descriptions are given in *Basic Elements* section.

A screen simulation window is available in *simulator mode*.

### Screen field



When graphic elements are moved into the field, tooltips appear with coordinates and dimensions of the element and guide lines relative to other elements.

The following context menu actions are available for graphic elements and graphic element groups:

- Copy

- Insert
- Delete
- Move to the foreground and background
- Align

Double-click on the graphical elements **Text** and **Dynamic Text** to activate the text input mode or on other elements to open the variable binding window.

Graphical elements can be moved using the arrows on the keyboard, and other actions can be performed using keyboard shortcuts.

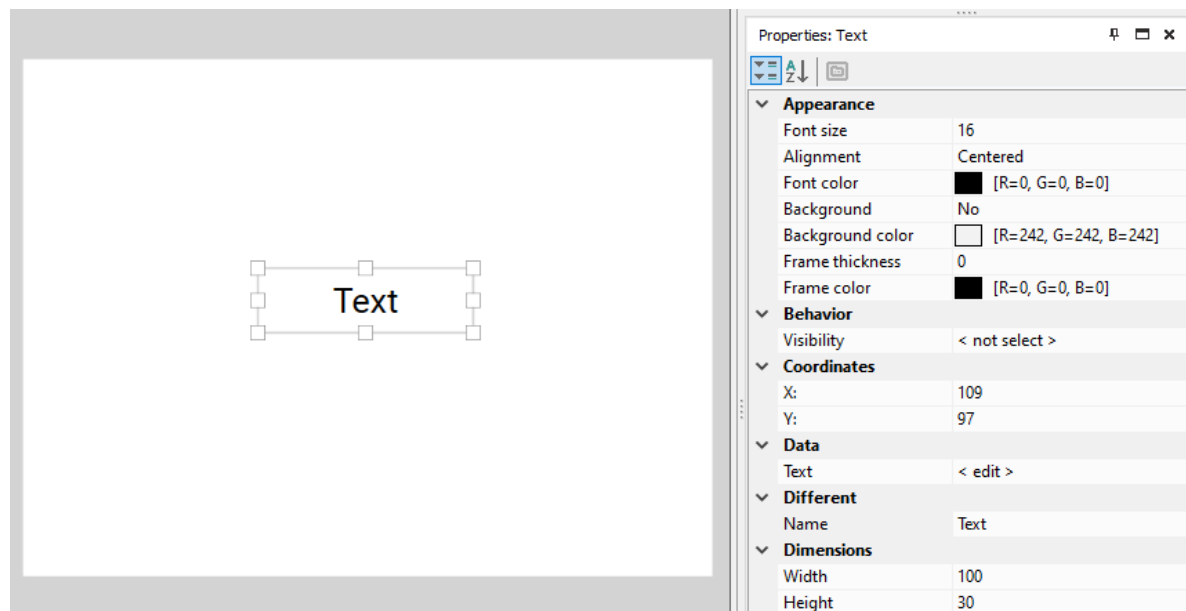
### Properties of graphic elements

The properties of a graphical element are displayed when:

- selecting the graphical element located on the screen canvas.
- selecting the graphical element located in the Display elements panel.

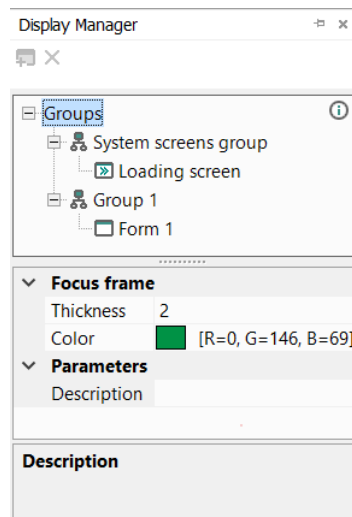
Properties common to all graphic elements:

- **Element name**;
- **Size** - width and height in pixels;
- **Coordinates** - on X and Y axes, the reference point is the upper left edge of the element.



### Screen Groups

For the **Groups** folder, the properties panel of the **Display manager** allows you to configure parameters that will be applied to all visualization elements on every screen within that group. Changing settings at the group level automatically affects all graphical elements located on all screens in the group.



– **Parameters:**

**Description** – a text description of the screen group.

– **Focus frame:**

**Thickness** – the thickness of the frame around a graphical element in focus, both in simulation mode and on the device screen.

**Color** – the color of the frame around a graphical element in focus, both in simulation mode and on the device screen.

### Loading screen

For devices with a graphical color LCD, you can upload a custom image for the screen that is displayed during device initialization after power-up.



**NOTE**

By default, a pre-installed image is shown on the loading screen.

To add a custom image, double-click the left mouse button on the **Loading screen** element in the **Display manager** tab. The **Loading screen image** window will open:

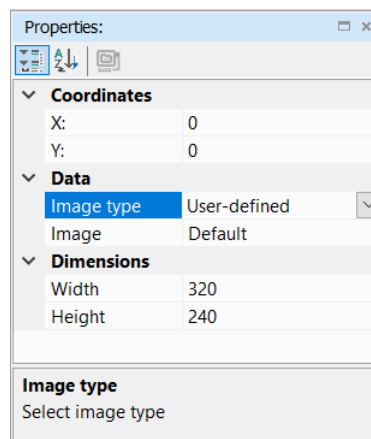


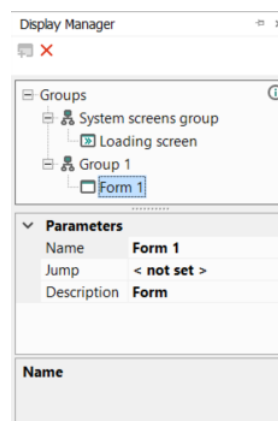
Fig. 4.3 Loading screen image properties

| Group       | Parameter  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Additional Options                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Coordinates | X          | The X-coordinate position of the element. The element's position is determined by the coordinates of its top-left corner. Coordinates start from 0 and increase from left to right. The maximum value is determined by the element's width and the screen's width.   | Coordinates can be set by dragging the object on the screen canvas.                                                                                                                |
|             | Y          | The Y-coordinate position of the element. The element's position is determined by the coordinates of its top-left corner. Coordinates start from 0 and increase from top to bottom. The maximum value is determined by the element's height and the screen's height. |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Data        | Image Type | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Selecting "Default" disables further parameter configuration – the startup screen will display the pre-installed image.</li> <li>– Selecting "User-defined" enables configuration of the image parameters.</li> </ul>       |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|             | Image      | Select the image file.<br>The following file types are available for selection: *.jpg; *.jpeg; *.jpe, *.bmp. The maximum image resolution is limited by the device's screen resolution. Image scaling down is allowed within the ALP screen editor                   |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Dimensions  | Width      | The width of the element along the X-axis. The maximum value cannot exceed the width of the loaded image.                                                                                                                                                            | Element size can be set by resizing the object's boundaries on the screen canvas. The width and height of the element change proportionally to the dimensions of the loaded image. |
|             | Height     | The height of the element along the Y-axis. The maximum value cannot exceed the height of the loaded image.                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                    |

When the device boots up, the first screen from the Screen Group 1 list is displayed by default.

### Display form parameters

Display form parameters are displayed in the properties panel of the **Display manager**.



- **Name** – displayed in the **Display manager** and in the display editor's title bar.
- **Jump** – for creating transitions between display forms.
- **Description** – a text description of the display form.

### Jumps between display forms

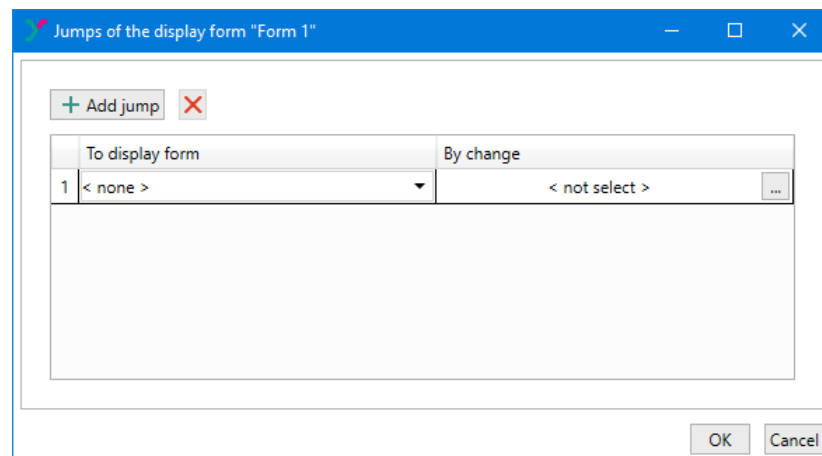


#### NOTE

Configuring transitions to the **Loading screen** is not available.

To create a jump for a graphical display:

1. Right-click on the screen in the screen manager tree and select **Set up jumps** in the context menu or click on the ... button in the **Jump** field of the display form properties. The Jump Editor window opens. The selected screen will be the starting point for the transition.



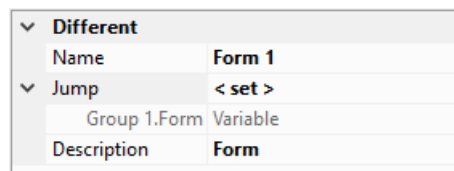
2. From the **To display form** drop-down menu, select another display form to transition to.
3. In the **By change** drop-down menu, specify a Boolean variable, which, when its value is changed, triggers the jump. After the transition is executed, the value of the bound variable is changed to "0".



#### NOTE

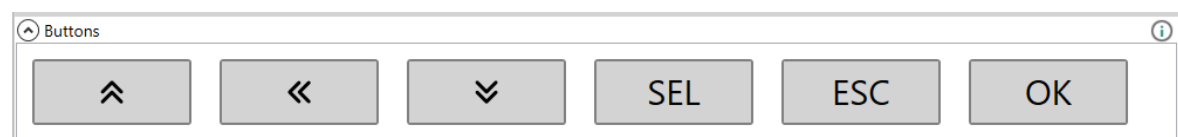
To create a button-triggered jump, see below.

4. To add another jump, click **+ Add jump**, to delete a selected jump, click **X**.
5. Click **OK**. The created jumps will be displayed in the display form properties. The order in which the jumps are executed corresponds to their order in the display form properties.



### Configuring Screen Jumps Using a Button

At the bottom of the visualization editor, there is a "Buttons" panel that displays all the physical buttons available on the device:



Double-click a button to open the event programming window. The buttons are programmed separately for each display form.

The following events are available for programming the button:

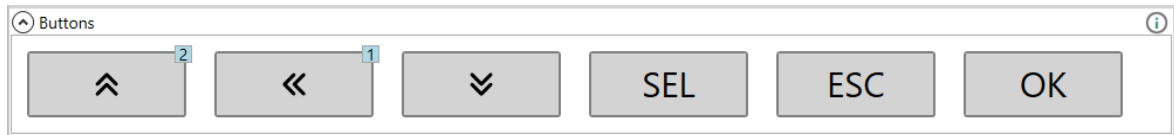
- short press (less than 3 seconds)
- long press (3 seconds or more)
- hold (5 seconds or more)

You can program several handlers for short and long presses (jumps to other display forms and changes in the value of Boolean variables). Only a handler for changing the values of Boolean variables can be programmed to hold. Handlers are executed in the program in the order in which they are added.

To add a variable, click **Add Variable**. To delete a programmed action, press . Programming overrides the default button behaviors. To return to the default behavior of the buttons, delete the event handlers and write the program to the device.

If no actions have been set by the user for the **Up** and **Down** buttons, then when they are pressed the device will move to other screens according to the order in the screen manager window.

Once programmed, the button menu will indicate the number of events for each button.

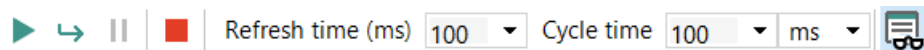


#### 4.5 Simulation

The correctness of the created program can be verified using the simulation mode, which models how output states change in response to changes in input states. Simulation allows you to analyze the state of signals within the program.

To enter simulator mode, click the  button on the toolbar or select **Tools** → **Simulator Mode** from the main menu. The simulation panel will open.

##### Simulation toolbar



|                                                                                     |                                |                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Start</b>                   | Start the permanent simulation                                                                                                           |
|    | <b>Single cycle</b>            | Step-by-step simulation. Click the icon to execute one program cycle                                                                     |
|   | <b>Pause</b>                   | Interrupt the simulation. Click the icon once more time to continue the simulation                                                       |
|  | <b>Stop</b>                    | Stop simulation                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                     | <b>Refresh time</b>            | Input field for setting the information refresh period on the scheme in milliseconds                                                     |
|                                                                                     | <b>Cycle time</b>              | Input fields for setting the cycle time of program execution in simulation mode. Cycle time units: milliseconds, seconds, minutes, hours |
|  | <b>Watch Window</b>            | Open/close the window to watch the variables values at each program step                                                                 |
|  | <b>Display form simulation</b> | Open the display simulation window                                                                                                       |



##### CAUTION

**Cycle time** in simulation mode is not the same as the cycle time calculated by the actual device. The **cycle time** can be set arbitrarily and is required to simulate the operation of timing function blocks – TON, TOF, BLINK. All timing parameters of these function blocks will be processed during the simulator's intermediate steps.

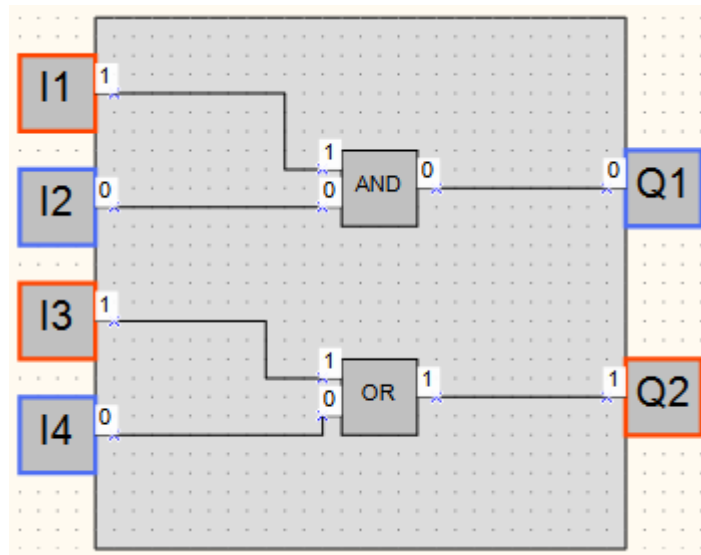
##### Simulation of Clock Blocks

For devices with a real-time clock function, an additional panel opens. This panel allows you to simulate the behavior of the CLOCK and CLOCK WEEK function blocks over time.

Date/time 17:31:11 3 Jul 2019 

##### Simulation procedure

1. Run simulation in one of the modes: real time (  ) or step-by-step (  ).
2. Set the input values on program blocks.



3. Select values of parameters **Refresh time**, **Cycle time** and **Cycle unit time** for convenient simulation.

4. Exit simulation mode to correct the program.

The simulation mode operates according to the following rules:

- The program (on the **Program** tab) and macros are simulated separately.
- The operation of blocks that are not connected to any of the device's outputs or to an output block of a network variable is not simulated.
- Simulation will not work for volatile variables or variables that are linked incorrectly.

### Watch window



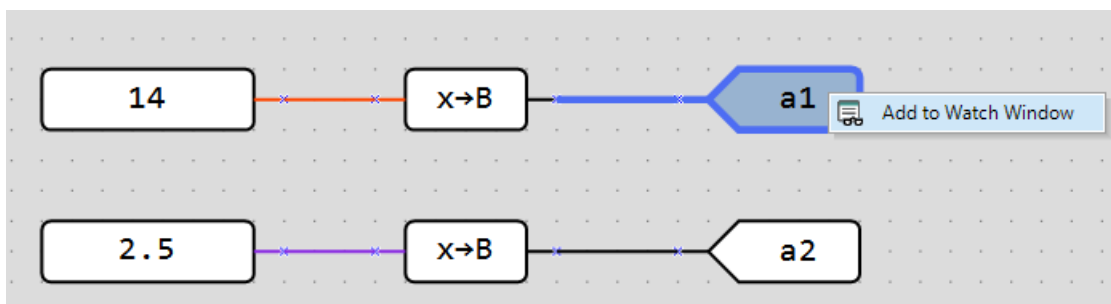
Click icon on the simulation toolbar to watch the input, output or variable values at every program step.

| Watch Window |      |           |
|--------------|------|-----------|
| Name         | Text | Data type |
|              |      |           |
|              |      |           |
|              |      |           |
|              |      |           |

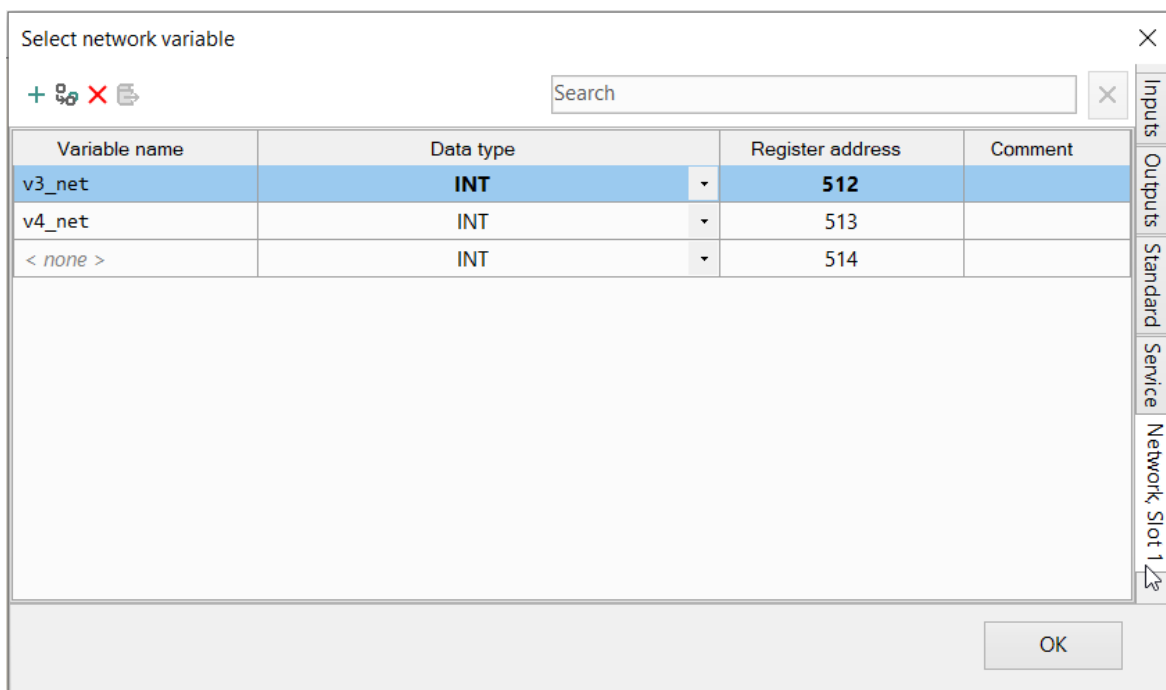
To add an input, an output or a variable to the **Watch list**, click the empty field in the **Name** column and then click on the “...” icon appeared to the left.

| Watch Window |      |           |
|--------------|------|-----------|
| Name         | Text | Data type |
| I5           | 0    | BOOL      |
| a2           | 0    | BOOL      |
| b2           | 0    | BOOL      |
|              |      |           |
|              |      |           |

Also to add a variable to the **Watch Window**, right-click on the variable in the diagram and select **Add to Watch Window** from the context menu.



The **Variable table** will open. Here project variables, inputs and outputs can be selected.

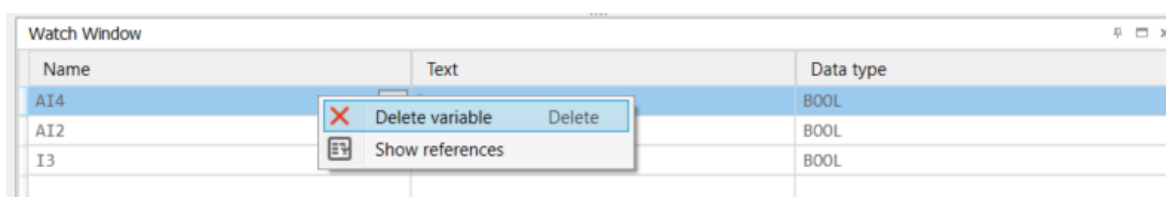


The selected variables are added to the preview window.

| Watch Window |      |           |
|--------------|------|-----------|
| Name         | Text | Data type |
| a1           | 0    | BOOL      |

**Unused** variables will appear grayed out in the watch window, their value is always shown as 0, and it is not possible to enter a value for such variables.

To delete a variable from the watch window, select the variable and press Delete, or use the variable's context menu in **Watch Window**:

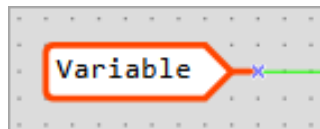


It is not possible to delete an array element that is nested within another array.

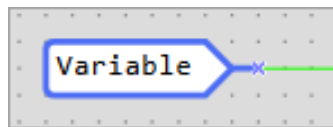
### Entering Variable Values

In simulator mode, variable values can be set in the watch window under the **Values** column. Variable values can also be set directly on the diagram. Double-clicking a variable opens a window with a field for entering a new value.

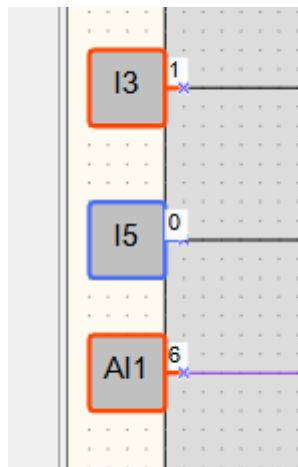
After entering a non-zero value for a variable, the block on the diagram will turn red for one program execution cycle. If simulation is stopped, the block will remain red until simulation is started again or the **Single Cycle Step** command is executed:



After entering a zero value for a variable (for an array variable, all elements must have the value 0/ False), the block on the diagram will turn blue for one program execution cycle. If simulation is stopped, the block will remain blue until simulation is started again or the **Single Cycle Step** command is executed:



In simulator mode, the values of device inputs can also be changed by clicking on them. Clicking on an input toggles its color and boolean value. For analog inputs, the value is set similarly to variables, using a window with an input field.



The values of the variables, inputs and outputs can be set in the **Value** column during simulation.

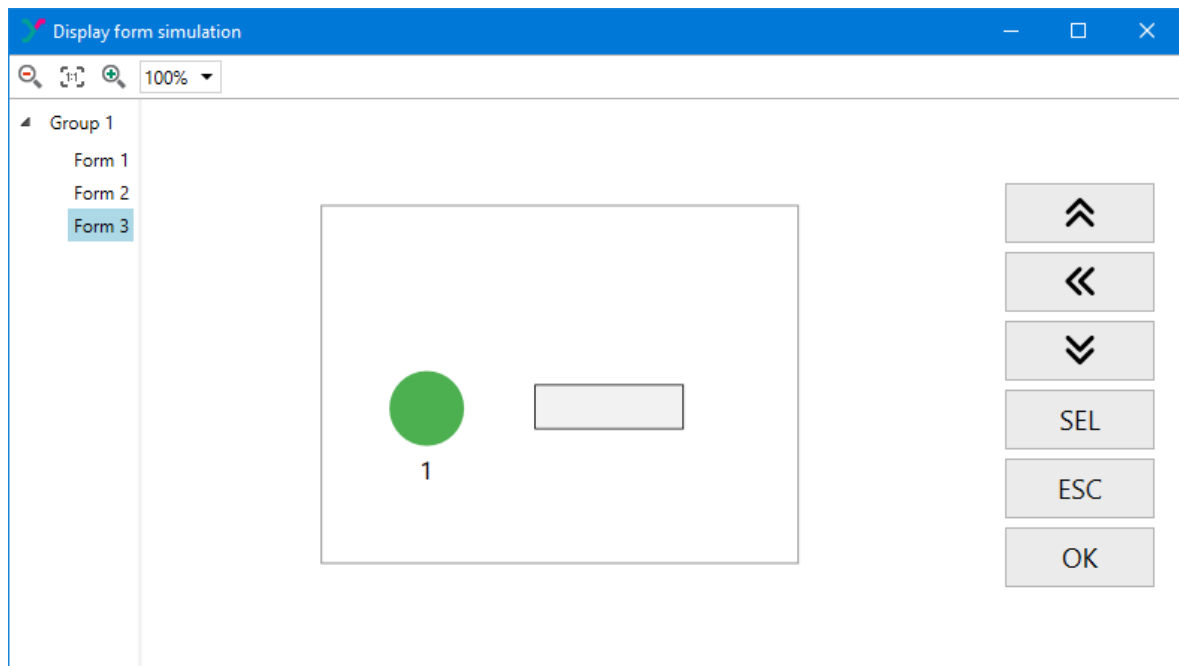
#### 4.5.1 Visualization Simulation

In simulator mode for devices with graphic color LCD, simulation of the device display and buttons is available. After entering the mode, a window displaying the device start screen will open.



#### NOTE

The Graph visualization element is not supported in simulation mode.



Zooming buttons are located in the upper left corner of the window.

A list of screens available in the project is located in the left part of the window.

The center part of the window displays a simulation of the device screen.

Buttons for simulation of actions with real buttons of the device are located in the right part of the window.

### Working with the screen

The following visualization elements can be edited in simulation mode:

- Dynamic Text
- Int/float I/O forms
- Time I/O forms
- IP I/O forms

### Working with buttons

Buttons in the right part of the window are intended for simulation of actions with real buttons of the device.

The button actions are set for each screen. Button actions are processed for the screen that is currently displayed on the main area of the window.

Simulation buttons can be controlled with the keys **Q, W, E, A, S, D, Z, X, C**. Pressing buttons on the keyboard is enabled only if the visualization simulation window is in focus.

In a step-by-step simulation, button hold is not enabled.

### 4.5.2 ST code simulation

Simulation of function or function block code written in the ST language is available in ALP. To use it,

go to the **Function Editor** (or **Function Block Editor**) window and click the  button on the toolbar, or in the main menu **Service** → **Simulator Mode**. The simulation panel will open. In the **Editor** window, the variable values will be displayed in the view boxes next to the variable. If arrays are declared in the program, the word **Modify** is displayed in the view window.

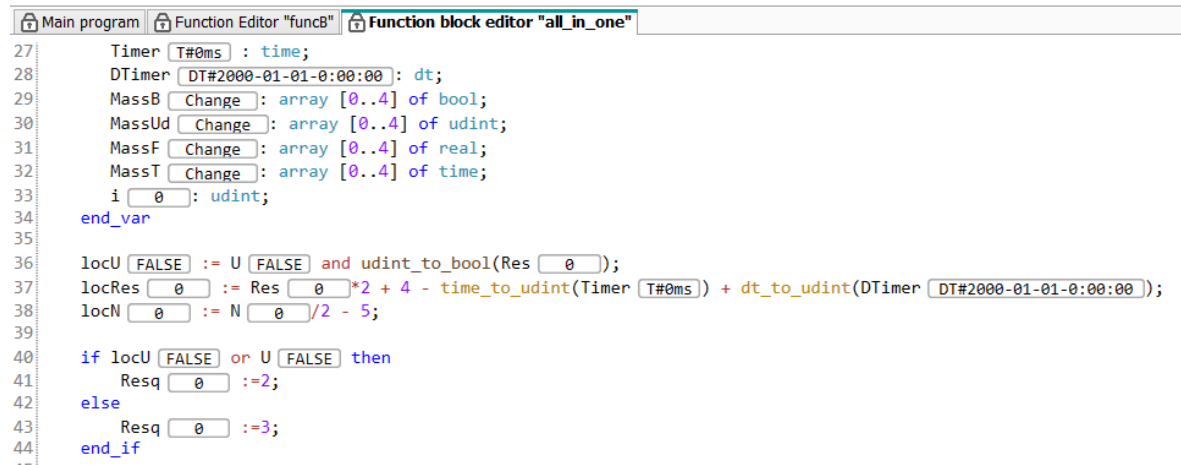


Fig. 4.4 Function block editor window in simulator mode

**Color coding of the view windows:**

- 13.3 — the current value of the variable;
- 12 — the value of the variable has been changed by the user;
- 13.3 — the value of the variable has been fixed by the user
- Change — the value of one or more elements of the array (not all) has been fixed by the user;
- ??? — error: incorrect variable value (for example, when a non-existent array element is specified using a variable).

If you left-click on the view window to enter the value of an integer variable (uint) or a floating point variable (real) in the simulation mode, a window will appear in which you can enter a new value of the variable and, if necessary, fix the value.

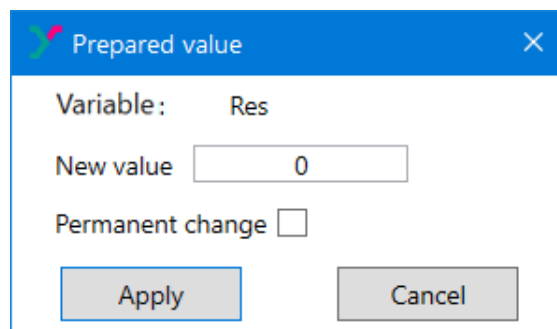


Fig. 4.5 Changing the value of a uint variable

When you left-click on the view window to enter the value of a Boolean variable (bool) in simulation mode, a window will appear where you can select true or false and, if necessary, fix the value.

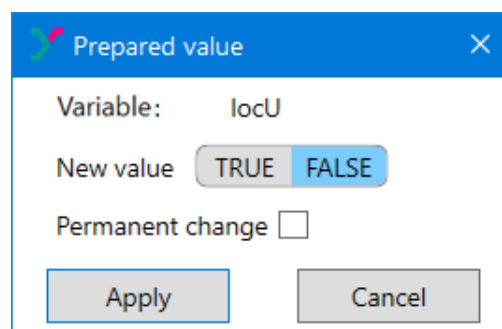


Fig. 4.6 Changing the value of a bool variable

When you left-click the view window to enter the value of a time variable (time or DT) in the simulation mode, a window will appear where you can enter the value in the format T#0d0h0m0s0ms (for time) or DT#2000-01-01-0:00:00 (for dt), and fix the value if necessary.

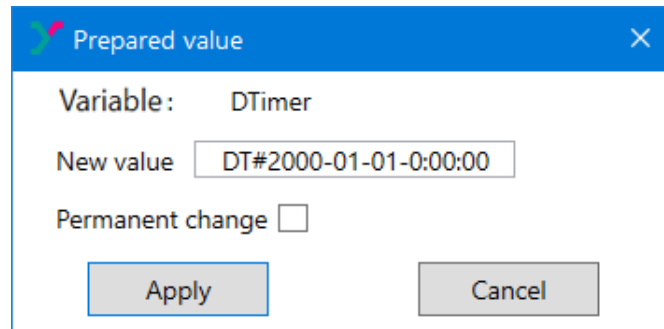


Fig. 4.7 Changing the value of a time variable



#### NOTE

The time is recalculated automatically after the **Accept** button is pressed. For example, the entered value of the variable T#80m will look like T#1h20m when the **Change Value** window is reopened.

If an incorrect value or no value is entered, an error message will appear. The **Accept** button will be disabled.

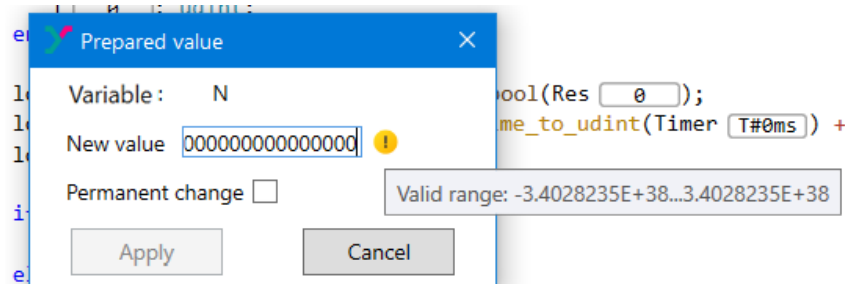
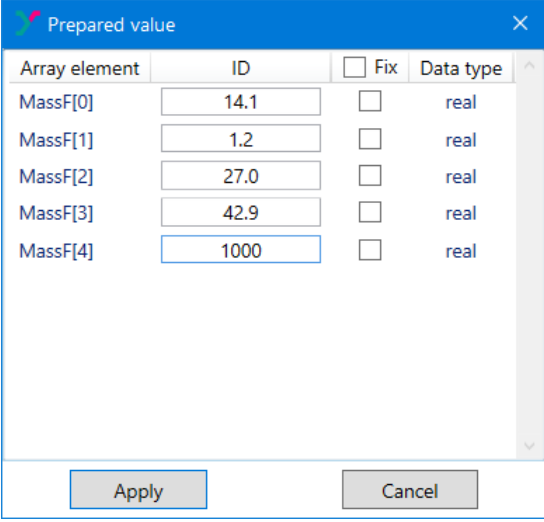


Fig. 4.8 Value entry error

To enter values in the array elements, left-click on the view window labeled **Modify**:

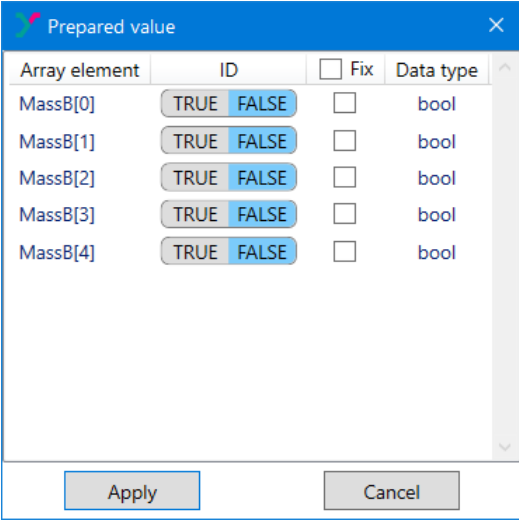
- If the element index is specified by a constant or using a variable, the Change Value for Specific Array Element window will appear;
- If the index of an array element is specified as the result of a mathematical expression or as the result of a function/function block, a window with all elements of the array and variable values available for input will appear:



| Array element | ID   | <input type="checkbox"/> Fix | Data type |
|---------------|------|------------------------------|-----------|
| MassF[0]      | 14.1 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | real      |
| MassF[1]      | 1.2  | <input type="checkbox"/>     | real      |
| MassF[2]      | 27.0 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | real      |
| MassF[3]      | 42.9 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | real      |
| MassF[4]      | 1000 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | real      |

Apply Cancel

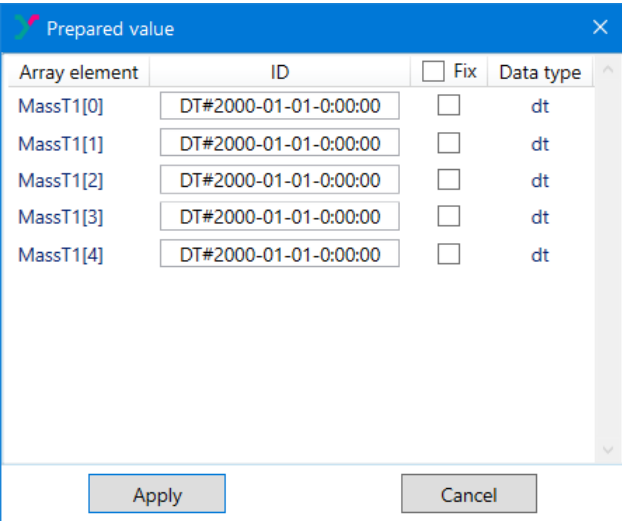
Fig. 4.9 Changing values of array elements with real variables



| Array element | ID         | <input type="checkbox"/> Fix | Data type |
|---------------|------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| MassB[0]      | TRUE FALSE | <input type="checkbox"/>     | bool      |
| MassB[1]      | TRUE FALSE | <input type="checkbox"/>     | bool      |
| MassB[2]      | TRUE FALSE | <input type="checkbox"/>     | bool      |
| MassB[3]      | TRUE FALSE | <input type="checkbox"/>     | bool      |
| MassB[4]      | TRUE FALSE | <input type="checkbox"/>     | bool      |

Apply Cancel

Fig. 4.10 Changing values of array elements with bool variables



| Array element | ID                    | <input type="checkbox"/> Fix | Data type |
|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| MassT1[0]     | DT#2000-01-01-0:00:00 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | dt        |
| MassT1[1]     | DT#2000-01-01-0:00:00 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | dt        |
| MassT1[2]     | DT#2000-01-01-0:00:00 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | dt        |
| MassT1[3]     | DT#2000-01-01-0:00:00 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | dt        |
| MassT1[4]     | DT#2000-01-01-0:00:00 | <input type="checkbox"/>     | dt        |

Apply Cancel

Fig. 4.11 Changing values of array elements with dt variables

If an incorrect value or no value is entered, an error message will appear. The **Accept** button will be disabled.

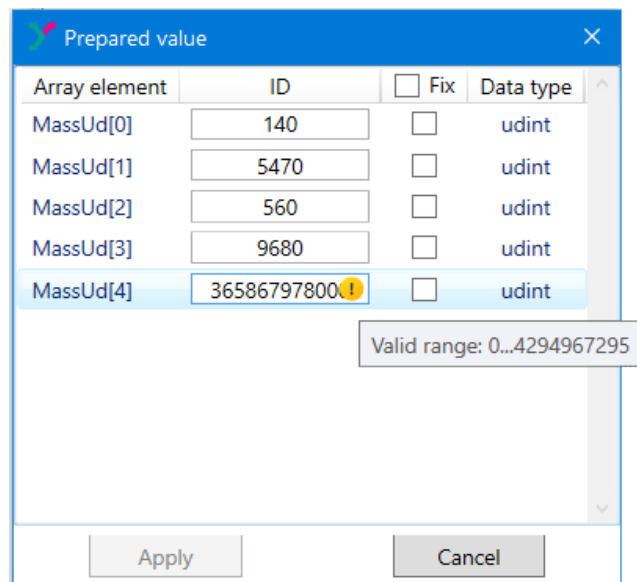


Fig. 4.12 Value entry error

#### 4.6 Connection to device



##### CAUTION

**The device must be powered off before connecting to PC.**

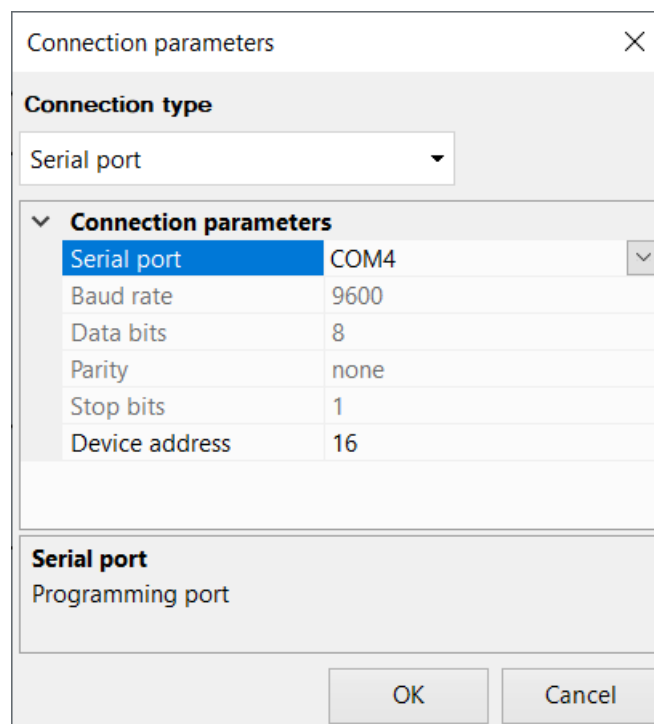
All devices can be connected to PC over USB. If the device has an Ethernet interface, it can be connected over Ethernet. To temporarily interrupt the connection, use **OFFLINE mode**.



##### NOTE

For second generation devices (PR103, PR205, PR225), connection via RS-485 is available using the IC4M USB converter. In this case, the device's operating speed is fixed at 9600 bps.

#### Connection over USB



Devices can be connected to PC over USB.

1. Connect the device to a USB port of the PC and switch the device on.
2. Start ALP and select the menu item **Device > Port settings**.
3. Select **Serial port** for **Connection type**.
4. Select the serial port in the opened dialog. The number of the emulated COM port can be found in the Windows Device Manager under “Connections (COM and LPT)”.
5. Enter the **Device address** (16 by default) and confirm with **OK**. All other parameters are displayed only for your information.

If connection is established successfully, status indicators will show the information about connected device and serial port.

### Connection over Ethernet

The screenshot shows a 'Connection parameters' dialog box. It has a title bar with a close button. Inside, there's a 'Connection type' dropdown menu currently showing 'Ethernet / Wi-Fi'. Below this is a section titled 'Connection parameters' with a dropdown arrow. Under this section, there's a label 'IP address' followed by the value '127.0.0.1'. At the bottom of the dialog, there's a section labeled 'IP address' with the text 'Device IP address for connecting'. The dialog ends with 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

To connect the device to a PC via Ethernet interface, consider the following steps:

1. Connect the device to the same local network as the PC.
2. Find out the IP address of the connected device. The default IP address is specified in User Manual for the device.. The current IP address of the device can be read using the software.
3. Select **Ethernet / Wi-Fi** for **Connection type**.
4. Enter **IP address** of the connected device and confirm with **OK**.

If connection is established successfully, status indicators will show the information about connected device and serial port.

### 4.7 Upload project to device

#### Upload project to device



#### CAUTION

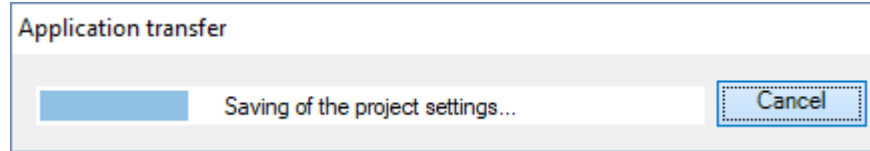
**When a new project is uploaded to the device, the program already stored in the device memory (ROM) will be replaced by the new one.**

Proceed as follows:

1. Connect the device to PC.
2. Power on the device.

3. Adjust the port settings if necessary.
4. Upload project to the device.

The project can be uploaded to the device using the menu item **File** → **Transfer application to device** or clicking the icon  in the toolbar. When the upload is completed, the device can be powered off and disconnected from the PC.



If the target device does not match the connected device, a warning message will be displayed.



### NOTE

**When the program transfer is completed, the device goes to the operating mode and the program starts automatically.**

### OFFLINE mode

In the **OFFLINE** mode, the connection between ALP and the device is interrupted. The mode is helpful when you work with two ALP instances running on PC and trying to communicate with the same device. Both applications will alternately occupy the port and the connection to the device will be constantly interrupted.

The ALP instance that is not to interact with the device has to be set to OFFLINE mode. OFFLINE mode can be activated / deactivated using the menu item **Service** → **OFFLINE mode** or by clicking the status indicator 3.7 Device. With the next click OFFLINE mode deactivated.

### 4.8 Online debugging

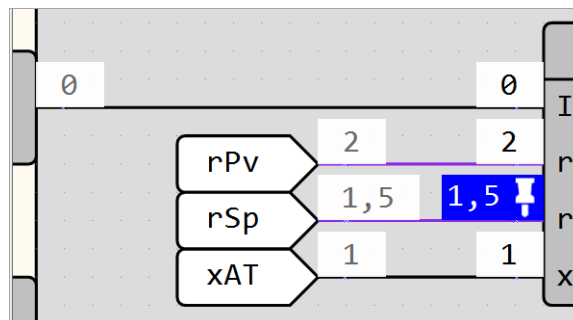
The online debug mode is designed for testing the program in real time with actual values from the device inputs. Online debugging is carried out only with the device connected to a PC. In online debugging mode, it is not possible to make changes to the project.

#### Sequence and rules of work in online debugging mode

Online debugging can only be performed after the program has been loaded into the device. The program in the device must match the program in the project diagram. The device must have the same version firmware.

To perform online debugging you should:

1. Start online debugging by clicking the button  on the toolbar - the online debugging panel will open.
2. Check the logic of the program operation with real values at the device inputs, which are displayed on the diagram.

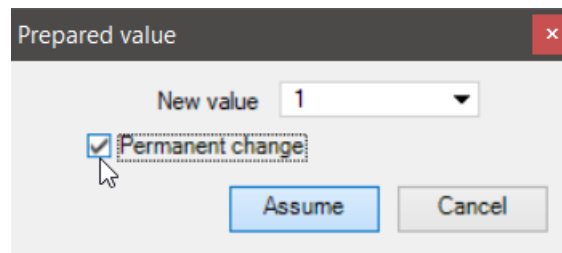


3. To make adjustments, exit the online debugging mode by pressing the button .

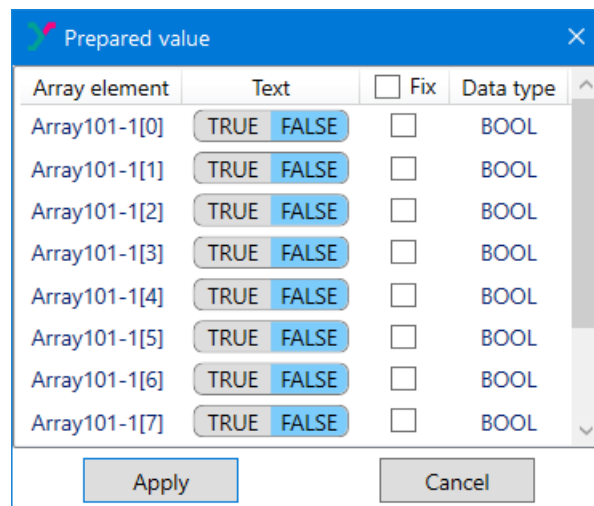
Online debugging is available only for the project diagram (to check the operation of macros, functions and function blocks in the ST language, you should use Simulation).

### Manual assignment of values

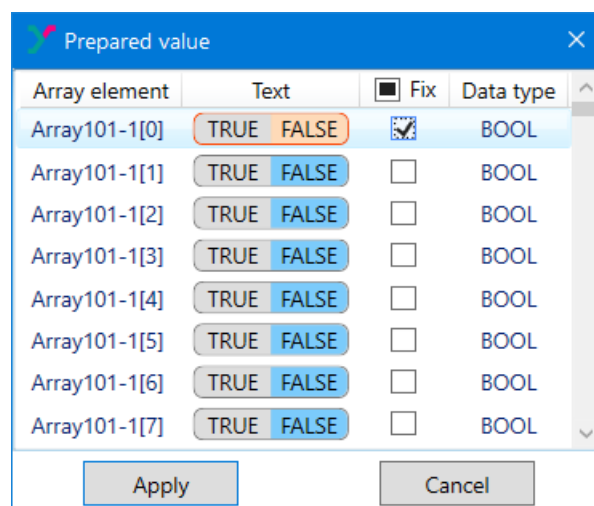
In online debugging mode, you can set the required values for output variable blocks, as well as for function inputs, function blocks, and macros. To set a value in online debugging mode, click on the variable value plate and enter the new value in the window that opens.



For a variable of the array type, it is possible to enter the values of all array elements:

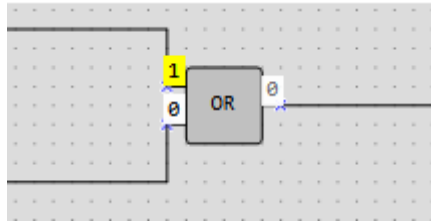


The entered values of an array variable element in the "Change Value" window are highlighted in orange:

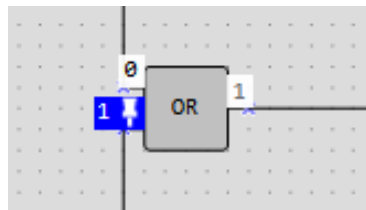
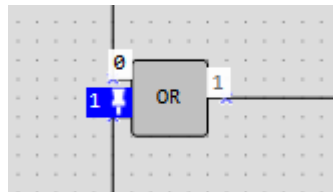


### Displaying values on a diagram

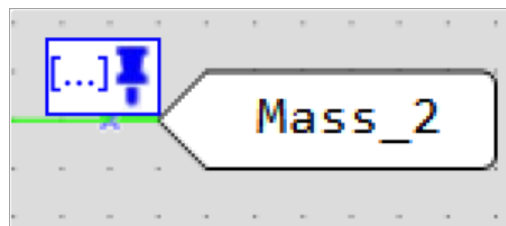
If you do not check the box **Fix the values**, then the new value will be valid for one working cycle. At the end of the current cycle or at the beginning of the next one, the specified value can be overwritten. During the action, the set value is highlighted in yellow.



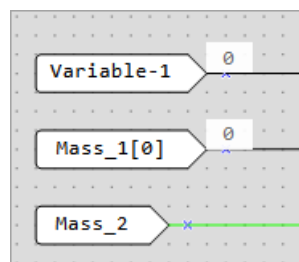
If you lock a set value, it will remain in effect every work cycle until you manually change it to another value, or until you release the lock. Value fixing is disabled when exiting online debugging mode. For array type variables, it is possible to fix one, several, or all values of the array elements. The fixed value (for arrays - fixing the values of all elements) is displayed on the diagram as a blue box:



If you fix the value of one or more elements of the array (not all), the bar is displayed in white with a blue border:

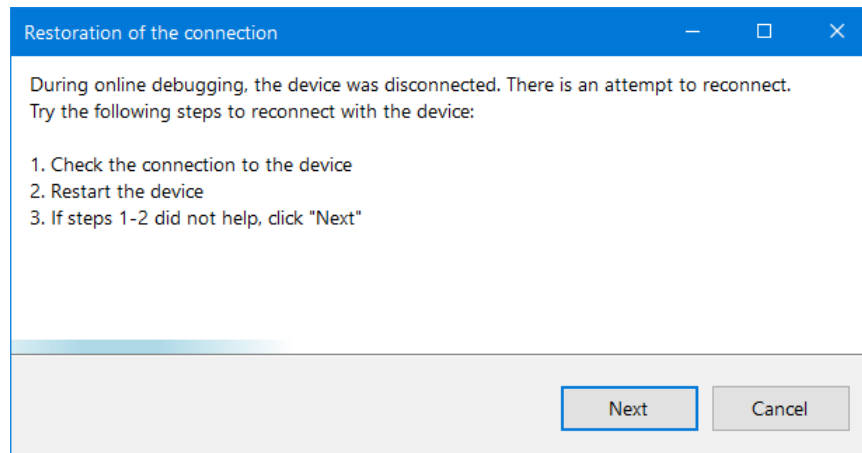


It is not possible to set the values of the input variable blocks, so the values of these input variables are displayed in gray on the diagram. For input blocks of array type variables, the value is not displayed.



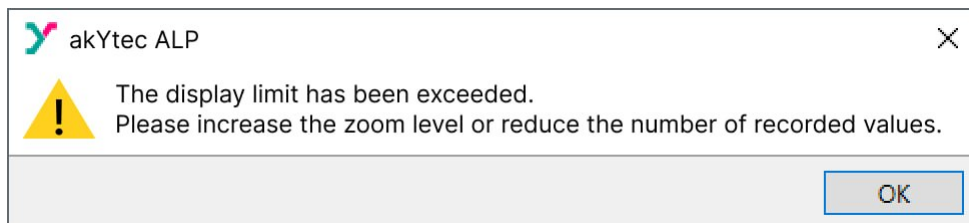
### Troubleshooting

If the connection with the device is lost, the online debugging mode will be disabled after 10 seconds, and the device will switch to operating mode. If you manage to restore the connection, online debugging will continue, but previously recorded values will be disabled.



### Limit of transmitted values

Each device modification has its own limit for the memory buffer used for data transfer in online debugging mode. If the diagram displays empty bars, then a limitation is triggered, and you should increase the diagram scale to reduce the number of values displayed in the diagram window. Committed values remain committed even if they are not displayed in the schematic window, and continue to occupy the memory buffer. If the device's memory buffer is completely full, then clicking on an empty plate will not open the "Change Value" window. Instead, an information message will appear about exceeding the limit of displayed values:



If the device memory buffer is full, but the array type variable has at least one element with a fixed value, then:

- The fixed value is displayed in the "Change Value" window and can be changed or unfixed;
- The values of uncommitted array elements in the "Change Value" window are not displayed and are not available for input.

### 4.9 Project information

Use the menu item **File** → **Project information** to view and modify the information about the program.

#### General

The tab **General** contains the information about the software version.

**Software version at project creation** – the version of the software in which the project has been created.

**Software version at project modification** – the version of the software in which the project has been modified.

Project information

General Project

Software version at project creation 2.4.2653.0

Software version at project modification 2.4.2653.0

OK Cancel

### Project

The tab **Project** is not available for each device. In the tab you can specify information about the group, number and version of the program to be displayed in the **Device information** window of the connected device after the project is saved to it.

Project information

General Project

Group PR200

Number 0101

Version 0 . 0 . 1

OK Cancel

- **Group** –project group name
- **Number** – project number within the group
- **Version** – project version

Click **OK** to save the information in the project, or click **Cancel** to discard it.

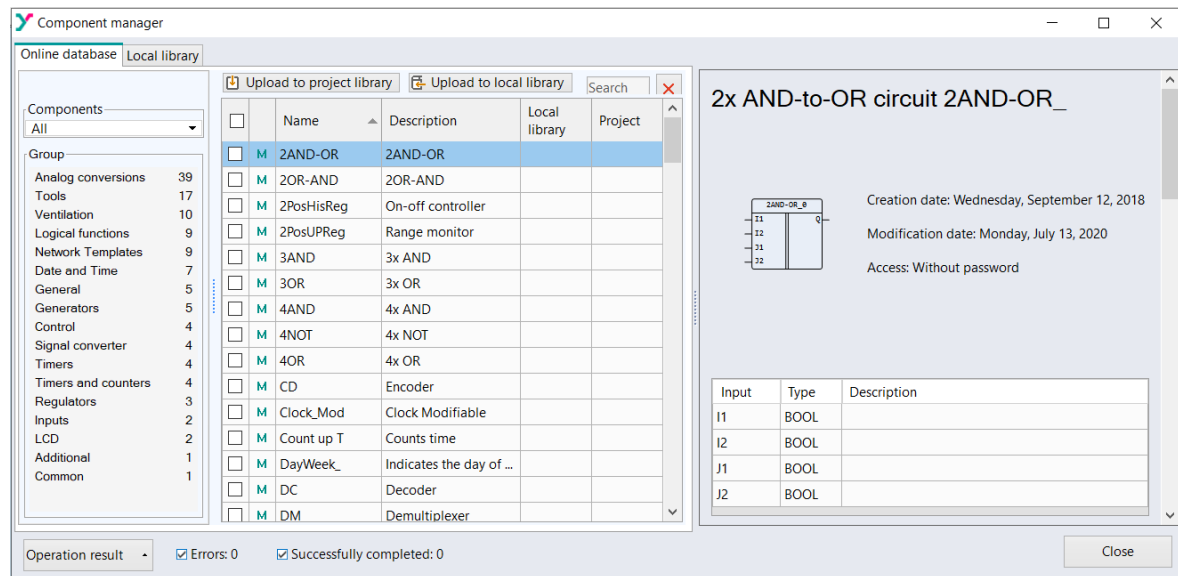
### 4.10 Component manager

New macros and device templates can be downloaded from akYtec Online Database. Component Manager is the tool for all interactions with this database. The internet access is necessary for this interaction.

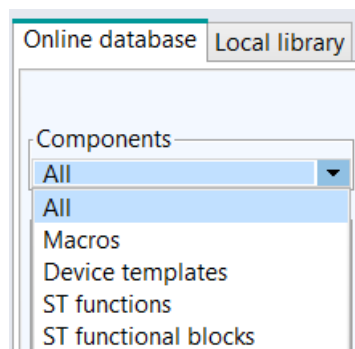
Select the menu item **File** → **Component manager** to open it in a separate window.

#### Online database

The **Online database** tab displays a list of components available from the akYtec company's online database.



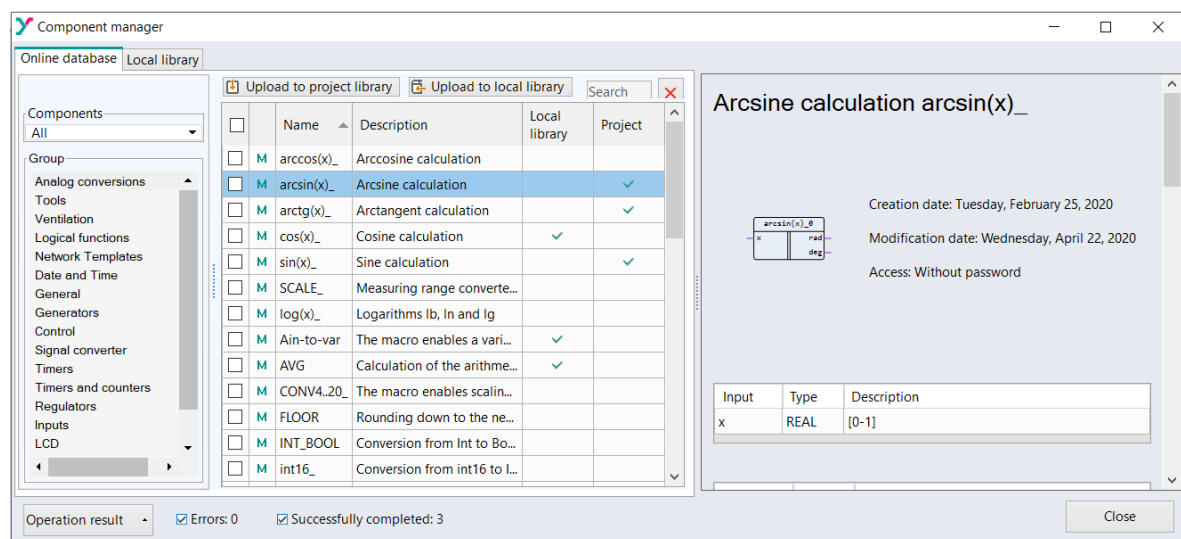
The **Components** dropdown menu allows you to filter the list by type:



Macros are further divided into categories based on their function:

| Group               |    |
|---------------------|----|
| Analog conversions  | 39 |
| Tools               | 17 |
| Ventilation         | 10 |
| Logical functions   | 9  |
| Date and Time       | 7  |
| General             | 5  |
| Generators          | 5  |
| Control             | 4  |
| Signal converter    | 4  |
| Timers              | 4  |
| Timers and counters | 4  |
| Regulators          | 3  |
| Inputs              | 2  |
| LCD                 | 2  |
| Additional          | 1  |
| Common              | 1  |

A full description of a component can be viewed by selecting it in the list. The component description is displayed in the right part of the window. Acrobat Reader is required to view the complete component documentation.



To make components available without an internet connection, check the boxes next to them and click the **Upload to local library** button – the components will be added to the local storage and will appear in the **Library** tab.

To immediately load components into the current project, check the boxes next to them and click the **Upload to project library** button – the components will be added to the **Component library** panel under the **Project macros** section.

Successful download of components to local storage or the current project is indicated by a green checkmark in the **Library** and **Project** columns, respectively.

To connect a network template to the device configuration, follow the recommendations in the [Network device templates](#) section.

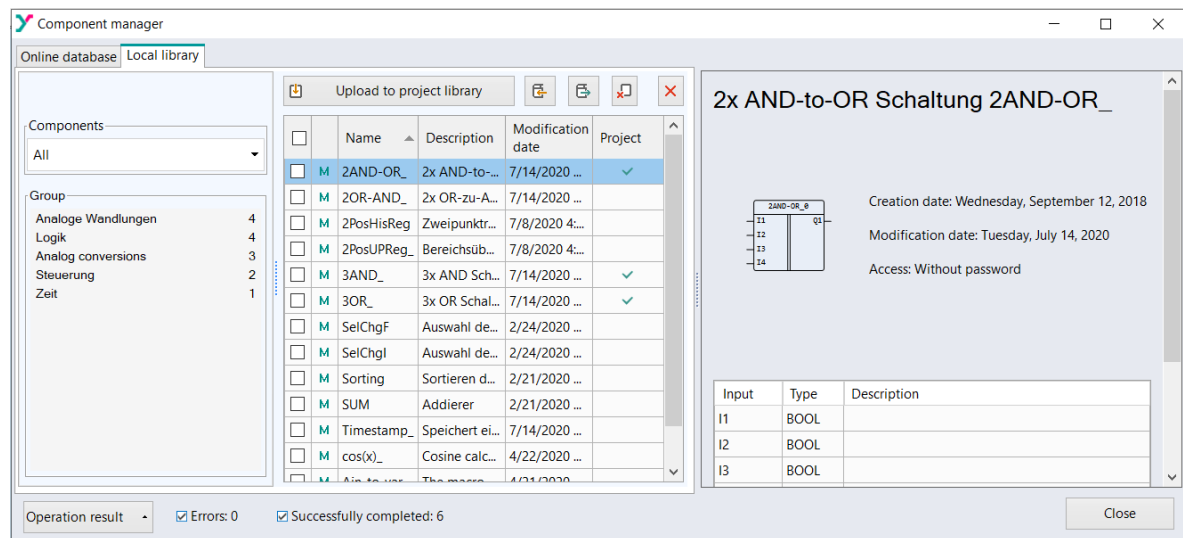
### Local library

The **Local library** tab displays the contents of the component local storage on the user's PC. To load components into the current project, select the desired components and click the **Upload to project library** button – the components will be added to the **Component library** panel under the **Project macros** section. Successful loading of components into the current project is indicated by a green checkmark in the **Project** column of the list.



#### NOTE

Loading components containing arrays into the **Project Library** is possible starting from ALP version 3.0.



#### NOTE

The component local storage is located at: `C:\Users\[username]\Documents\akYtec ALP\Library\`

The Component Manager supports the following component management functions:

- – import a file into local storage.
- – export a file from local storage.
- – delete selected components.

### Component import

Import allows you to load components that are stored on your PC but are not yet part of the local storage.

To import a component:

1. Click the button.
2. In the window that appears, select the files to import.
3. Click the **Open** button. The files will appear in the **Library** tab.

### Import Restrictions for Earlier Versions of ALP

When importing a component containing functionality not supported by the target version:

- Importing into ALP version 2.11.370 or higher – the component will be loaded but will appear with restrictions in the **Component manager**. The description will indicate the ALP version from which the component is supported.
- Importing into a ALP version lower than 2.11.370 – the component will be loaded, but an error message window will appear when you try to select it from the library.

Any operations performed with such components will result in errors. It is not possible to use components not supported by the current version of ALP in a project.

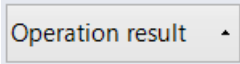
### Component export

Export allows you to save components to your PC for further modification or transfer. To export a component:

1. Check the box next to the desired component in the **Library** tab.
2. Click the  button.
3. In the window that appears, select the export path.
4. Click the **OK** button. The component will be saved as a file to the specified location.

### Further information

Functions for the component documentation are available according to the installed version of Acrobat Reader, including saving the file in PDF format and printing.

To view the results of operations in the Component manager, click the  button – a message line will expand at the bottom of the window.

```
cos(x)_ - Component has been successfully added to the library
Ain-to-var - Component has been successfully added to the library
AVG - Component has been successfully added to the library
2AND-OR_ - The macro is added to the project
3AND_ - The macro is added to the project
3OR_ - The macro is added to the project
```

### 4.11 Macro development

A macro is a user-defined algorithm for use in a project.

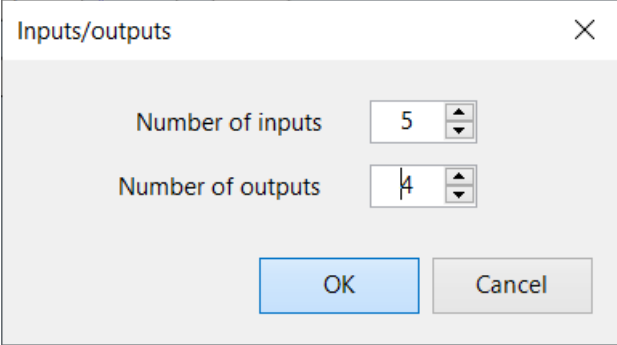
Main operations with macros:

- **Saving** to the Library for future use in the project
- **Exporting** to a file for use in other projects
- **Importing** previously created macros
- **Downloading** macros from the online database into the project

#### New macro using main menu

To create a macro:

1. Select **File** → **Create Macro** from the main menu. In the dialog box that opens, specify the number of inputs and outputs for the macro:



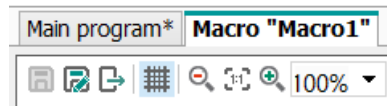
The dialog box titled "Inputs/outputs" contains two rows. The first row is labeled "Number of inputs" and has a text box with the value "5" and a spin button. The second row is labeled "Number of outputs" and has a text box with the value "4" and a spin button. At the bottom of the dialog are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.



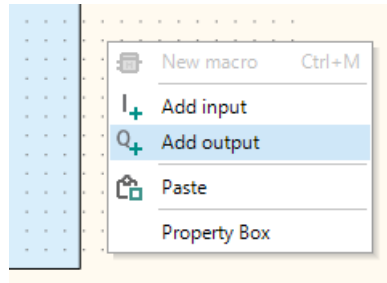
#### NOTE

The number of inputs and outputs can be changed after the macro is created.

2. Develop the macro's algorithm in the **Macro editor** tab, similarly to developing a program on the diagram.

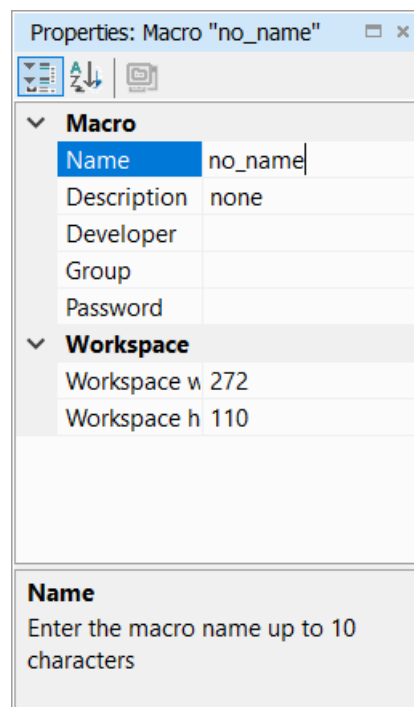


The number of inputs and outputs can be increased using the editor's context menu or the  and  buttons.



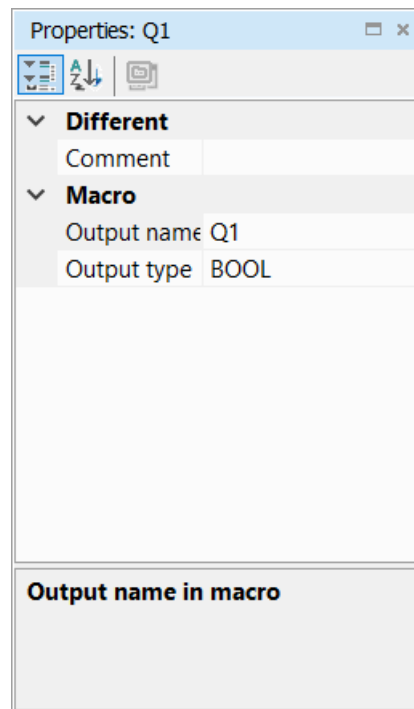
To delete an input or output, right-click on it and select the **Delete** command.

3. Set a name and description for the macro in the properties panel.

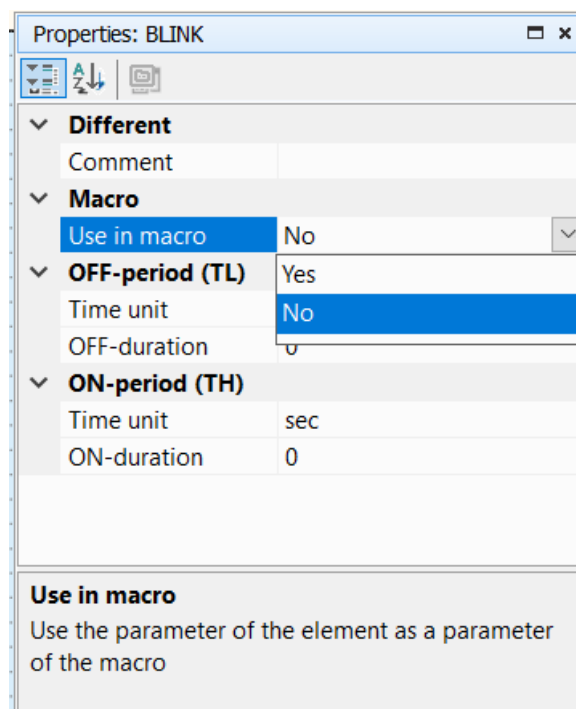


The entered name will be shown in the macro editor's title bar and on the diagram.

4. To define the type and name for inputs/outputs, select an input or output and configure it in the properties panel.



5. Next, you can set the "visibility" of the settings for Function Blocks (FBs) used within the macro from the main program.



To make a selected FB's settings available when the FB is used in the program, configure the block's property **Use in Macro – Yes** in its properties panel.

After selecting **Yes**, a dropdown list **Rename variables** will appear, listing the available variables. For example, for the BLINK FB:

Properties: BLINK

Comment

Macro

Parameters of macro < Parameters... >

| Use in macro    | Variable name | Name in macro |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| OFF-period (TL) | Time unit     | Time unit     |
| Time unit       | ON-duration   | ON-duration   |
| OFF-duration    | Time unit     | Time unit     |
| ON-period (TH)  | OFF-duration  | OFF-duration  |
| Time unit       |               |               |
| ON-duration     |               |               |

Parameters of macro

6. After creating the macro, start the simulator mode 4.5 and verify its logic.
7. Before saving the macro, you can fill in the fields: **Name**, **Description**, **Developer**, **Group**, and **Password**.

Properties: Macro "no\_name"

Macro

Name no\_name

Description none

Developer

Group

Password

Workspace

Workspace width (mm) 272

Workspace height (mm) 110

Group

Group in the library

It is recommended to give the macro a short and clear name. The content of the **Description** field is displayed under the macro's image in the **Library Box** panel.

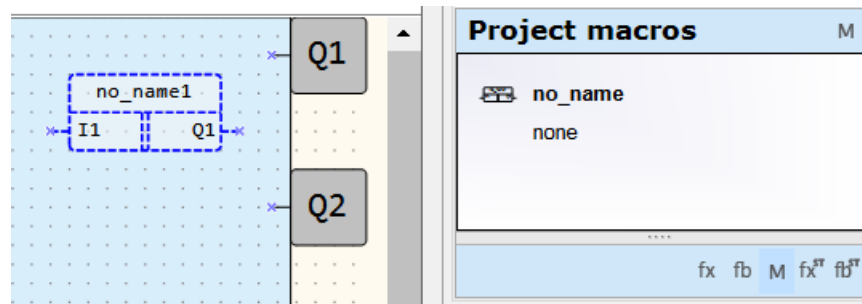
If no password is set (the **Password** field is left blank), access to edit the macro is open to everyone.

If the **Group** field is not filled, the macro is saved in the project library under the **Other** group.

The macro can be saved by selecting **File** → **Save Macro As** from the main menu or by clicking the  button on the macro editor toolbar.

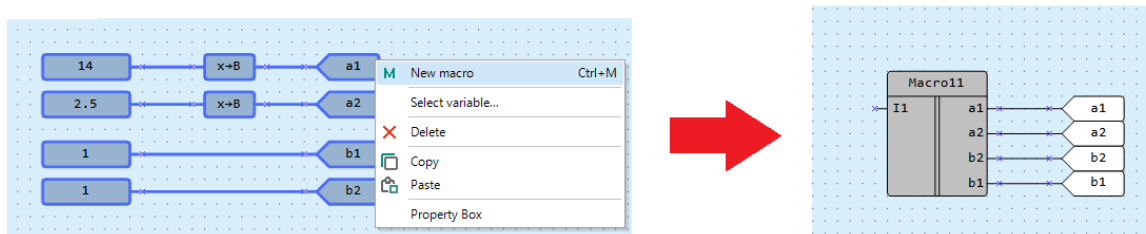
A saved macro is only available for the currently open project. To use the macro in other projects, it must be exported.

8. Select the **Project Macros** section in the **Component Library** panel and drag the macro onto the project canvas.

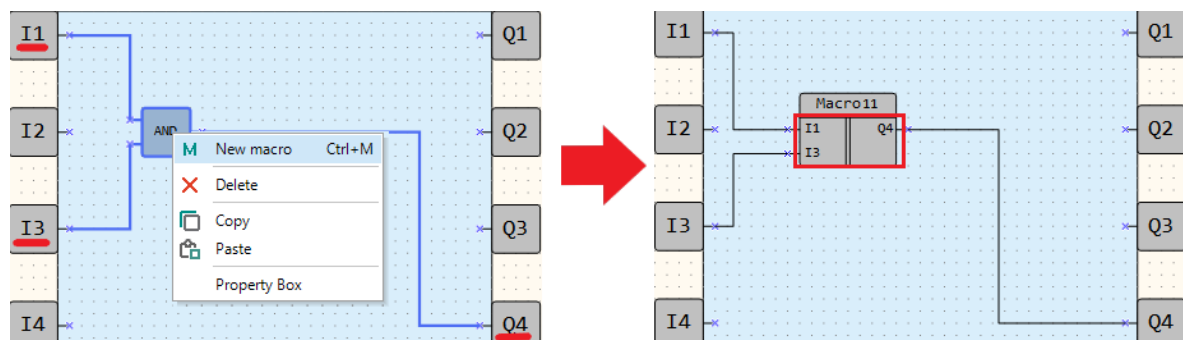


### New macro using context menu

A macro can be created by selecting elements on the project diagram and choosing **New macro** from the context menu. A macro block will appear in place of the selected elements.



The macro's inputs and outputs are named according to the elements and blocks connected to them at the time of creation. If an output is connected to multiple elements, it is named by default ( $Q_n$ , where  $n$  is the sequential number of the macro output).



The created macro and its input/output names can be edited in the **macro editor** by selecting **Edit** from the block's context menu.

The number of inputs and outputs of the macro will correspond to the number of connected input and output links in the selected diagram area. If elements without any connections are selected, a macro with one input and one output is created.

Elements that are not included in the macro when created on the diagram:

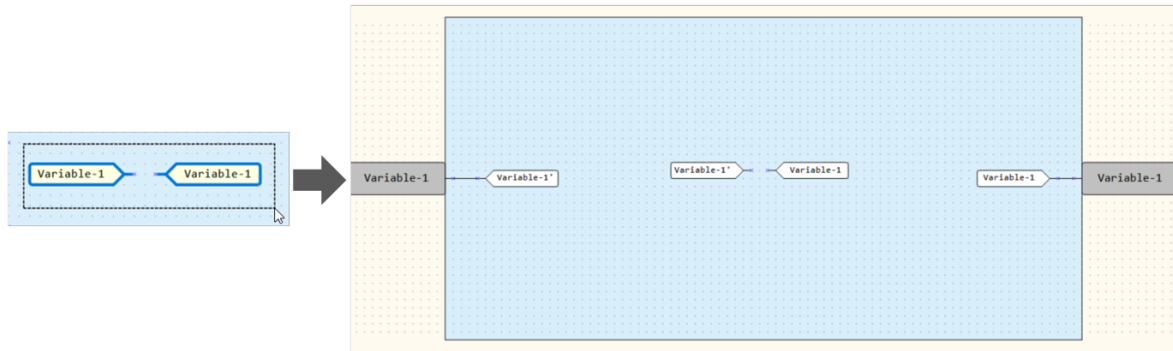
- Inputs and outputs
- Service variables
- Network variables
- The PID controller block (PID)

If any of the above elements were selected during macro creation, they will be connected to the corresponding input/output of the macro block. If the selected area includes a Function Block (FB)

from which a value is read or to which a value is written, the read/write block for that FB is included in the macro, even if it is located outside the selected area.

If standard variables fall within the selection area, they are copied into the macro with the same name. Variables inside the macro are not identical to the variables on the main diagram. If all blocks associated with a single variable are included inside the macro, they disappear from the main diagram.

If, during macro creation, both the input and output blocks of an **in-use** variable fall within the selected area, a new variable will be created inside the macro. This new variable inherits all properties of the original selected variable: type, non-volatility, and default value. Its name is formed based on the original variable's name with an apostrophe (') added at the end.



The same rules apply if, during macro creation, the selected area includes:

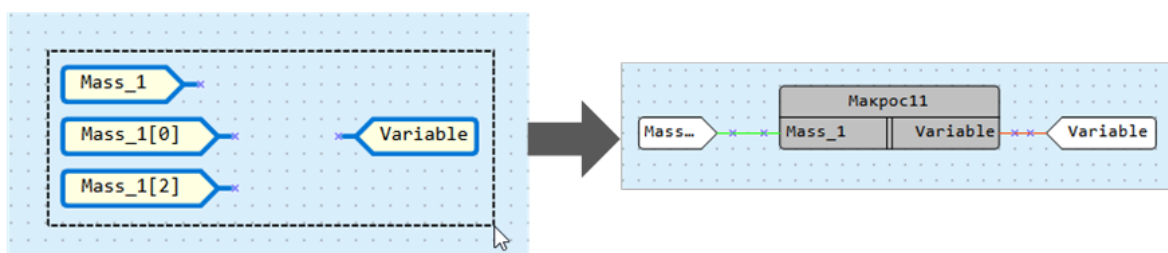
- Both the input and output blocks of an **in-use** array element.
- Both the input and output blocks of an array that contains at least one **in-use** element.
- An input/output block of an array containing at least one **in-use** element, along with an input/output block of an element from that **in-use** array.

The name for an array element created under these rules will be formatted as follows: square brackets ([ ]) will be replaced with curly braces ({}), and an apostrophe (') will be added at the end of the name.

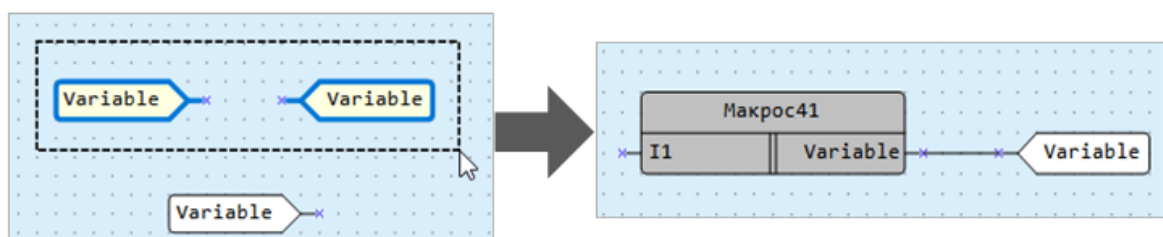
**Example:**

Mass\_1[0] → Mass\_1{0}'

If, during macro creation, the selected area includes the input block of an array and input blocks for elements of that same array, only one input of the Array type, named after the array, will be created inside the macro:

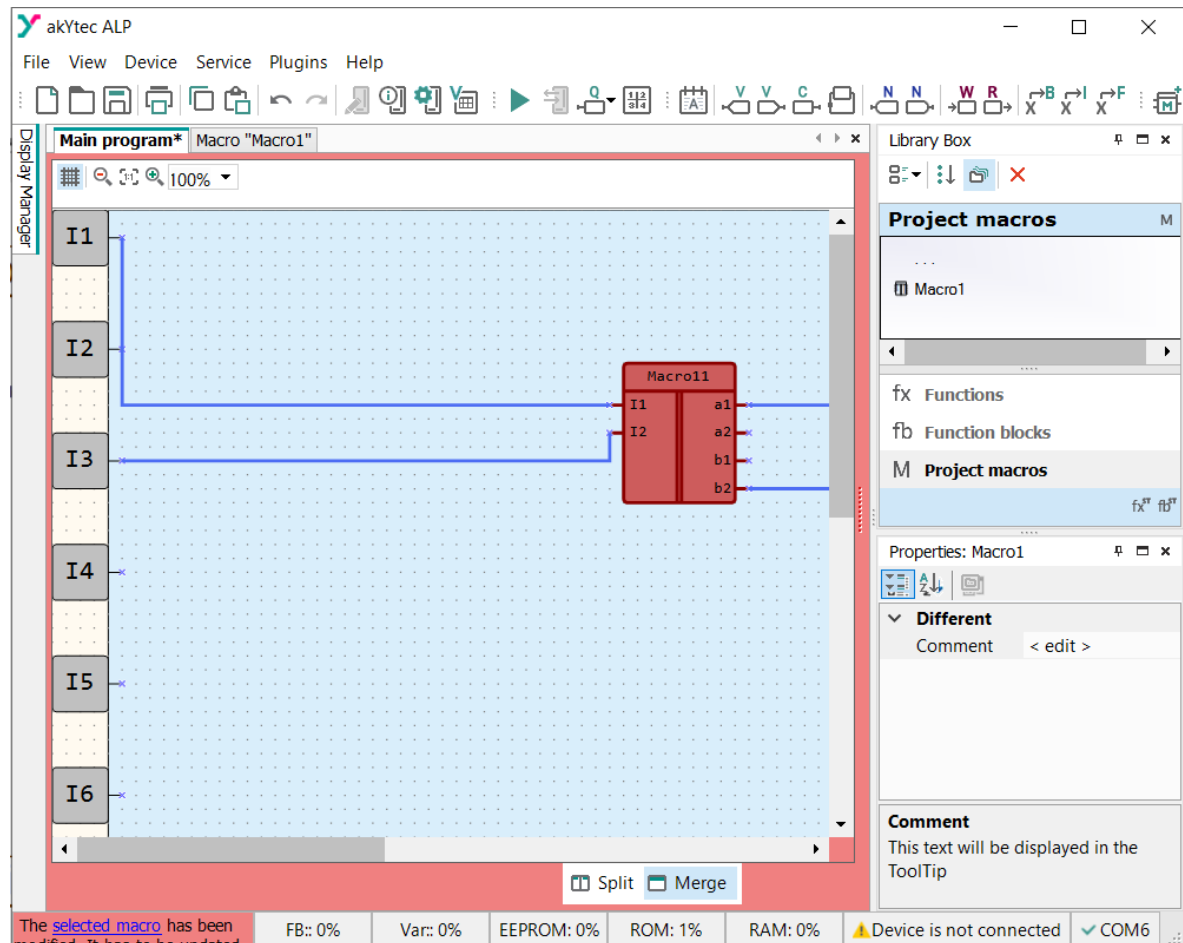


If, during macro creation, the selected area includes both the input and output blocks of a single **unused** variable that also exists outside the selected area on the diagram, these blocks are copied into the macro with the same name, and only the output variable block remains on the original diagram.



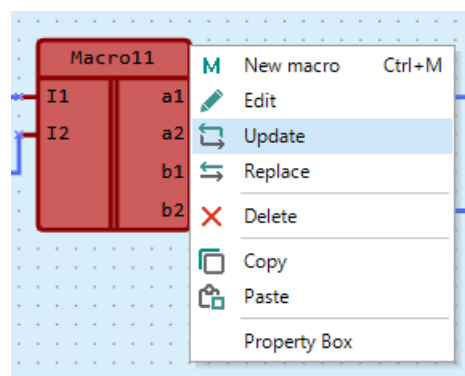
## Update macro

If a macro used in the program has had its name, type, number of inputs/outputs changed, or if an element (variable, constant) with the property **Use in Macro – Yes** has been added, ALP will require it to be updated and will highlight it on the canvas. A macro is considered changed after saving edits in the **Macro editor**.



To update a macro on the canvas:

1. Right-click on the highlighted macro and select **Update** from the menu that appears.



### NOTE

In the case of a nested macro, ALP will prompt you to navigate to it. Actions for a nested macro are similar.

2. After updating the macro, ALP will automatically proceed to the next macro requiring an update. A macro is updated in the project according to the following rules:

- If the type or name of an input/output with an attached connection has been changed in the macro, that connection will be broken upon update;
- If inputs/outputs have been added to the macro, the connections of existing inputs/outputs are not broken during the update.

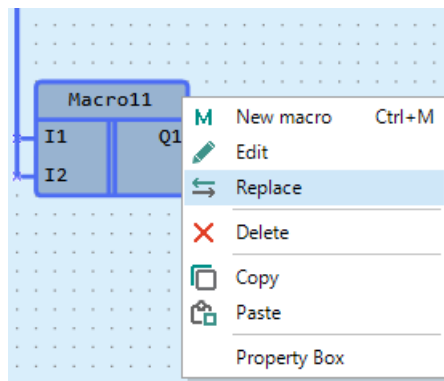


### NOTE

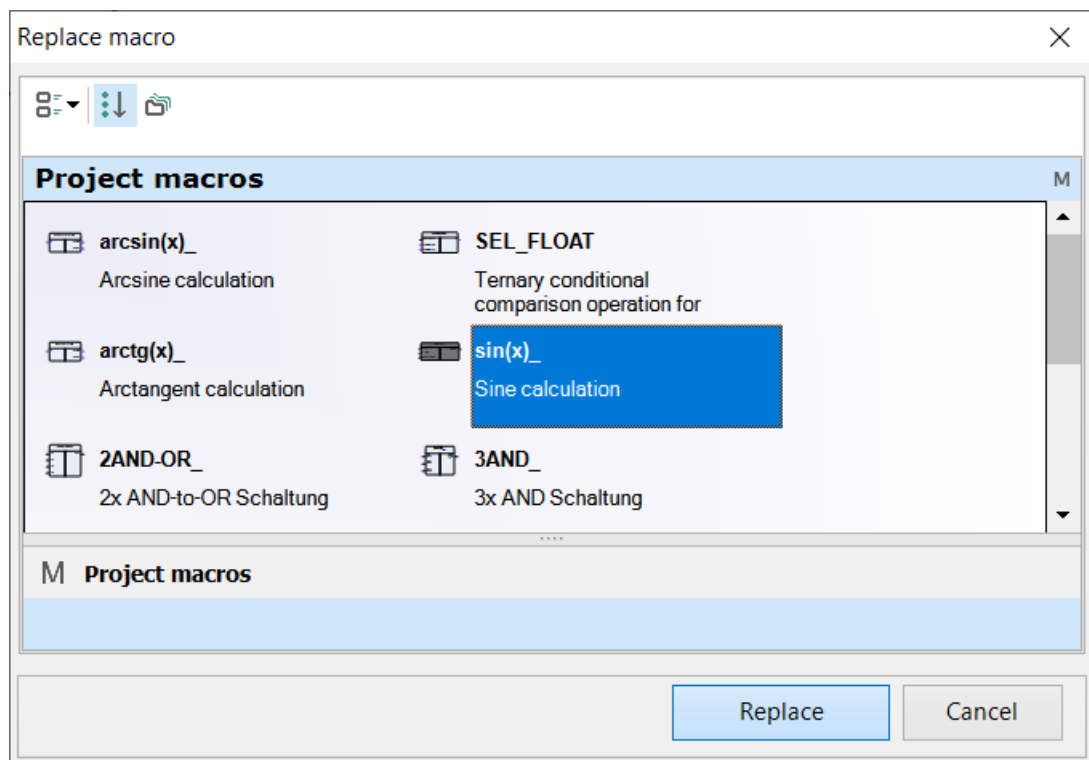
ALP identifies connections to macro inputs/outputs by name and type. If you change the name or type of an input/output with an attached connection in the macro and create a new input/output with the same name and type, ALP will automatically reconnect the connection to the new input/output when the macro is updated.

### Quick macro replacement

If you need to replace a macro with another one from the project macros, click the **Replace** button in the macro's context menu.



The "Replace Macro" window will open.



If the type or name of an input/output with an attached connection has been changed in the macro, that specific connection will be broken upon replacement, but all other connections will be preserved.

### Export macro

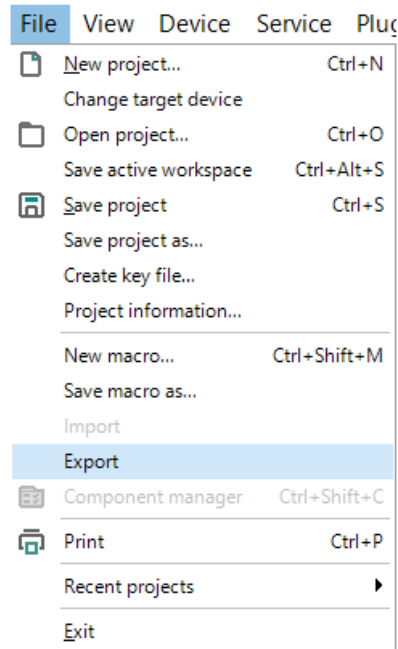
Exporting a macro to a file is only possible when the macro editor window is open. To export a macro, select **File** → **Export** in the main menu.

To export a macro:

1. Open the macro in the editor.

If you need to edit the macro before saving, you should drag it onto the project canvas and select **Edit** and make changes in the macro context menu.

2. Select the main menu item **File** → **Export**.



3. In the window that opens, select a location and save the macro file with the extension *\*.tpl* or *\*.tpe*. After saving, a message indicating that the macro was exported successfully will be displayed.

### Import macro

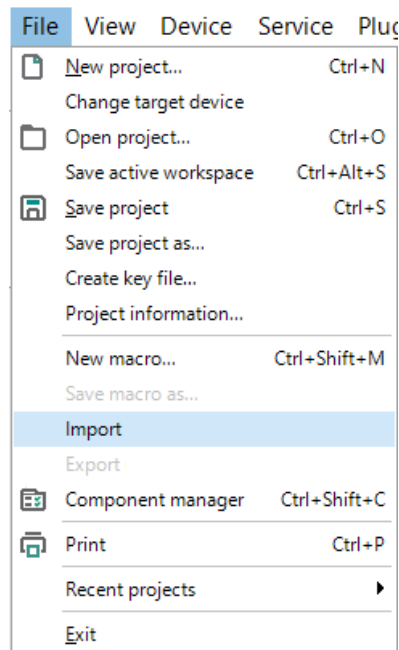
If you need to use a macro created in another project to create a program, you can import the required macro into the project.

To import a macro use the main menu item **File** → **Import**.



#### NOTE

The **Import** item is active only when the focus is on the workspace.



In the window that opens, select the desired file and click the **OK** button. The macro will be added to the **Library Box** in the **Project macros** section, and can now be used in the project.

**NOTE**

Importing macros that contain variables of the Array type or array elements is possible in ALP version 3.0 and higher.

**Copy macro**

Macros can be copied from project to project for reuse and reduced development time. To copy a

macro, select the macro block in the source project and click the  on the toolbar or select the **Copy** command in the block context menu. The macro is inserted into another project by clicking the



button on the toolbar or by selecting the **Insert** in the canvas context menu. You can also use keyboard shortcuts to copy and paste, see [Keyboard shortcuts](#).

Once inserted, the macro will be available in the **Project macros** section of the **Library Box**.

**NOTE**

Inserting macros that contain variables of the Array type or array elements is possible in ALP version 3.0 and higher.

**4.12 Using ST function**

In ALP, it is possible to create user-defined functions in the ST language.

**NOTICE**

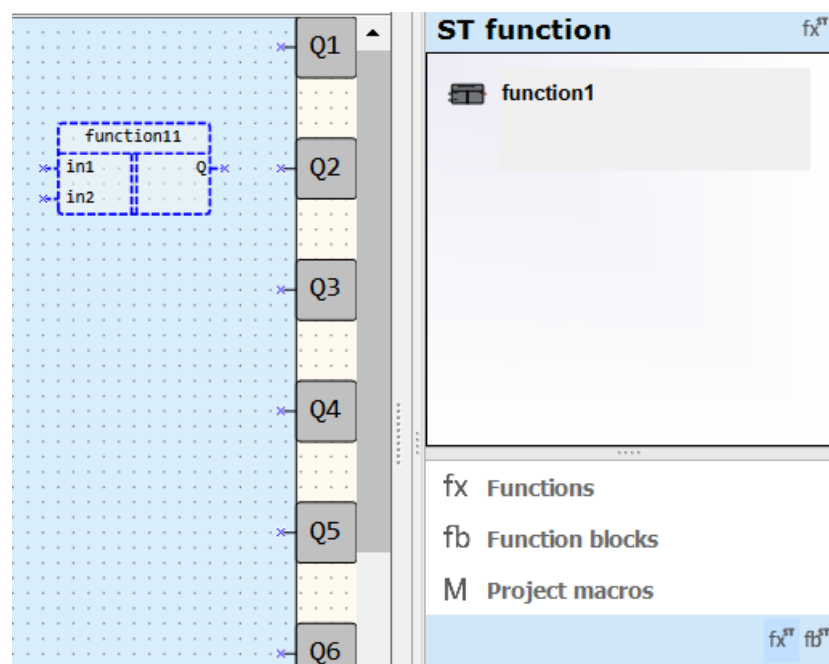
ST functions reserve space in ROM memory after they are added to the project library, regardless of whether they are used in the project or not.

**Creation of ST function**

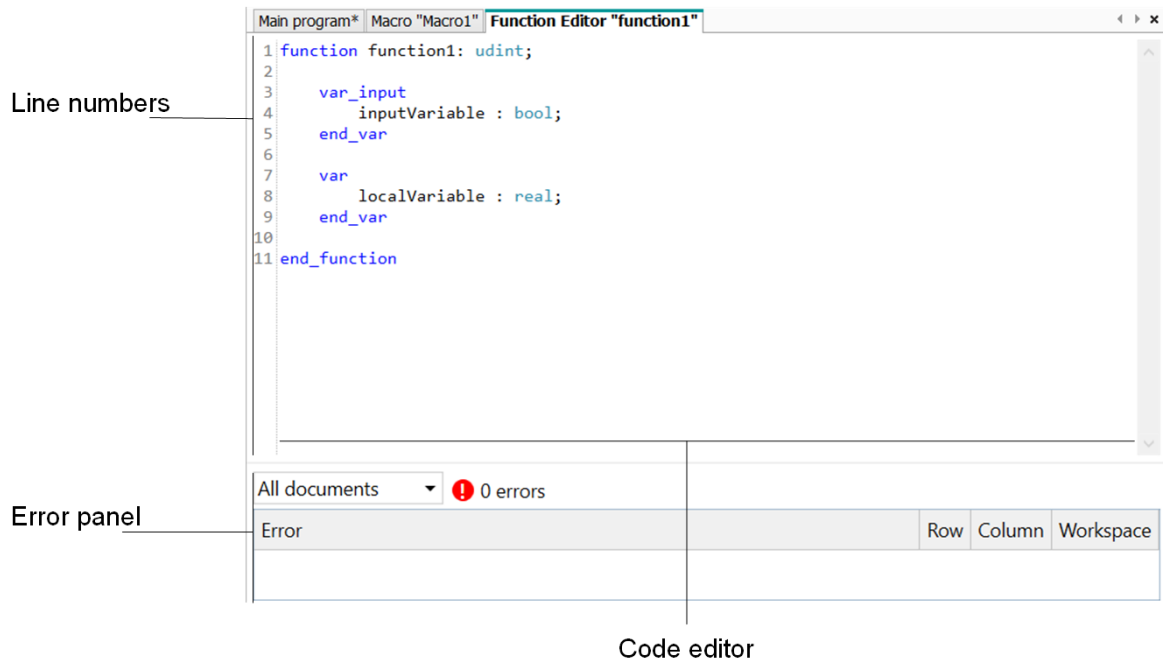
1. Click the toolbar icon  **New ST function**. Function editor with an ST function template opens in a new workspace.



2. Specify the function name and the output data type in the first line.
3. Specify all required inputs variables in the input variable declaration block **var\_input**.
4. Specify all required local variables in the local variable declaration block **var**.
5. Develop a function algorithm in accordance with the ST syntax rules.
6. Switch to the **Main program** tab or close the **Function editor** tab. The function will be saved automatically.
7. Select the section **ST functions** in **Library Box** and drag the saved function onto the project workspace.



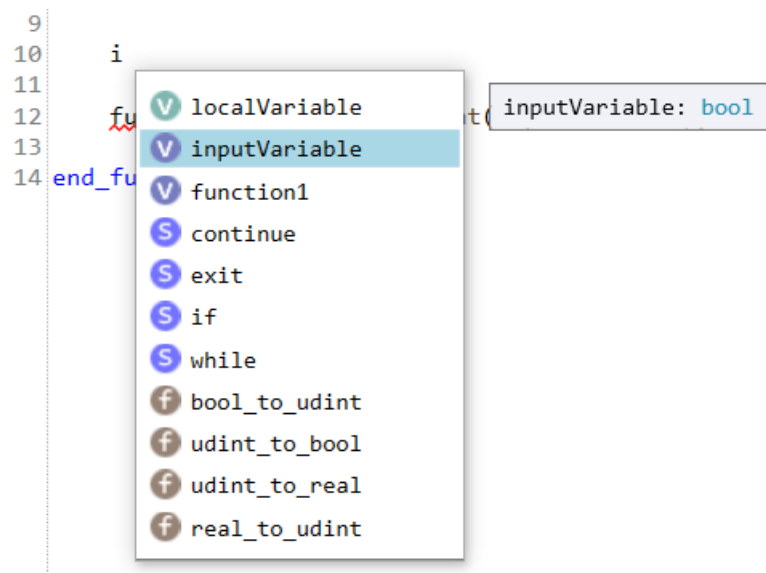
## Function editor interface



1. **Line numbers** – sequential line numbers in the program code.
2. **Code editor** – code editing area with automatic syntax highlighting.
3. **Error panel** – error display area.

## Snippet management

Snippet management is a text editor feature that allows easy insertion of content from a catalogue of repeatedly used text. If you enter the first character in the editor, a context menu opens with focus on the first line. Use the cursor keys to select a snippet. To insert the selected snippet into the code, press **Enter** or **Tab** or double-click on the list item.



Snippet groups:

- V – local variables
- S – statements (**while**, **for** etc.)
- K – keywords (**true**, **false**)
- F – built-in functions

– T – other functions

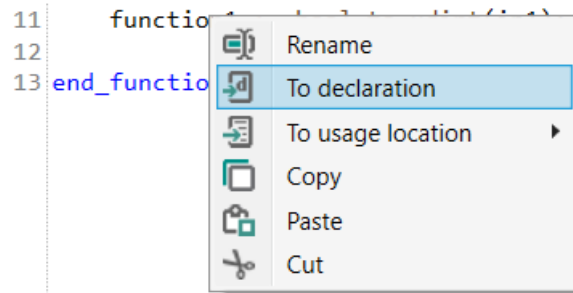
Within groups, snippets are arranged alphabetically.

### Jump to declaration or usage location

For convenient work with the code, a search is implemented to find the places in the program code where a function or variable is declared or used.

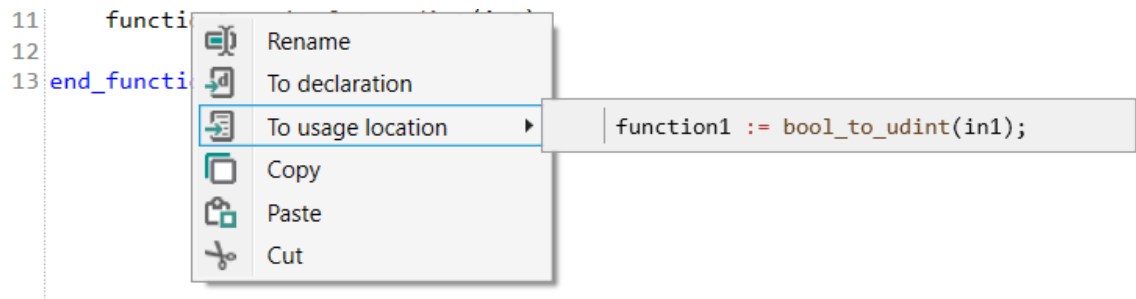
To jump to declaration:

1. Place the cursor on the name of a function or variable in the program code.
2. Right-click on the name.
3. Select **To declaration** in the context menu.



To jump to usage location:

1. Place the cursor on the name of a function or variable in the program code.
2. Right-click on the name.
3. Select **To usage location** in the context menu. A list of places in the code opens the selected function or variable is used.



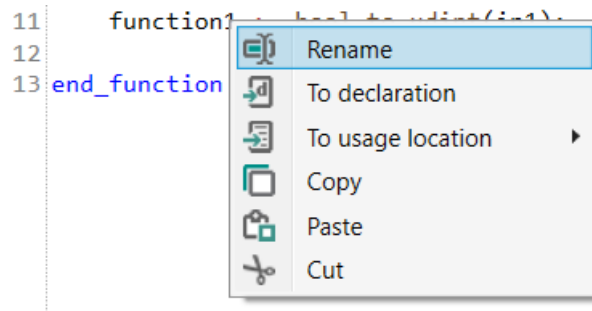
4. Left-click on the selected usage location. The cursor will move to the line where the function or variable is used.

### Rename variable or function

Centralized change of the name of a variable or function throughout the code is available.

Proceed as follows:

1. Place the cursor on the name of a function or variable in the program code.
2. Right-click on the name.
3. Select **Rename** in the context menu. There is a list of places in the code, where the selected function or variable is used.



4. Enter a new name in one of the green marked locations and click on another place in the code. Now the name is changed in the whole program.

### Error panel

All errors occurred during the code writing are listed in **Error panel**. Left-click on a row in the list to jump to the error in the code.

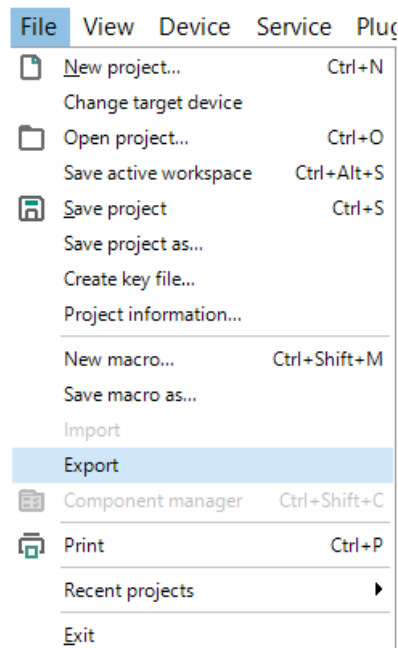
| All documents ▾ <span style="color: red;">!</span> 2 out of 2 errors |     |        |           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|-----------|
| Error                                                                | Row | Column | Workspace |
| Variable in not declared                                             | 11  | 32     | function1 |
| Invalid arguments for function bool_to_udint                         | 11  | 18     | function1 |

### Export ST function

Exporting a function to a file is only possible when the function editor tab is open. To export a function, select **File** → **Export** in the main menu.

To export function proceed as follows:

1. Open the function in the editor.
2. Select **File** → **Export** from the main menu.



3. In the window that opens, select a location and save the function file with the extension \*.fst. Once saved, a message indicating that the function was exported successfully will be displayed.

### Import ST function

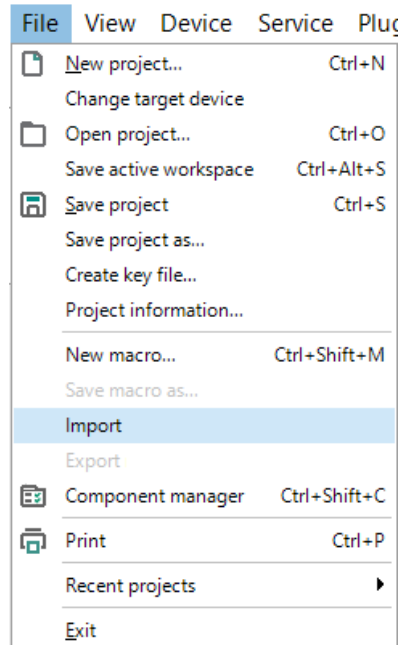
If you need to use a function created in another project to create a program, you can import it into the project.

To import a function block, select **File** → **Import** in the main menu.



#### NOTE

The **Import** item is active only when the focus is on the project workspace.



In the window that opens, select the desired file and click the **OK** button. The function will be added to the **Library Box** in the **ST functions** section, now it can be used in the project.

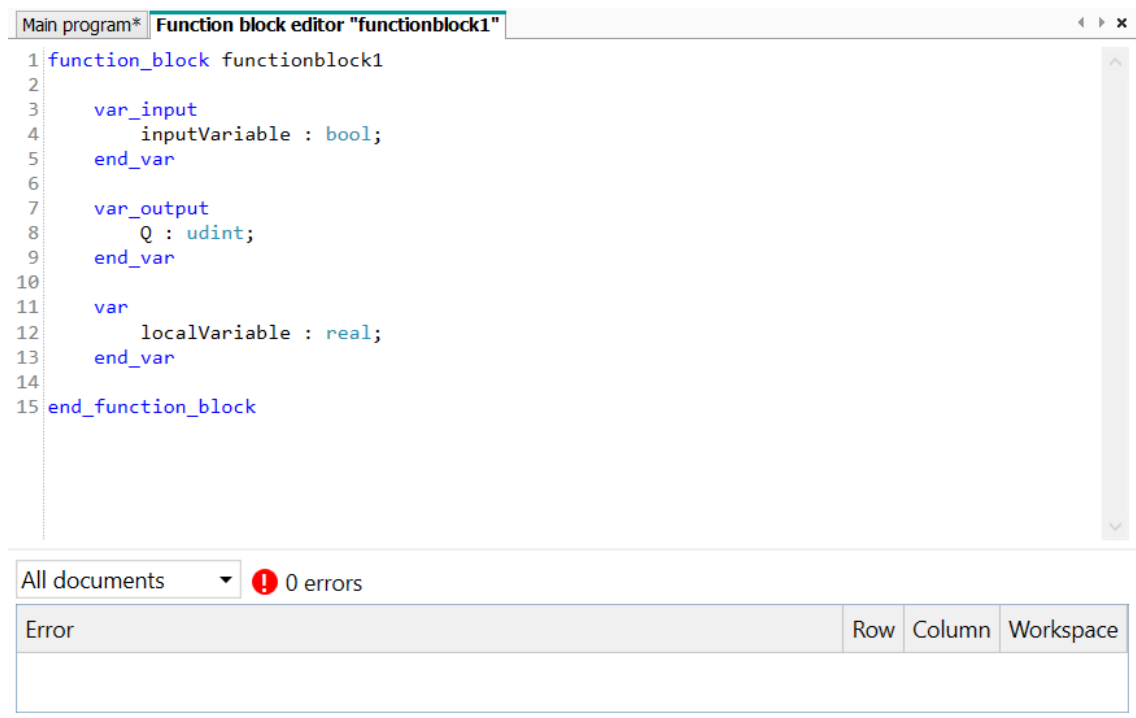
### 4.13 ST function blocks

In ALP, it is possible to create user-defined function blocks in the ST language.

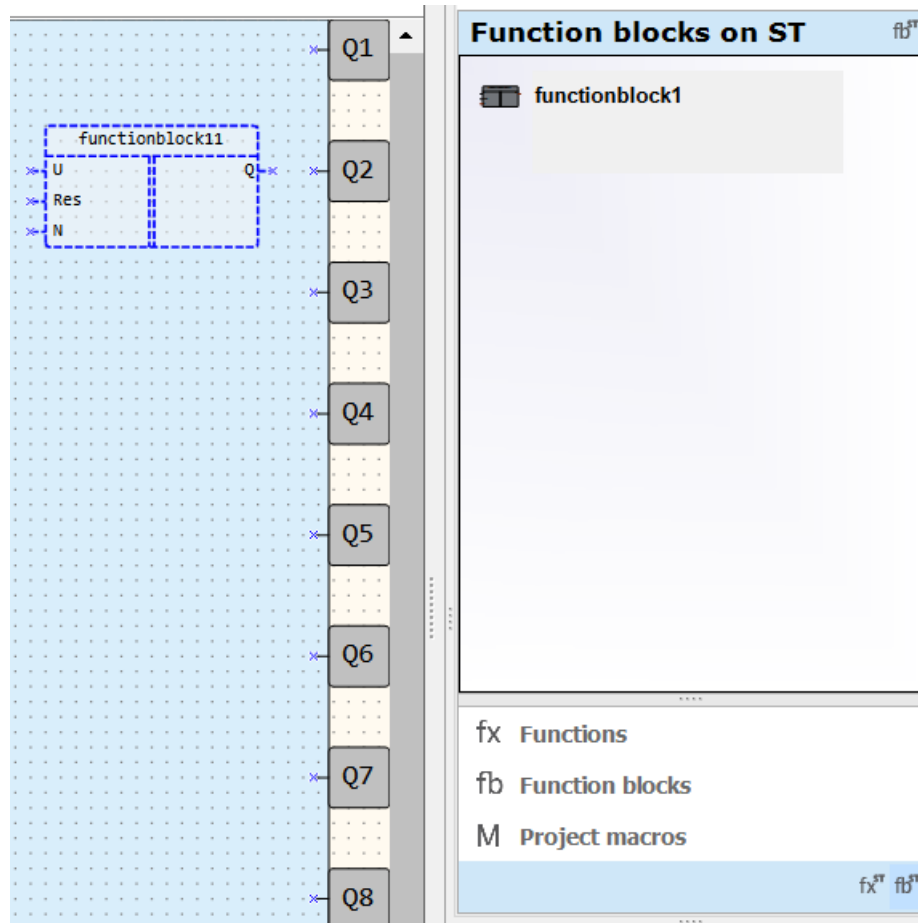
#### Creating an ST function block

To create an ST function block:

1. Click the toolbar icon  **New ST function block**. Function block editor with an ST function block template opens in a new workspace.



2. Specify the function block name and the output data type in the first line.
3. Specify all required inputs variables in the input variable declaration block **var\_input**.
4. Specify all required local variables in the local variable declaration block **var**.
5. Develop a function block algorithm in accordance with the ST syntax rules.
6. Switch to the **Main program** tab or close the **Function block editor** tab. The function block will be saved automatically.
7. Select the section **ST function blocks** in **Library Box** and drag the saved block onto the project workspace.



### Function block editor interface



1. **Line numbers** – sequential line numbers in the program code.
2. **Code editor** – code editing area with automatic syntax highlighting.
3. **Error panel** – error display area.

**NOTE**

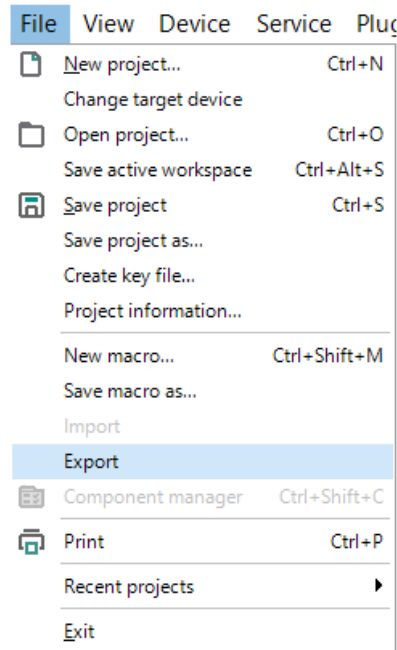
Similar to the function editor, the function block editor supports the functions snippets, tracking the location of declaration and use, renaming and error tracking.

**Export ST function block**

Exporting a function block to a file is only possible when the function block editor tab is open. To export a function, select **File** → **Export** in the main menu.

To export function block proceed as follows:

1. Open the function block in the editor.
2. Select **File** → **Export** from the main menu.



3. In the window that opens, select a location and save the function file with the extension \*.fbst. Once saved, a message indicating that the function was exported successfully will be displayed.

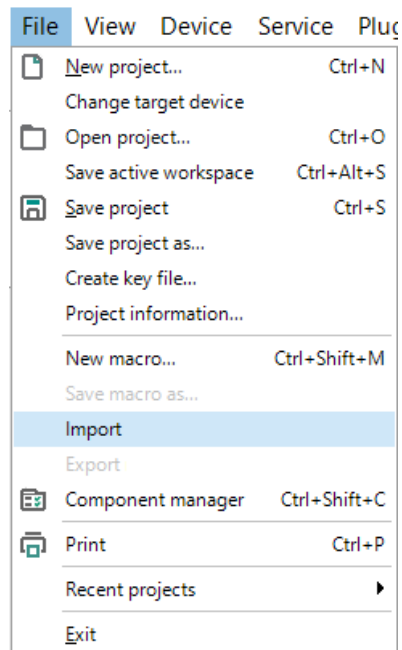
**Import ST function block**

If you need to use a function block created in another project to create a program, you can import it into the project.

To import a function block, select **File** → **Import** in the main menu.

**NOTE**

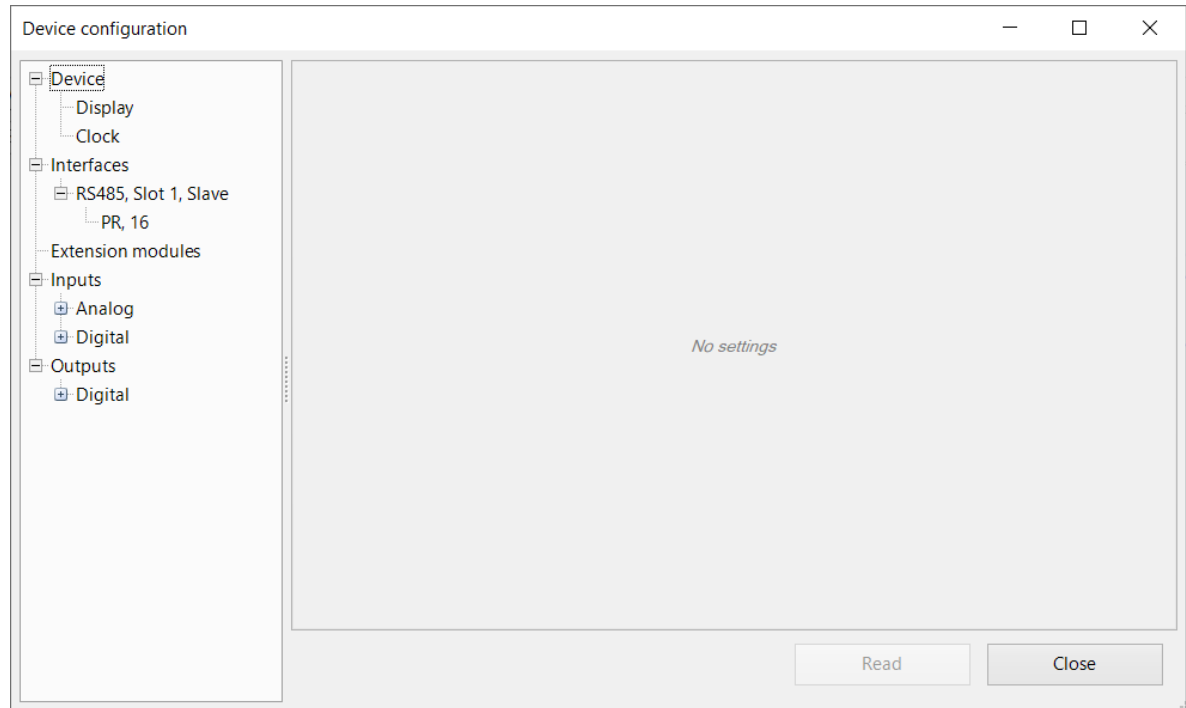
The **Import** item is active only when the focus is on the project workspace.



In the window that opens, select the desired file and click the **OK** button. The function block will be added to the **Library Box** in the **ST function blocks** section, now it can be used in the project.

## 5 Device configuration

The configuration of the device is a part of a project and can be set using the menu item **Device** → **Configuration**. The dialog window **Device configuration** consists of two parts. The configurable parameters of the device are presented in the parameter tree in the left part of the window. The content of a group is presented in the right part.



The content of the parameter tree depends on the target device and may include the following groups:

- Display
- Clock
- Interfaces
- Extension modules
- Inputs and outputs

All the settings are saved in the project, except the clock settings. The configuration is also possible without connecting the device.

### 5.1 Display

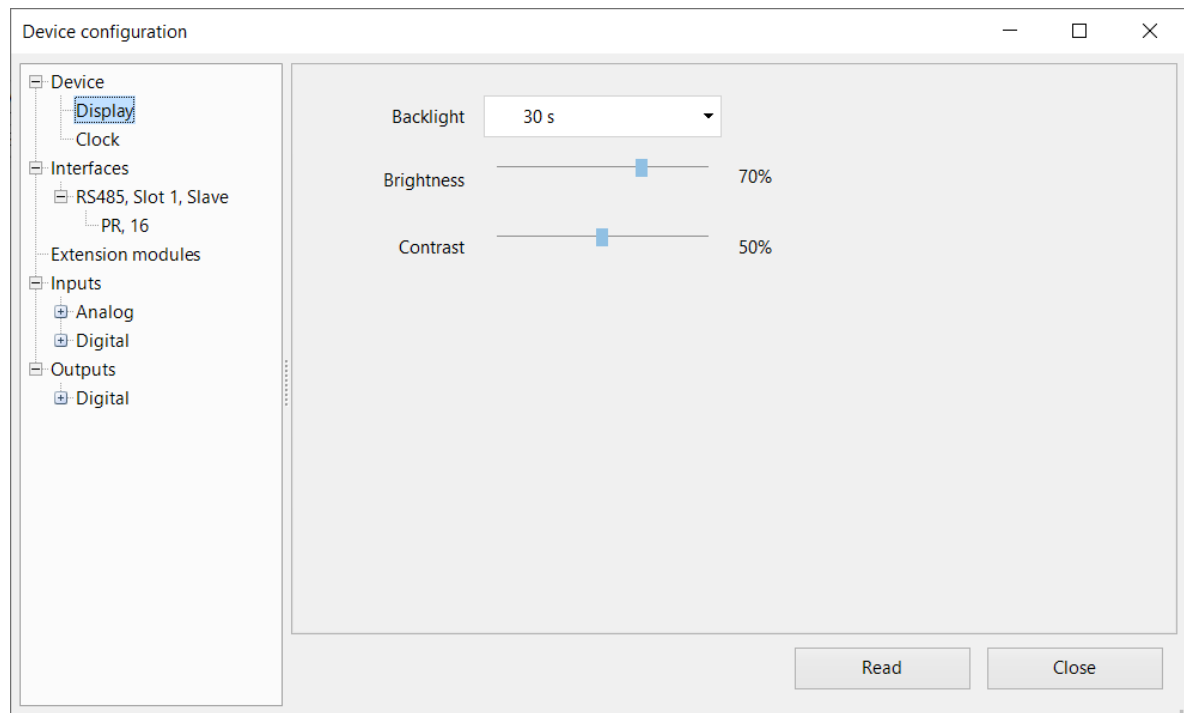
If the target device has a display, the following parameters can be set:

**Backlight** – the duration of the backlight since the last user activity

**Brightness** – 0...100%

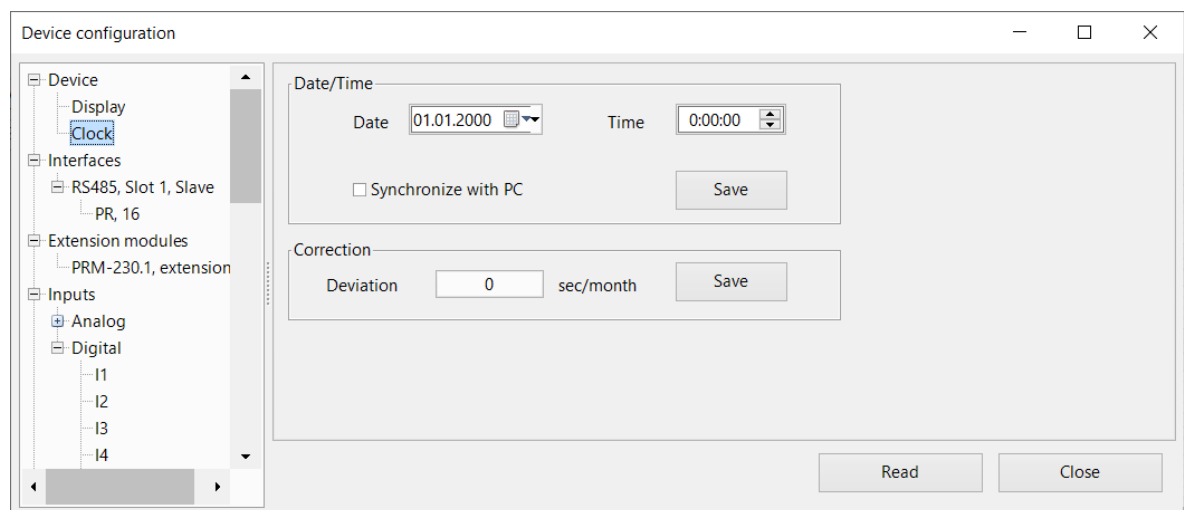
**Contrast** – 0...100%

The button **Read** can be used to read out the current display settings from the connected device.



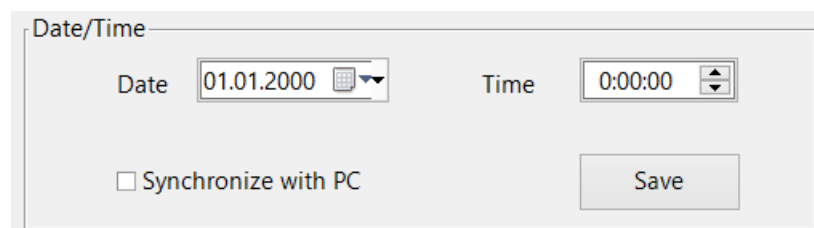
## 5.2 Clock

If the target device has a built-in real-time clock, the date and time can be set in the **Clock** group.



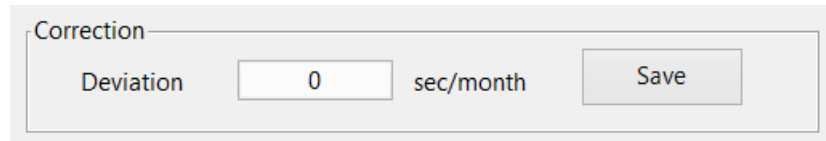
### Date and time

To synchronize the device clock with the PC clock, check the checkbox **Synchronize with PC**. In this case the fields **Date** and **Time** become inactive. To set the device clock to the new values, click the button **Save** in the section **Date/Time**.



### Correction

Specify the clock error in seconds per month in the field **Deviation** to set the clock correction. Enter a negative value if the device clock is too fast.



To save the clock correction in the device, click the button **Save** in the section **Correction**. The button **Read** can be used to read the current time settings from the connected device.

### Clock configuration for the new hardware devices

The clock settings window for devices on the new hardware platform has a different interface and does not have time correction (their hardware provides greater accuracy). Setting the time zone is required to display local time correctly, since the device stores the time value as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). Enabling the **Set computer time zone** option synchronizes the real world clock device time with PC clock.

## 5.3 Data exchange

- [Interfaces](#)
- [Modbus](#)

### 5.3.1 Interfaces

In **Interfaces**, the parameters of interfaces for device communication with other devices on the network are configured.

The following interfaces are available:

- [RS485](#)
- [Ethernet](#)
- [LoRa](#)

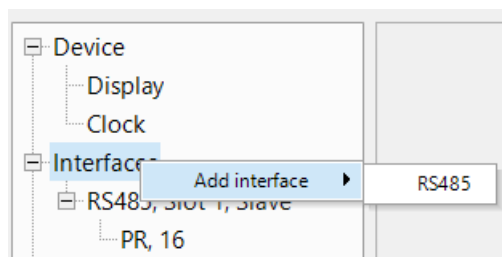
Communication interfaces RS485 and Ethernet are used with the [Modbus](#) protocol.

Data communication via LoRa is performed using the LoRaWAN protocol.

Adding, replacing, and removing an interface are available for first-generation devices. In second-generation devices, all available interfaces are located in the configuration tree.

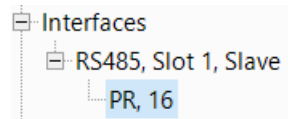
### Add interface

If the Add interface function is available in the device, right-click on **Interfaces** in the configuration tree and select **Add Interface**.



An interface of the selected type with default settings is added. The interface name consists of the number of the slot occupied in the device and the interface mode (master/slave).

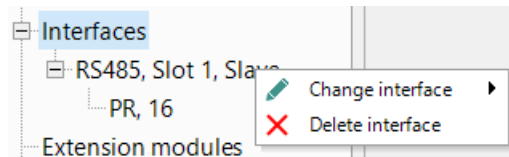
The LoRa interface in PR102 and PR200 can be located only in slot 2.



The number of communication interfaces for the device cannot exceed the number of slots in the device.

### Replace/remove interface

Depending on device, the interface can be replaced by another type of interface or removed using the context menu.



If device variables of the interface are used in the project, the interface will not be replaced or removed until you delete the variable references.



#### NOTE

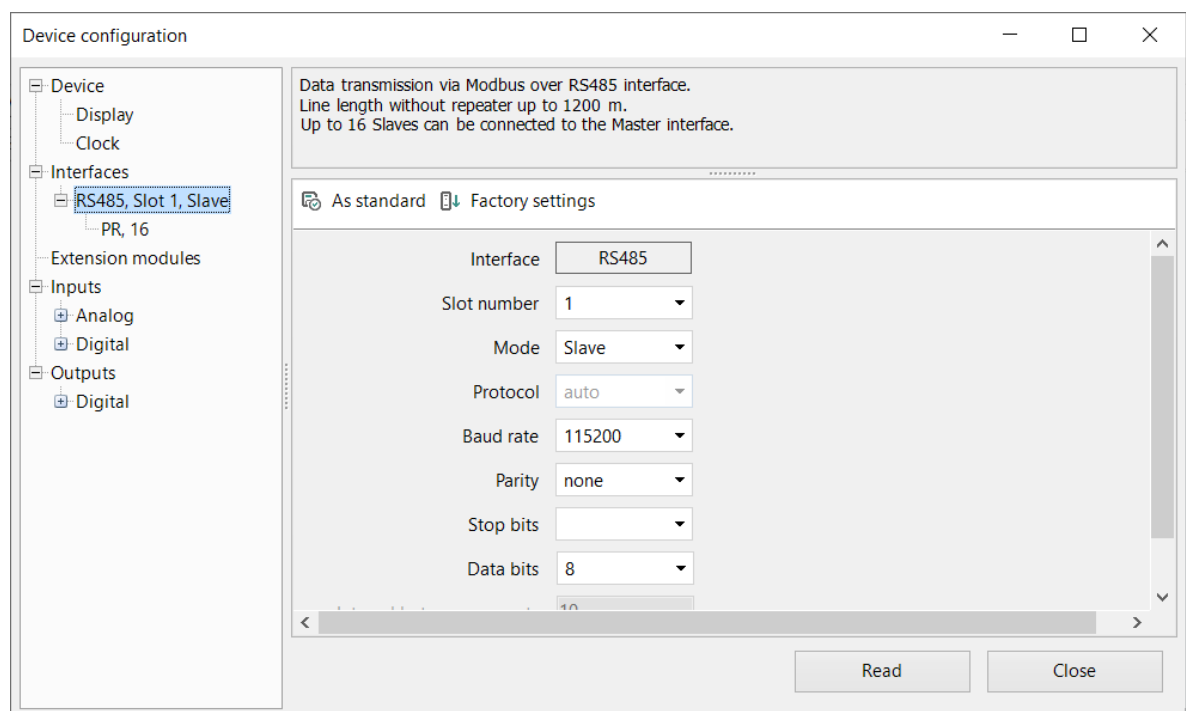
Adding, replacing, and removing interfaces is not available for PR100.

### 5.3.1.1 RS485 interface configuration

To change the interface settings, select it in the configuration tree.

#### Interface parameters for the first-generation devices

The interface settings will be displayed in the right part of the device configuration window.



The type of the interface (RS485), the number of the assigned slot and the mode (master/slave) are displayed in the tree. If there are LoRa settings in the configuration tree, you cannot select a slot for the RS485 interface.

Interface **Mode**:

- **Slave** – In Slave mode, the device provides values to be read by another device on the network. It does not initiate polling itself.
- **Master** – In Master mode, the device reads and writes the values from other slave devices connected via the interface.

Icon  **As standard** is used to save the settings as default values for future projects.

Icon  **Factory settings** is used for applying the unchangeable factory settings. The remaining parameters are entered in compliance with the project objectives and the specifications of other devices on the network.

**NOTE**

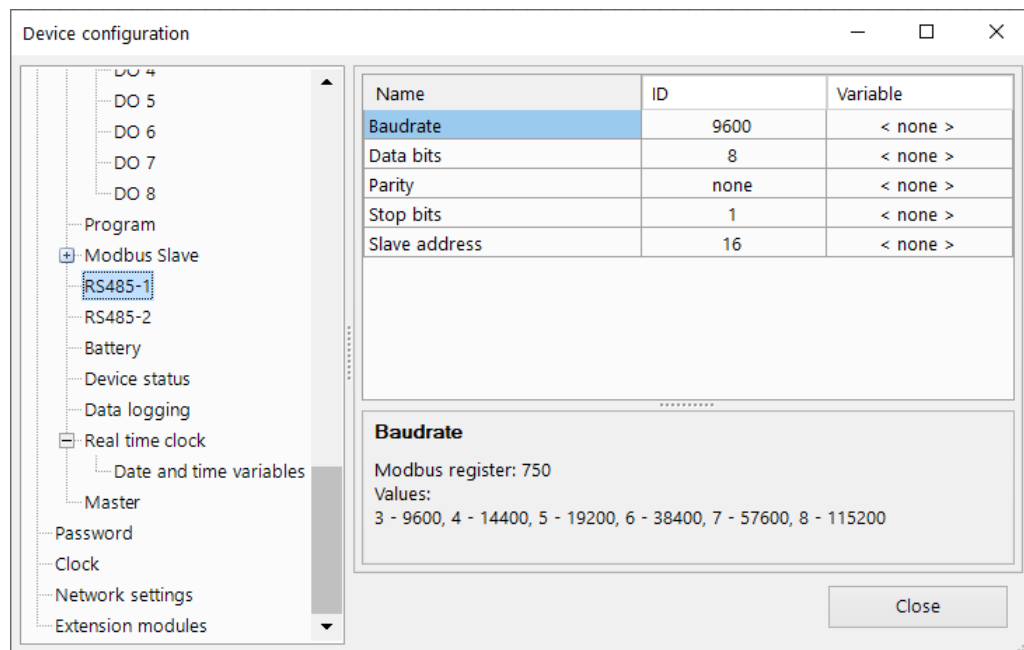
Parameters **Protocol** and **Interval between requests** are only available in the master mode.

Button **Read** is used to read out the current settings from the connected device.

Use button **Close** to save the settings in the project and close the dialog.

### Interface parameters for the second-generation devices

For the second-generation devices, the interface parameters are located in the **RS485 port settings** section in the configuration tree. The right side of the device settings window displays interface parameters. The settings window looks like the figure below.



| Name          | ID   | Variable |
|---------------|------|----------|
| Baudrate      | 9600 | < none > |
| Data bits     | 8    | < none > |
| Parity        | none | < none > |
| Stop bits     | 1    | < none > |
| Slave address | 16   | < none > |

**Baudrate**

Modbus register: 750

Values:  
3 - 9600, 4 - 14400, 5 - 19200, 6 - 38400, 7 - 57600, 8 - 115200

Close

The list of interface parameters depends on the device.

Choose values from the drop-down list or enter them into the **ID** column. It is possible to assign a variable to the parameter in the **Variable** column.

#### 5.3.1.2 Ethernet interface configuration

Ethernet settings are available only for second generation devices in the **Ethernet Settings** menu in the **Network settings** section of the settings tree.

The settings window displays current network parameters of the device, and also sets new ones.

After saving the settings with the new IP address, the device should be rebooted.

**NOTE**

After setting a new IP address, the device will lose connection with the PC. For the new connection you need to specify a new IP address (see [Connection to device](#)).

## 5.3.1.3 LoRa interface configuration

LoRa settings are available only for device models with the LoRa module, in the configuration tree: **Interfaces** → **LoRa**. Data exchange via the LoRa interface is carried out using the LoRaWAN protocol. The programmable relay is the end node of the LoRaWAN network.

## Network Settings

The LoRa interface and the LoRaWAN connection can be configured on the **Network parameters** tab.

**Activation** — Select the activation method in the network (ABP/OTAA):

- **OTAA** — network connection with the settings received from the server
- **ABP** — network connection with the settings specified manually

**Region** — Region-specific frequency band of LoRaWAN.

**Initial data rate** — Spreading Factor (SF) which determines the data rate, transmission range, and noise immunity. SF7: maximum rate, minimum range. SF12: minimum rate, maximum range.

**Transmission delay, s** — It is the delay time (in seconds) before sending packets. Transmission delay allows you to postpone the transfer of a ready parcel.

**Adaptive data rate (ADR)** — When selected, it automatically changes **Initial data rate** to optimal rate, depending on communication quality. The specified **Initial data rate** is used as the starting value for optimizing.

**Generate a message when power is lost** — When the parameter is selected, the device will send a message to the server in case of power supply failure.

## OTAA

Device configuration

Radio data exchange interface. Network parameters

Connection type: OTAA

Region: EU868

Initial speed: SF7

Sending delay, sec: 5

Application Identifier (AppEUI): FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF

Device Identifier (DevEUI): FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF

Encryption Key (AppKey): FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF

☒ Adaptive mode (ADR)

☒ Generate a message when power is lost

Read Close

**Application Identifier (AppEUI)** — Globally unique 64-bit (16-character) identifier that uniquely identifies the application provider of the end-device. The device uses the hexadecimal code to identify the application that receives and processes data from the device.

**Device Identifier (DevEUI)** — Globally unique 64-bit (16-character) identifier that specifically identifies an end-device. It is primarily used in the network to securely register and activate a connected end-device.

**Application key (AppKey)** — Server key (128 bits). It is used to encrypt information that will be transmitted over the network. It must be kept confidential and match on the device and on the server side.

## ABP

**Device Address (DevAddr)** — Local network address of a device. It is used for message routing and device identification during data communication.

**Network session key (NwkSKey)** — Network session key (128 bits) is a hexadecimal code used to encrypt/decrypt data communicated between the device and the network server.

**Application session key (AppSKey)** — Application session key (128 bits) is a hexadecimal code used to encrypt/decrypt data communicated between the device and the network server during a specific communication session.

**Read** button reads all the current parameters of the connected device.

**Close** button saves the entered parameters in the device and closes the Device configuration window. The parameters take effect after the power supply is restarted or after the program is loaded into the device.

## User parameters

**Query cycle (ms)** — the time interval between polling cycles.

**Time-out (ms)** — the time after which a polling attempt is considered failed.

**Retries, max.** — the number of failed polling attempts.

**Starting data transfer** — specifies a boolean variable that controls polling access: 0 – polling disabled, 1 – polling enabled. After polling, the value is reset to 0. The variable is selected in the variable table, which is opened by clicking the "..." button.

Group queries are not supported in LoRa modules.

### User-defined variables

A table of device variables is located at the bottom of the window.

To add a variable, click on the  button. The variable will be added to the table as shown in the figure below.

| +   |      |                  |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|---------|
| Parameter in FB                                                                                                                                                       | Type | Register address | Comment |
| Lora1_R                                                                                                                                                               | BOOL | 0                |         |
| Lora2_R                                                                                                                                                               | BOOL | 1                |         |
| Lora3_R                                                                                                                                                               | BOOL | 2                |         |
| Lora4_R                                                                                                                                                               | BOOL | 3                |         |

The variables added to the Lora interface automatically get a postfix to the name:

- **\_R** if the read function is selected in the variable properties
- **\_W** if the write function is selected in the variable properties

To create several variables with similar settings, use the Duplicate variable function. For more information about **Duplicate variable**, see section [Slave mode](#).

To delete a variable from the table, select the required variable and click  .

### Device variable properties

The device variable properties are configured to the right of the table.

Name:

Type:

Register:

Read function:

Write function:

Comment:

- **Name** — name of the device variable (set by the user)
- **Type** — type of the device variable: Integer or Floating Point
- **Register** — register address of the device variable (set by the user). The range of available addresses is specified in the User guide on the device.
- **Read function/Write function** — enables or disables the selection of a read/write function
- **Number of registers** (for integer variables only) — number of registers occupied by a variable: 1 or 2
- **Comment** — a text description of a variable in the variable table

## 5.3.2 Modbus working

## General

For devices in Master mode, you must select a protocol in settings.

| <b>Modbus Master</b>                 | <b>PR200, PR100, PR102, SMI200<br/>First Generation</b>                                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>PR225, PR205, PR103<br/>Second Generation</b>                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Protocols                            | Modbus RTU, Modbus ASCII (user-selectable)                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Modbus RTU, Modbus ASCII (user-selectable)<br>Modbus TCP                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Maximum Number of Slave Devices      | 16 per interface                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 32 across all interfaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Maximum Number of Requests           | 255 variables per device<br>Depending on the configuration, a single variable can correspond to a read request, a write request, or both a read and write request simultaneously.                                                              | 192, starting from ALP version 2.7.349 and firmware versions: PR205: 1.5.0, PR103: 1.7.0 64 (in earlier software versions).<br>Depending on the configuration, a single variable can correspond to either a read request or a write request.   |
| Group Queries                        | Supported, starting from ALP version 2.11 and firmware versions: PR100: 3.08, PR100: 2.70, PR102: 2.70, PR200: 2.73, IPP120: 2.73. Up to 48 registers per request (configurable).                                                              | Supported, starting from ALP version 2.10 and firmware versions: PR225: 1.9.0, PR205: 1.9.0, PR103: 1.11.0. Up to 16 registers per request (configurable).                                                                                     |
| Modbus Functions                     | 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04, 0x05, 0x06, 0x0F, 0x10                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04, 0x06, 0x0F, 0x10                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Data Types                           | BOOL, UINT16, UINT32, REAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | BOOL, UINT16, UINT32, REAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Byte/Register Order Swapping         | Supported, affects only REAL and UINT32 variables.                                                                                                                                                                                             | Supported, affects only REAL and UINT32 variables.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Broadcast Requests                   | Not supported                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Not supported                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Polling Templates                    | Supported                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Supported starting from ALP version 2.10                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Polling Control                      | At the device level (enable/disable polling) – see the <b>Polling</b> parameter.<br>At the request level – triggering on the edge of a boolean variable (parameters <b>Read Trigger/Write Trigger</b> ) + the <b>Write on Change</b> checkbox. | At the device level (enable/disable polling) – see the <b>Polling</b> parameter.<br>At the request level – triggering on the edge of a boolean variable (parameters <b>Read Trigger/Write Trigger</b> ) + the <b>Write on Change</b> checkbox. |
| Management of Desired Polling Period | At the device level                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | At the request level                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Modbus Master | PR200, PR100, PR102,<br>SMI200<br>First Generation                                                                                                                     | PR225, PR205, PR103<br>Second Generation                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Diagnostics   | At the device level (communication established/lost) – see the <b>Status</b> parameter.<br>At the request level – Modbus error code - see the <b>Status</b> parameter. | At the device level (communication established/lost) – see the <b>Status</b> parameter.                                                                                                                                    |
| Modbus TCP    | Not supported                                                                                                                                                          | Supported<br>Polling of all slave devices is sequential (only one client connection is active at a time). Requests are sent sequentially within a connection. Valid range for the slave device address (Unit ID): 1...247. |

Devices in Slave mode automatically determine the protocol.

| Modbus Slave                 | PR200, PR100, PR102,<br>SMI200<br>First Generation                                                                                                          | PR225, PR205, PR103<br>Second Generation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Protocols                    | Modbus RTU, Modbus ASCII (auto-detection – response is sent in the format of the request)                                                                   | Modbus RTU, Modbus ASCII (auto-detection – response is sent in the format of the request)<br>Modbus TCP                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Memory Area Model            | Common, with input/holding register overlay                                                                                                                 | Common, with input/holding register overlay                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Memory Size                  | 64 registers (128 bytes)                                                                                                                                    | 1020 registers (2040 bytes)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Group Queries                | Supported without artificial limitations                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Modbus Functions             | 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04, 0x05, 0x06, 0x0F, 0x10                                                                                                              | 0x03, 0x04, 0x06, 0x0F, 0x10, 0x14, 0x15                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Working with Bit Masks       | Bit mask parameters can be read using either function 0x03 or 0x01. If using 0x01, the register number should be multiplied by 16 and the bit number added. | Bit mask parameters can only be read using function 0x03.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Data Types                   | Uint16, REAL                                                                                                                                                | Uint16, REAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Byte/Register Order Swapping | Supported, but affects only REAL and UINT32 system variables.                                                                                               | Not supported. When polling variables that occupy two or more registers, the following settings should be used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Byte order – big-endian (most significant byte first)</li> <li>– Register order – little-endian (least significant register first)</li> </ul> |
| Broadcast Requests           | Supported                                                                                                                                                   | Not supported                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Modbus TCP                   | Not supported                                                                                                                                               | Supported, up to 4 simultaneous client connections (a fifth connection                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Modbus Slave        | PR200, PR100, PR102, SMI200<br>First Generation           | PR225, PR205, PR103<br>Second Generation                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     |                                                           | is independent and reserved for akYtec Cloud).<br>The Unit ID in the request is not validated.                                                                                     |
| RETAIN              | All network variables are always non-volatile (retained). | Starting from ALP version 2.9, the non-volatility of each network variable is user-configurable.<br>In earlier versions, all network variables are always non-volatile (retained). |
| Register Map Export | Export to akYtec Cloud, and a .csv file is supported.     | Export to akYtec Cloud, and a .csv file is supported.                                                                                                                              |

To organize data exchange on a network via a communication interface, a Network Master is required – a device operating in Master mode. The main function of the Network Master is to initiate data exchange.

Only one device in Master mode is allowed on the communication line.

### Number of Communication Interfaces

The number of communication interfaces a device has depends on the number of available connection slots. If the device supports up to two communication interfaces, they can be configured to operate on two independent networks.

### Standard Modbus Exception Codes

- **01** – The function code received in the query is not an allowable action for the server (Illegal Function).
- **02** – The data address received in the query is not an allowable address for the server (Illegal Data Address).
- **03** – A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for the server (Illegal Data Value).

### Functions and Data Areas

When making a request, the Master accesses one of the Slave's **memory areas** using a **function**. A **memory area** is characterized by the type of values it stores (bits/registers) and the access type (read-only/read-write).

Table 5.1 Modbus Protocol Data Areas

| Data Area         | Designation | Data Type | Access Type |
|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Coils             | 0x          | Boolean   | Read/Write  |
| Digital Inputs    | 1x          | Boolean   | Read Only   |
| Input Registers   | 3x          | Integer   | Read Only   |
| Holding Registers | 4x          | Integer   | Read/Write  |

Each data area consists of a specific number of cells, which depends on the particular device. Each cell has a unique address. For configurable devices, the manufacturer provides a **register map** containing information about the correspondence between device parameters and their addresses. For programmable devices, the user creates such a map independently using a programming environment. Some devices combine both of the cases described – their register map has a fixed part and a part that the user can supplement according to their task.

In some devices, memory areas are overlaid on top of each other (e.g., **0x** and **4x**), meaning the user can access the same registers using different functions.

A **function** defines the operation (read/write) and the memory area on which this operation will be performed.

Table 5.2 Main Modbus Protocol Functions

| Function Code | Function Name             | Command Executed                             |
|---------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1 (0x01)      | Read Coil Status          | Reads values from multiple coils             |
| 2 (0x02)      | Read Discrete Inputs      | Reads values from multiple discrete inputs   |
| 3 (0x03)      | Read Holding Registers    | Reads values from multiple holding registers |
| 4 (0x04)      | Read Input Registers      | Reads values from multiple input registers   |
| 5 (0x05)      | Force Single Coil         | Writes a value to a single coil              |
| 6 (0x06)      | Preset Single Register    | Writes a value to a single holding register  |
| 15 (0x0F)     | Force Multiple Coils      | Writes values to multiple coils              |
| 16 (0x10)     | Preset Multiple Registers | Writes values to multiple holding registers  |

In various documents, identical designations may have different meanings depending on the context. For example, the prefix **0x** is often used to indicate a hexadecimal number system. Therefore, in one case, **0x30** might denote "the 30th bit of the coils memory area," and in another, it might mean "address 30 in the hexadecimal (HEX) number system" (and this address could refer to any memory area).

Polling a Slave can be **single** or **group**. In **single polling**, the Master reads each of the Slave's parameters using a separate command.

In **group queries**, the Master reads several parameters at once with a single command. This is possible only when the addresses of the parameters in the register map are strictly consecutive with no gaps. Group queries help reduce network traffic and the time spent polling a device, but in some cases, it cannot be used (or can only be used with limitations) due to the individual characteristics of the device.

### Query Cycle and Response Time-out

The device sends requests at intervals specified by the **Query cycle** parameter of the device being polled. The time allowed to wait for a response to a request is set by the **Time-out** parameter. If no response is received within this time, the device will retry the request N times, where N is the number of **Retries**. If there is still no response, the **Status variable** will be set to 0 (False).

### Network Variable Types

| Data Type      |       | Size in Slave Mode    | Size in Master Mode   |
|----------------|-------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Integer        | UINT  | 16 bits (1 register)  | 16 bits (1 register)  |
|                | UDINT | -                     | 32 bits (2 registers) |
| Floating Point | REAL  | 32 bits (2 registers) | 32 bits (2 registers) |
| Boolean        | BOOL  | -                     | 1 bit                 |

### Register Order and Byte Order

When the device operates in Slave mode, the register/byte order settings only affect how the Master reads floating-point system network variables (analog inputs/outputs).

For user-defined network variables in Slave mode, data is always transmitted in the following format:

- Most significant register first: No

- Most significant byte first: Yes

### Automatic Program Cycle Time Adjustment

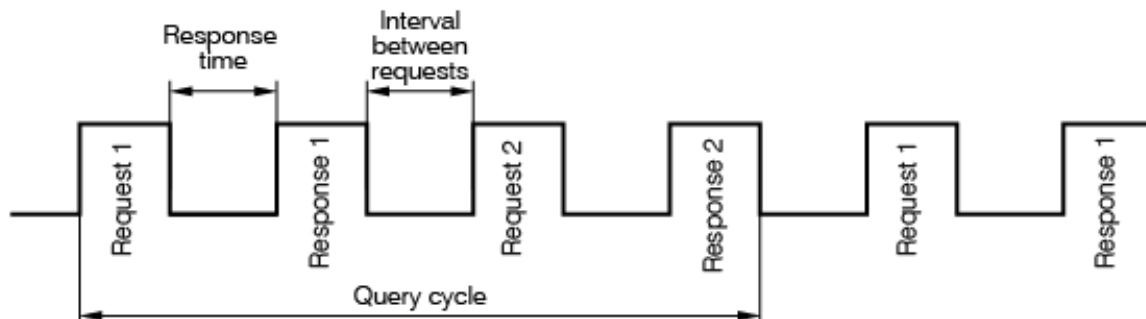
The devices can automatically adjust the program cycle time based on the complexity of the algorithm. This automatic adjustment of the program cycle time affects the operation of the communication interface because requests are processed during the remaining time of the cycle after the program has finished executing.

According to the cycle time adjustment algorithm, the minimum number of Master calls is up to 50 times per second. If the Master cannot poll all devices within this timeframe, the algorithm should be modified to optimize the number of requests.

### Query Cycle and Assignment Rules

The device places all requests into a queue. If the queue is short, the device will complete all request-response cycles and then wait until the specified period elapses. If the queue is long and cannot be processed within the specified period, the device will poll all necessary parameters with the maximum possible period, which will be longer than the period set in the configuration.

Polling timing diagram:



For a maximum speed of 115200 bps, when polling two REAL variables from a single slave device under "ideal" conditions (short communication line, no interference), the following should be established:

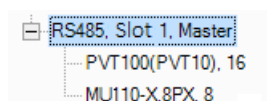
- Response time from the start of the request: 2.64 ms
- The next request starts no earlier than after 12 ms
- Total time for one REAL register request: 3.4 ms

Under the conditions mentioned above, the device can send 83 requests per second. This value also applies to other devices with similar timing characteristics. As the algorithm becomes more complex during development, the cycle time increases, and the number of requests per second will decrease.

The polling period value depends on the algorithm and how often specific parameters need to be polled. It is recommended to set the polling period to 1 second. In this case, the device will be able to poll up to 50 variables.

### Polling of multiple devices in the network

Slaves are polled according to the generated queue from the smallest to the largest address. In the following example, the slave with the address 8 is polled first, while the one with address 32 is polled last.



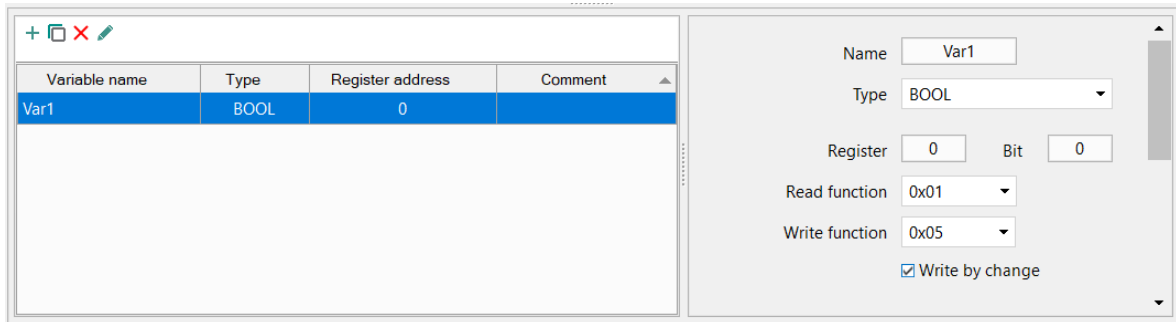
**Query cycle** can be set for each slave individually.

### Calculating the Address and Bit for Reading a Boolean Variable in Master Mode

In some cases, it is necessary to calculate the register address and bit number of a slave device. To determine the register address and bit number from the documentation of the device being polled, take the location of the bit variable, for example, *bit 1400*. Then proceed as follows:

1. Calculate the register address:  $1400 \div 16 = 87$ .
2. Calculate the bit number:  $1400 \bmod 16 = 8$ .

The obtained address and number are entered into the **Register** and **Bit** fields when configuring the device polling.



#### 5.3.2.1 Master mode

In Master mode, the device polls other slave devices connected via the interface. The **Group queries** option is available for polling similar parameters of the connected slave devices.

To poll, devices must be added and configured. To add a device, right-click on the name of the Master interface in the device configuration window - for first-generation devices, or on the Modbus Master item for second-generation devices, and select **Add Device** from the context menu.

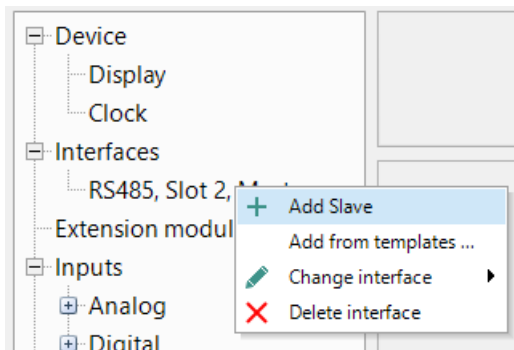


Fig. 5.1 Adding a Slave device (first-generation device)

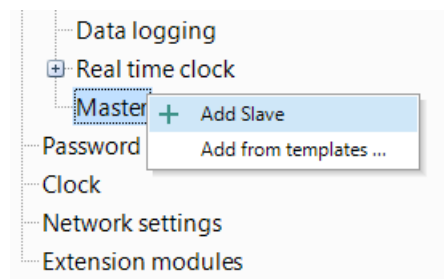


Fig. 5.2 Adding a Slave device (second-generation device)

The added device will appear in the tree as a new branch for the corresponding interface. The device name consists of the name, device address, and communication interface (for second-generation devices).

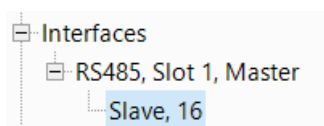


Fig. 5.3 Slave device in the parameter tree (first-generation devices)

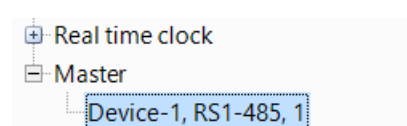


Fig. 5.4 Slave device in the parameter tree (second-generation devices)

### Group polling

Group polling allows reading multiple registers with a single command. The maximum number of registers in a group poll depends on the device's buffer size, the Modbus protocol type, and the read/write function used. For first-generation devices, the maximum group poll size is 48 registers. For second-generation devices, it is 16 registers. The formation of a group poll follows these rules:

1. Variables must be located strictly sequentially in the register map – with no gaps or unused registers/bits between them.
2. The variables in the poll must have identical read/write function codes assigned.  
*Exception:* Functions **0x05** and **0x06** are not allowed – group requests are not supported for them.
3. Variables are combined into a group poll only if they have the same polling type (periodic, on-command, or on-change).
4. Only variables of compatible sizes can be combined into a group poll:
  - **Boolean variables** – can only be grouped with other Boolean variables.
  - **Integer (1 register)** – can only be grouped with other integer (1 register) variables.
  - **Integer (2 registers)** – can be grouped with integer (2 registers) and floating-point variables.
  - **Floating-point** – can be grouped with integer (2 registers) and floating-point variables.

To minimize the time required to obtain data from all devices, the following is recommended:

- If one or more slave devices are disconnected or unavailable, it is recommended to implement logic in the program to disable polling for those devices or to minimize the "Time-out" parameter for them. Otherwise, the polling time will increase proportionally to the number of disconnected devices and the value set for their **Time-out** parameter.
- When setting the "Query cycle" parameter, consider the number of slave devices and the total number of requests. If the processing time for all requests exceeds the time set by the "Query cycle" parameter, this parameter will be ignored.

Using identical variable addresses and names for each device is allowed.

### Master Mode for First-Generation Devices



#### NOTE

For a list of first and second-generation devices, see the [Introduction](#) section.

### Slave device parameters

To change device parameters, click on its name in the configuration tree – the parameters will be displayed in the right part of the device configuration window.

|                  |                                                                                  |                            |                                              |             |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Name             | <input type="text" value="Slave"/>                                               | Status variable            | <input type="text" value=" &lt; none &gt;"/> | ...         |
| Address          | <input type="text" value="16"/>                                                  | Start query                | <input type="text" value=" &lt; none &gt;"/> | ...         |
| Query cycle (ms) | <input type="text" value="100"/>                                                 | Group queries:             | <input type="text" value="No"/>              |             |
| Time-out (ms)    | <input type="text" value="100"/>                                                 | Number of registers in the | <input type="text" value="16"/>              |             |
| Retries, max.    | <input type="text" value="3"/>                                                   |                            |                                              |             |
| Byte order:      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSB first <input type="checkbox"/> MSW first |                            |                                              |             |
| REAL             | 2                                                                                | 1                          | 4                                            | 3           |
|                  | <div></div>                                                                      | <div></div>                | <div></div>                                  | <div></div> |
| Comment          | <input type="text"/>                                                             |                            |                                              |             |

- **Name** – the device name displayed in the configuration tree.
- **Address** – the network address of the device.

- **Query cycle (ms)** – the time interval between polling cycles. Valid range: 0 to 65535 ms.
- **Time-out (ms)** – the time after which a polling attempt is considered failed. Valid range: 0 to 65535 ms. It is recommended to set the response time-out between 300–500 ms.
- **Retries, max.** – the number of failed polling attempts after which the device's Status changes. Valid range: 0 to 255.
- **Status variable** – specifies a boolean variable that stores the device status: 1 – device is functioning normally, 0 – communication with the device is lost. The variable is selected in the variable table, which is opened by clicking the "..." button.
- **Start query** – specifies a boolean variable that controls polling access: 0 – polling disabled, 1 – polling enabled. The variable is selected in the variable table, which is opened by clicking the "..." button.

**NOTE**

Variables linked to the **Status variable** and **Start query** parameters can be used in the program logic.

- **Group queries** – enables polling of more than one variable per request.
- **Number of registers in request** – from 2 to 48.
- **Byte Order** – determines the sequence of bytes in the packet.
- **MSW first** – determines the order of register transmission when working with two-register variables.
- **MSB first** – determines the byte order in the transmission.
- **Comment** – a text description of the device.

**Example:**

Goal: Read the number "-250.123".

Depending on the register/byte order settings, it will be transmitted in different ways.

| Register/Byte Order Setting                                                                                             | Transmitted Number                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Byte order: <input type="checkbox"/> MSB first <input type="checkbox"/> MSW first<br>REAL 1 2 3 4                       | Least significant byte Most significant byte Least significant byte Most significant byte<br>01111101 00011111 01111010 11000011<br>Least significant word Most significant word |
| Byte order: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSB first <input type="checkbox"/> MSW first<br>REAL 2 1 4 3            | Most significant byte Least significant byte Most significant byte Least significant byte<br>00011111 01111101 11000011 01111010<br>Least significant word Most significant word |
| Byte order: <input type="checkbox"/> MSB first <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSW first<br>REAL 3 4 1 2            | Least significant byte Most significant byte Least significant byte Most significant byte<br>01111010 11000011 01111101 00011111<br>Most significant word Least significant word |
| Byte order: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSB first <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSW first<br>REAL 4 3 2 1 | Most significant byte Least significant byte Most significant byte Least significant byte<br>11000011 01111010 00011111 01111101<br>Most significant word Least significant word |

**Slave device variables**

The polled device variables table is located at the bottom of the window.

To add a variable, click the  button. The variable will be inserted into the table, as shown in the figure below.

|    |      |                  |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|---------|
| Variable name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Type | Register address | Comment |
| Var1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | BOOL | 0                |         |
| Var2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | BOOL | 0                |         |

To delete a variable from the table, select it and click the  button.

To create several variables with similar settings, select a variable in the table and click the  **Duplicate** button.

**NOTE**For more information about **Duplicate variable**, see section Slave mode.

## Properties of network variables for Slave device

The screenshot shows a configuration window for a slave device variable. The fields are as follows:

- Name:** Var1
- Type:** INT
- Register:** 512
- Read function:** 0x03
- Write function:** 0x06
- Write by change:** ☒
- Number of registers:** 1
- Start reading:** 2
- Start writing:** < none >
- Status variable:** < none >
- Comment:** (empty text area)

The properties of a polled device variable are configured to the right of the table:

- **Name** – the name displayed in the variable table;

**NOTE**

Creating variables with identical names is not recommended.

- **Type** – the variable type: BOOL, INT, or REAL;
- **Bit (for Boolean variables only)** – the bit number to read;
- **Register/Register Address** – the register value accessed by the device, displayed in the table;
- **Read Function/Write Function** – enables or disables the selection of a read/write function;

**NOTE**

**Write by change** – if this function is activated, the master will initiate a write request to the slave device whenever the variable's value changes.

- **Number of registers** – the number of registers occupied by the variable: 1 or 2;
- **Start reading** – assigns a boolean variable (command variable) to force a read of the configured variable. When the command variable changes from 0 to 1, the master initiates a read request. After the request is successfully completed, the command variable value automatically changes from 1 back to 0;
- **Start writing** – assigns a boolean command variable to force a write of the configured variable. When the command variable changes from 0 to 1, the master initiates a write request. After the request is successfully completed, the command variable value automatically changes from 1 back to 0;
- **Status variable** – assigns an integer variable that will store the Modbus error code, should one occur;
- **Comment** – a text description of the variable for display in the variable table;

**NOTE**

Command-based reading and writing allow for forced reads or writes of a variable's value, providing more flexible control over these operations.

Different read and write modes can be combined, such as:

- Timer-based reading
- Event-based reading/writing
- Write on change (used by default)

**Master Mode for Second-Generation Devices**

To configure polling parameters for connected devices, select the **Master** node in the device's parameter tree.

**NOTE**

The maximum number of devices across all interfaces is 32.

To change the parameters of a polled device, click on its name in the parameter tree. The available parameters will be displayed in the right part of the window: device parameters at the top, and the device's network variables at the bottom.

**NOTE**

It is possible to modify the network settings of Slave devices from external software ([akYtec ToolPro](#)).

The screenshot shows the 'Device configuration' window. On the left is a tree view with categories like Analog inputs, Digital inputs, and Master. Under 'Master', 'Device-1, RS1-485, 1' is selected. The main area displays parameters for this device:

- Name:** Device-1
- Interface:** RS1-485
- Address:** 1
- Response:** 100
- Protocol:** Modbus RTU
- Retries, max.:** 3
- Status variable:** < not selected >
- Start query:** < not selected >
- Group queries:** No
- Number of registers in the:** 16
- Byte order:** ☒ MSB first, ☐ MSW first
- Comment:** (empty field)

Below these are two sections for network variables. The first is a table with columns: Name, Type, Register, Bit, Functions, Period, Comment. The second is a form for a specific variable:

- Name:** (empty)
- Type:** INT
- Register:** 0
- Number of registers:** (empty)
- Modbus function:** 0x03
- Reading period, ms:** 0

A 'Close' button is at the bottom right.

Fig. 5.5 Slave device parameters

- **Name** – the device name displayed in the configuration tree.
- **Interface** – the interface through which the polled device is connected. The list of available parameters depends on the selected interface.
- **Address** – the network address of the device.
- **Response time-out, ms** – the time after which a polling attempt is considered failed. Valid range: 10 to 10,000 ms.
- **Protocol**
- **Retries, max.** – the number of failed polling attempts allowed. Valid range: 0 to 3.

- **Status variable** – specifies a boolean variable that stores the device status: 1 – device is functioning normally, 0 – communication with the device is lost. The variable is selected in the variable table, which is opened by clicking the "..." button.
- **Start query** – specifies a boolean variable that controls polling access: 0 – polling disabled, 1 – polling enabled. The variable is selected in the variable table, which is opened by clicking the "..." button.
- **Group queries** – enables polling of more than one variable per request.
- **Number of registers in the request** – from 2 to 16.
- **Byte order** – determines the sequence of bytes in the packet.
- **Comment** – a text description of the device.

Specific parameters for a polled device connected via Ethernet:

- **IP Address** – the unique network address of the device, valid range from 0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255.
- **Port** – the port number, valid range from 0 to 65535.

Fig. 5.6 Specific parameters for device connected via Ethernet

Fig. 5.7 Properties of network variables for the Slave device

- **Name** – the name displayed in the variable table.



**NOTE**

Creating variables with identical names is not recommended.

- **Type** – the variable type: BOOL, INT, or REAL.

## 5 Device configuration

- **Register** – the register value accessed by the device, displayed in the table.
- **Bit (for Boolean variables only)** – the bit number to read.
- **Number of registers (for Integer variables only)** – the number of registers occupied by the variable: 1 or 2.
- **Modbus function** – enables or disables the selection of a read/write function.

The list of configurable parameters depends on the selected read/write function.

Parameters for Read Functions:

- **Reading period** – the time interval between read requests.
- **By command** – a boolean variable whose edge triggers a read of the parameter.

Parameters for Write Functions:

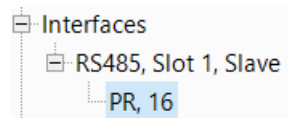
- **Writing period** – the time interval between write operations.
- **By command** – a boolean variable whose edge triggers a write of the parameter.
- **By change** – if this function is activated, the master will initiate a write request to the slave device whenever the variable's value changes.
- **Comment** – a text description of the variable for display in the *variable table*.

### 5.3.2.2 Slave mode

In Slave mode, the device provides data to be read by another device on the network; it does not initiate polling itself.

#### Slave mode for first generation devices

To configure the data transmission parameters, click on the device name (default is **PR, 16**) under the interface name in the configuration tree.



#### Device parameters

|             |                                               |   |                                    |    |  |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|----|--|
| Name        | PR                                            |   | Address                            | 16 |  |
| Byte order: | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MSB first |   | <input type="checkbox"/> MSW first |    |  |
| REAL        | 2                                             | 1 | 4                                  | 3  |  |
| Comment     |                                               |   |                                    |    |  |

The right part of the configuration window contains device parameters common to all variables:

- **Name** – the device name displayed in the configuration tree.
- **Address** – the network address of the device.
- **Comment** – a text description of the device.



#### NOTE

In Slave mode, the **MSW first** and **MSB first** settings only affect the register/byte packing order for the device's system network variables.

For user-defined project network variables in Slave mode, data is always transmitted in the following format:

- **Most significant word first:** No
- **Most significant byte first:** Yes

A device in Slave mode can support polling of up to 64 registers during group polling.

### Device variables

The device variables table, located at the bottom of the window, contains the variables whose values will be read by another device.

To add a variable, click the  button. The variable will be inserted into the table, as shown in the figure below.

| +   |      |                  |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------|---------|
| Variable name                                                                                                                                                         | Type | Register address | Comment |
| Var1                                                                                                                                                                  | INT  | 512              |         |
| Var2                                                                                                                                                                  | INT  | 513              |         |
| Var3                                                                                                                                                                  | INT  | 514              |         |

To delete a variable from the table, select it and click the  button.

To create several variables with similar settings, select a variable in the table and click the  **Duplicate** button.



#### NOTE

Duplicating variables is only available for first-generation devices.

 Duplicate variable ×

Parameters

Name

Var1

Start number

4

▲▼

Quantity

3

▲▼

Address step

2

▲▼

OK

Cancel

Variable duplication settings:

- **Name** – the name of the variable to be duplicated.
- **Start number** – the initial number that will be appended to the duplicated variable's name.
- **Quantity** – the number of variables to add.
- **Address step** – the increment step for the **Register** parameter value.

The variables will be added to the table.

| Variable name | Type | Register address | Comment |
|---------------|------|------------------|---------|
| Var1          | INT  | 512              |         |
| Var2          | INT  | 513              |         |
| Var3          | INT  | 514              |         |
| Var11         | INT  | 515              |         |
| Var12         | INT  | 516              |         |
| Var13         | INT  | 517              |         |

The duplicated variables added into the LoRa interface with postfix `_R` or `_W` have a Start number before the postfix.

### Device variable properties

The device variable properties are configured to the right of the table:

- **Name** – Name of the device variable (set by the user)
- **Type** – type of the device variable: integer or floating-point



#### NOTE

Boolean variables can be read into an integer variable. The state of a discrete input can be extracted using the EXTRACT block or a suitable macro from the Component manager.

- **Register** – register address of the device variable (set by the user). The range of available addresses is specified in the device's *user manual*.
- **Comment** – a textual description of the variable's value in the variable table.

### Slave mode for the second generation devices

Second-generation devices operate in Slave mode by default. Device variables are configured through the variable table on the **Network, Slave** tab.

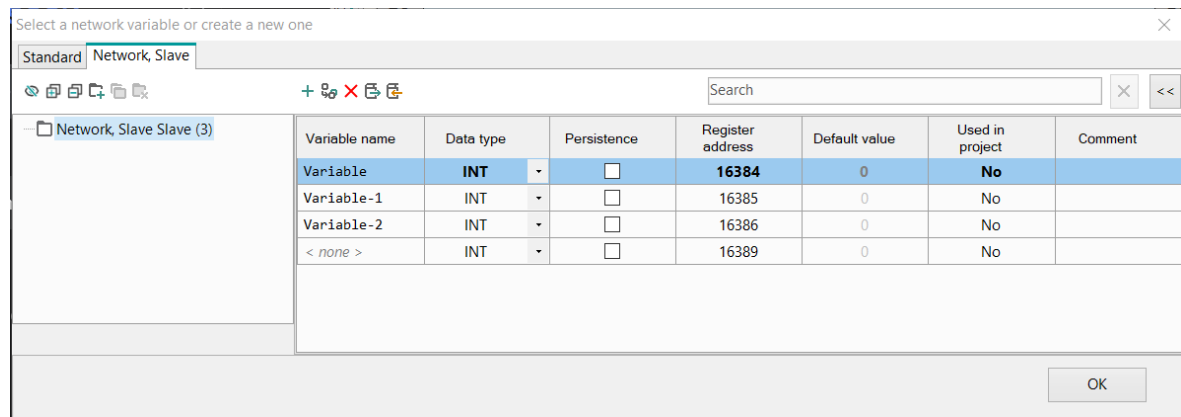


Fig. 5.8 Variable table

- **Variable name** – name of the device variable (set by the user)
- **Data type** – integer or floating-point

**NOTE**

Boolean variables can be read into an integer variable. The state of a discrete input can be extracted using the EXTRACT block or a suitable macro from the Component Manager.

- **Persistence** – when the checkbox is enabled, the variable is stored in the non-volatile system EEPROM area. Information about variable persistence is saved with the project.
- **Register address** – address of network variables in the range from 16,384 to 20,479
- **Default value** – variable value that will be initialized when the program starts
- **Used in project** – indicates if the variable is linked to blocks in the program. If the variable is bound, the value is **Yes**.
- **Comment** – a textual description of the variable for display in the variable table

After connecting the device to akYtec ToolPro or akYtec Cloud, the network variables will be displayed in the parameter tree.



To configure the display, select a variable in the table and click the **Parameter Settings** button in the upper right corner of the window. The **Parameter Configuration** panel will appear.

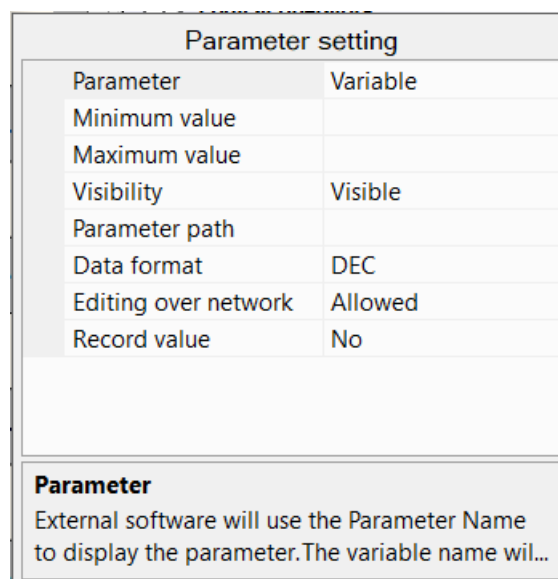


Fig. 5.9 Parameter setting

- **Parameter** – parameter name that will be displayed in the parameter tree when working with akYtec ToolPro and akYtec Cloud.

- **Minimum value** – minimum parameter value for display in akYtec ToolPro and akYtec Cloud, does not affect program execution logic.
- **Maximum value** – maximum parameter value for display in akYtec ToolPro and akYtec Cloud, does not affect program execution logic;
- **Visibility** – parameter visibility when working with akYtec ToolPro and akYtec Cloud: **Visible** – parameter is displayed in the parameter tree, **Hidden** – the parameter is not displayed in the parameter tree;
- **Parameter path** – parameter will be displayed when the device works with external software. Directory nesting is added using a backslash – \.
- **Data format** – format in which the parameter value will be displayed; relevant for integer variables; available formats: **DEC** (decimal), **BIN** (binary, displayed in akYtec ToolPro as a bit mask), **hex** (hexadecimal), and **enum** (enumeration, for uint16 only).
- **Editing over network** – ability to edit the parameter value from akYtec ToolPro and akYtec Cloud.
- **Record value** – whether parameter value needs to be archived: **Yes** – the parameter value is recorded in the device archive, **No** – the parameter value is not recorded in the device archive.

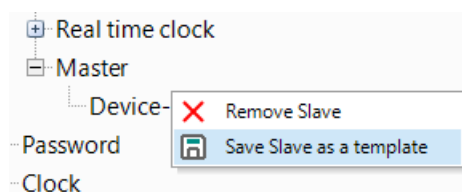
### 5.3.2.3 Network device templates

#### Network Device Templates

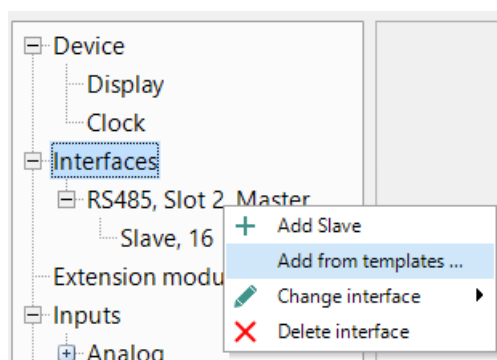
For interfaces operating in Master mode, the creation and use of network device templates is available. The parameters and variables of a configured device can be saved as a template file.

#### Creating a Template

To create a template, select **Save Slave as a template** in the device's context menu or in the upper part of the device configuration window.



In the opened file explorer window, select the location and enter the file name. The file will be saved with the \*.dvtpe extension. The saved template can be used for other interfaces and projects. To use a saved template, right-click on the interface name in the configuration tree and select **Add from templates...** In the opened file explorer window, select the file containing the template.



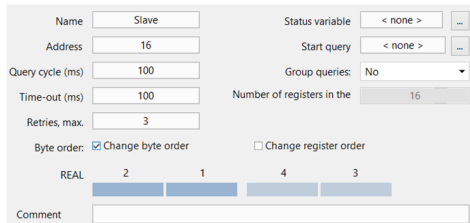
The device from the template will be added to the interface along with all its parameters.

For a number of akYtec devices, there are ready-made templates that can be downloaded from the online database using the Component Manager.

When using network device templates created in projects for first-generation devices in projects with second-generation devices:

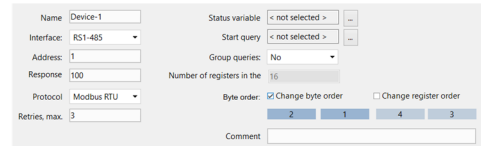
- When **group polling** is selected, the number of registers in the request will either retain its value (if the entered value is from 2 to 16), or will be set to 16 if the value stored in the template is greater than 16:

Slave parameters  
for first-generation devices



Form for Slave parameters for first-generation devices. Fields include: Name (Slave), Address (16), Query cycle (ms) (100), Time-out (ms) (100), Retries, max. (3), Status variable (< none >), Start query (< none >), Group queries (No), Number of registers in the (16), Byte order (Change byte order checked, Change register order unchecked), REAL (2, 1, 4, 3), and Comment.

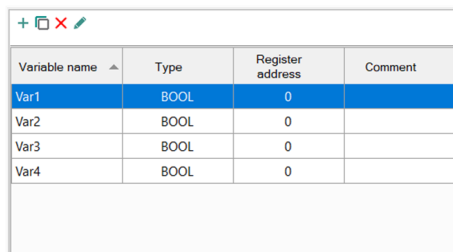
Slave parameters  
for second-generation devices



Form for Slave parameters for second-generation devices. Fields include: Name (Device-1), Interface (RS1-485), Address (1), Response (100), Protocol (Modbus RTU), Retries, max. (3), Status variable (= not selected >), Start query (= not selected >), Group queries (No), Number of registers in the (16), Byte order (Change byte order checked, Change register order unchecked), and Comment.

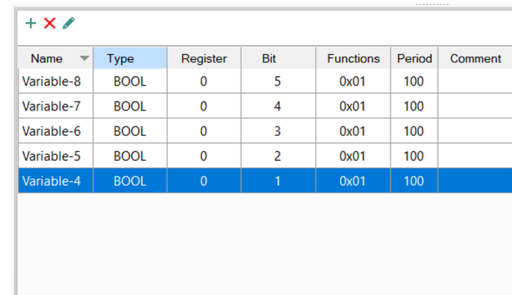
- A variable with read and write function is split into two variables: a read function `_read` and a write function `_write`:

Variable table of Slave  
for first-generation devices



| Variable name | Type | Register address | Comment |
|---------------|------|------------------|---------|
| Var1          | BOOL | 0                |         |
| Var2          | BOOL | 0                |         |
| Var3          | BOOL | 0                |         |
| Var4          | BOOL | 0                |         |

Variable table of Slave  
for second-generation devices

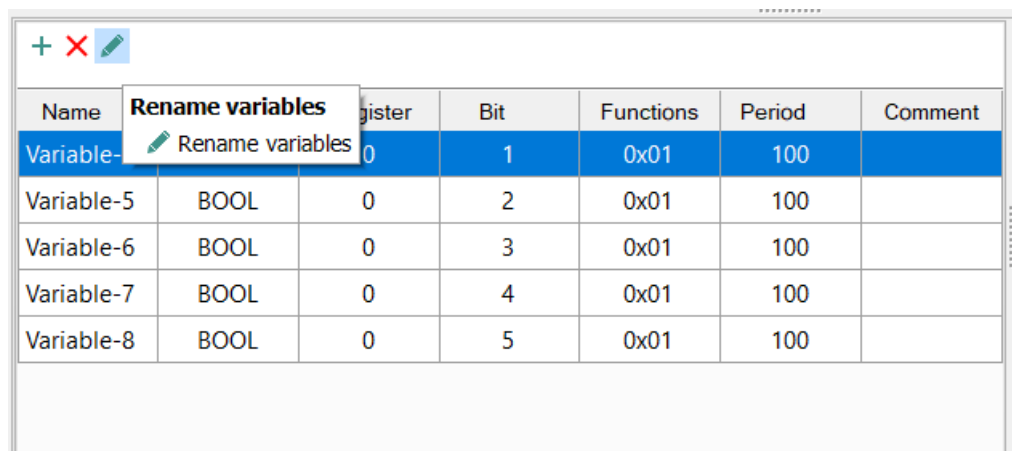


| Name       | Type | Register | Bit | Functions | Period | Comment |
|------------|------|----------|-----|-----------|--------|---------|
| Variable-8 | BOOL | 0        | 5   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-7 | BOOL | 0        | 4   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-6 | BOOL | 0        | 3   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-5 | BOOL | 0        | 2   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-4 | BOOL | 0        | 1   | 0x01      | 100    |         |

When using network device templates created in projects for second-generation devices in projects with first-generation devices, the polling period parameter will revert to its default value (100 ms).

### Group variable renaming

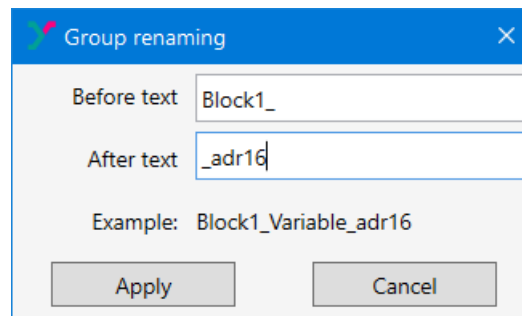
To batch rename variables in the variable table of the Slave device in the device configuration window, click the  button.



| Name       | Type | Register | Bit | Functions | Period | Comment |
|------------|------|----------|-----|-----------|--------|---------|
| Variable-4 | BOOL | 0        | 1   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-5 | BOOL | 0        | 2   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-6 | BOOL | 0        | 3   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-7 | BOOL | 0        | 4   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Variable-8 | BOOL | 0        | 5   | 0x01      | 100    |         |

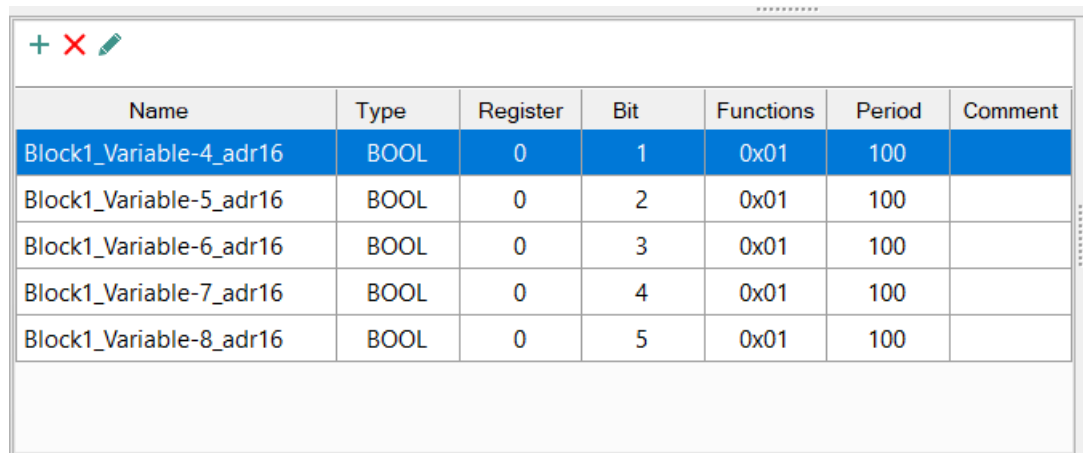
A tooltip 'Rename variables' with a pencil icon is shown over the first row.

In the window that appears, enter the text to display before and after the variable name, and click the **Apply** button.



A dialog box titled "Group renaming" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains two text input fields: "Before text" with the value "Block1\_" and "After text" with the value "\_adr16". Below these fields is an "Example:" label followed by the text "Block1\_Variable\_adr16". At the bottom are two buttons: "Apply" and "Cancel".

As a result, all variables will be renamed according to the entered data:



A table with 7 columns: Name, Type, Register, Bit, Functions, Period, and Comment. The table contains 5 rows of data. The first row is highlighted in blue. Above the table are three icons: a plus sign, a red X, and a pencil. To the right of the table is a vertical scrollbar.

| Name                    | Type | Register | Bit | Functions | Period | Comment |
|-------------------------|------|----------|-----|-----------|--------|---------|
| Block1_Variable-4_adr16 | BOOL | 0        | 1   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Block1_Variable-5_adr16 | BOOL | 0        | 2   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Block1_Variable-6_adr16 | BOOL | 0        | 3   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Block1_Variable-7_adr16 | BOOL | 0        | 4   | 0x01      | 100    |         |
| Block1_Variable-8_adr16 | BOOL | 0        | 5   | 0x01      | 100    |         |

When replicating a variable that was renamed using batch renaming, the "Text after" will not change; the initial and subsequent numbers will be added to the name of the replicated variable.

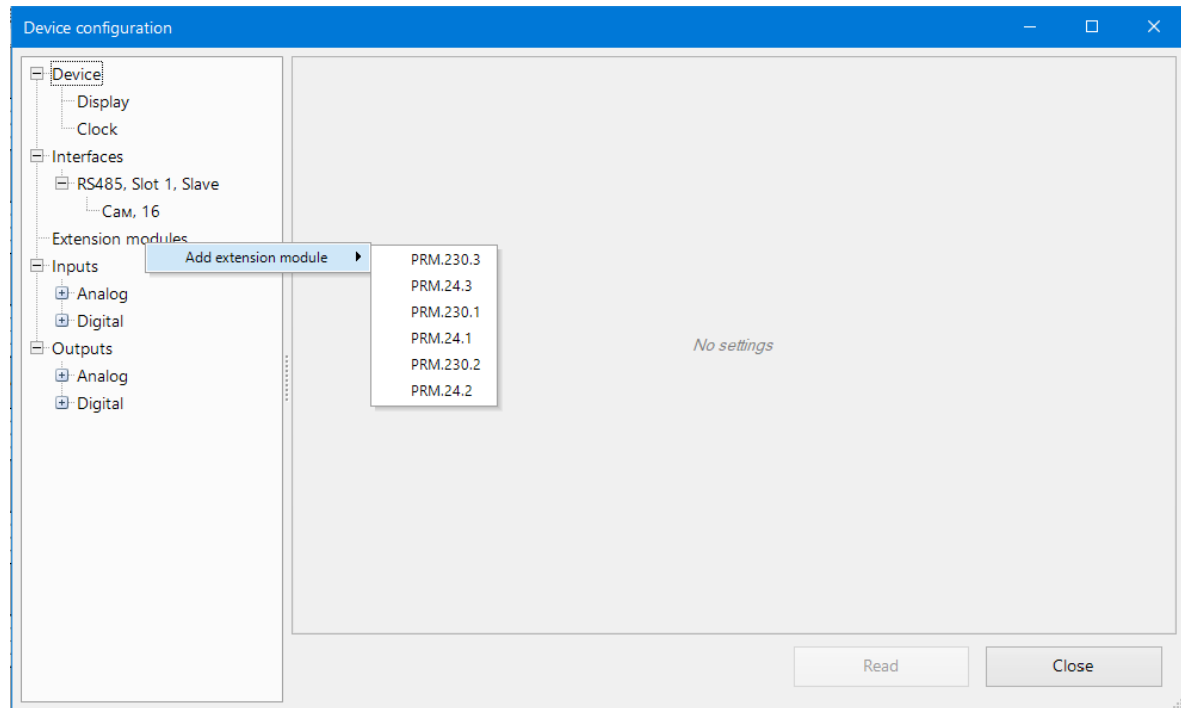
The batch rename settings are saved in the template and are available for editing when the template is subsequently used.

Renaming each variable individually is available in the [variable table](#) and in the [program code](#).

#### 5.4 Extension modules

Up to two I/O extension modules of type PRM can be connected to base device. For further information about extension modules refer to the PRM user guide.

To use module I/O points in the circuit program, add the module to the group **Extension modules** using its context menu.



The additional I/O points of the added modules can be configured in branches **Inputs** and **Outputs** respectively. They are displayed in the tree as **Ix(y)** and **Qx(y)** respectively, where **x** is the ordinal number of the I/O point on the module and **y** is the ordinal number of the module counting from the base device.

Before uploading the project to the base device, all modules must be connected via the internal bus to base device and powered on. The module firmware is synchronized with the current version of ALP when uploading a project.

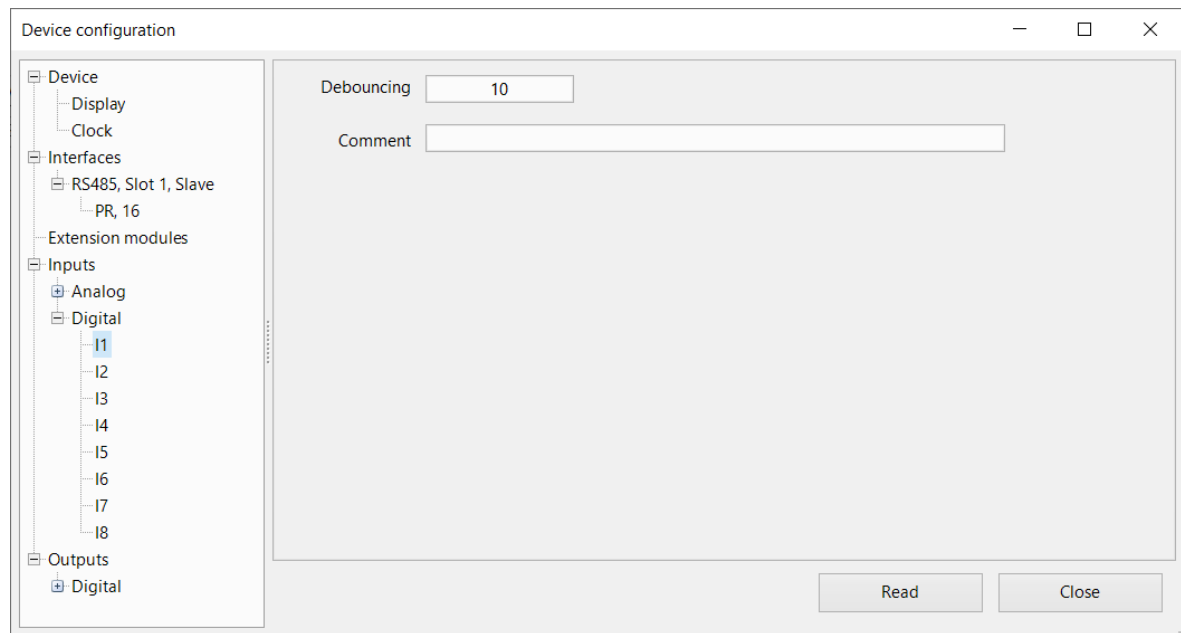
### 5.5 Inputs and outputs

#### Inputs

The content of the branch **Inputs** depends on the resources of the target device. It can be analog and/or digital inputs.

The parameter **Comment** is common for all types of inputs. The text in this field is displayed in a tooltip, when the mouse cursor is over the input in the workspace. The text can be entered in Property Box too.

For further details about the configuration of the inputs, refer to the device user guide.



Other input parameters depend on the types of the input and the device.

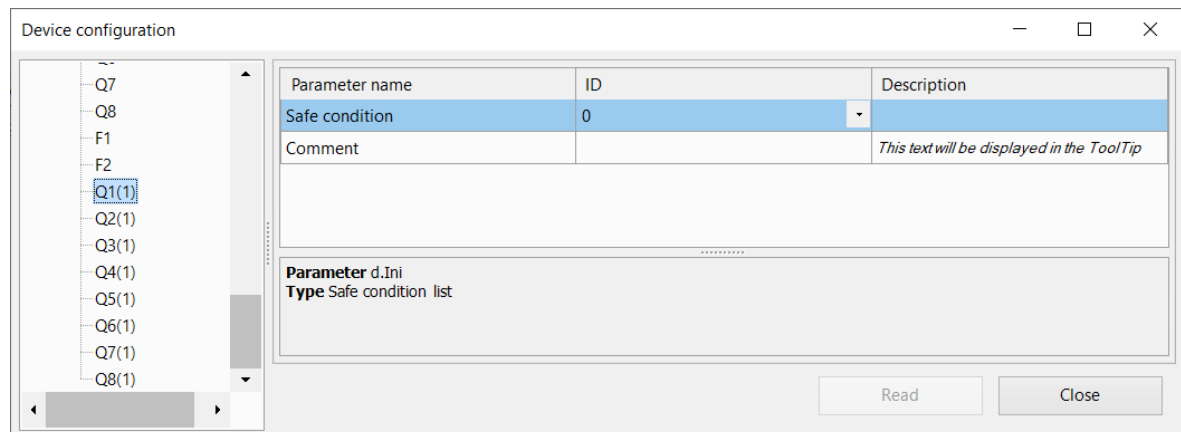
## Outputs

The content of the branch **Outputs** depends on the resources of the target device. It can be analog and/or digital outputs.

The parameter **Comment** is common for all types of outputs. The text in this field is displayed in a tooltip, when the mouse cursor is over the output in the workspace. It can be entered in Property Box too.

For further details about the configuration of the outputs, refer to the device user guide.

The digital outputs of the extension module have an additional parameter **Safe condition**. The parameter specifies the output state in case the connection between the module and the base device is lost.



## Settings for devices on the new hardware platform

The window for setting up inputs and outputs for devices on the new platform has a different interface, and the parameters on the right side of the window are presented in a table.

For devices on the new platform, the menu for setting the safe state of the outputs is located in the branch of the added expansion module.

### 5.6 Password

For devices on the new platform, you can set a password to protect the device.

The password is set in the **Password** section in the settings tree only for the device connected to PC.

### Create password

If a password is not set in the device, then password creation will be active in the settings window. Enter your password and confirm to continue.

### Changing and resetting password

If the device already has set a password, you can change or reset it.

To change the password, enter current password and new password in the **Change password** columns.

To reset your password, enter your current password in the **Reset password** column.

If you have lost your password, see the device user guide in order to reset it.

For a password-protected device, a password is required when transferring a program, see [Upload project to device](#).

## 5.7 Connecting to akYtec Cloud

akytec Cloud connectivity is available for devices on the new platform (i.e. PR103).



#### NOTE

For a list of devices on the new platform, see [About](#).



#### NOTE

To connect to akYtec Cloud, the device must be password protected. Without the password, the device will not connect to akytec Cloud. For setting the password, see [Password](#).

Before setting up connection to akYtec Cloud, you should set up authorization of the device in akYtec Cloud, for details see [akYtec Cloud User Manual](#) and device *User Manual*. During operation, the device must be connected to the Internet for data transfer.

In the **akYtec Cloud Connection Settings** section of the Settings tree, you can set the connection and akYtec Cloud connection status.

| Name              | ID             | Variable |
|-------------------|----------------|----------|
| IP address        | 10.2.11.122    | < none > |
| Subnet mask       | 255.255.0.0    | < none > |
| Gateway           | 10.2.1.1       | < none > |
| New IP address    | 10.2.11.122    | < none > |
| New subnet mask   | 255.255.0.0    | < none > |
| New gateway       | 10.2.1.1       | < none > |
| DHCP              | Service button | < none > |
| DNS server 1      | 0.0.0.0        | < none > |
| DNS server 2      | 0.0.0.0        | < none > |
| Connection status | no connection  | < none > |
| Cloud connection  | Off            | < none > |

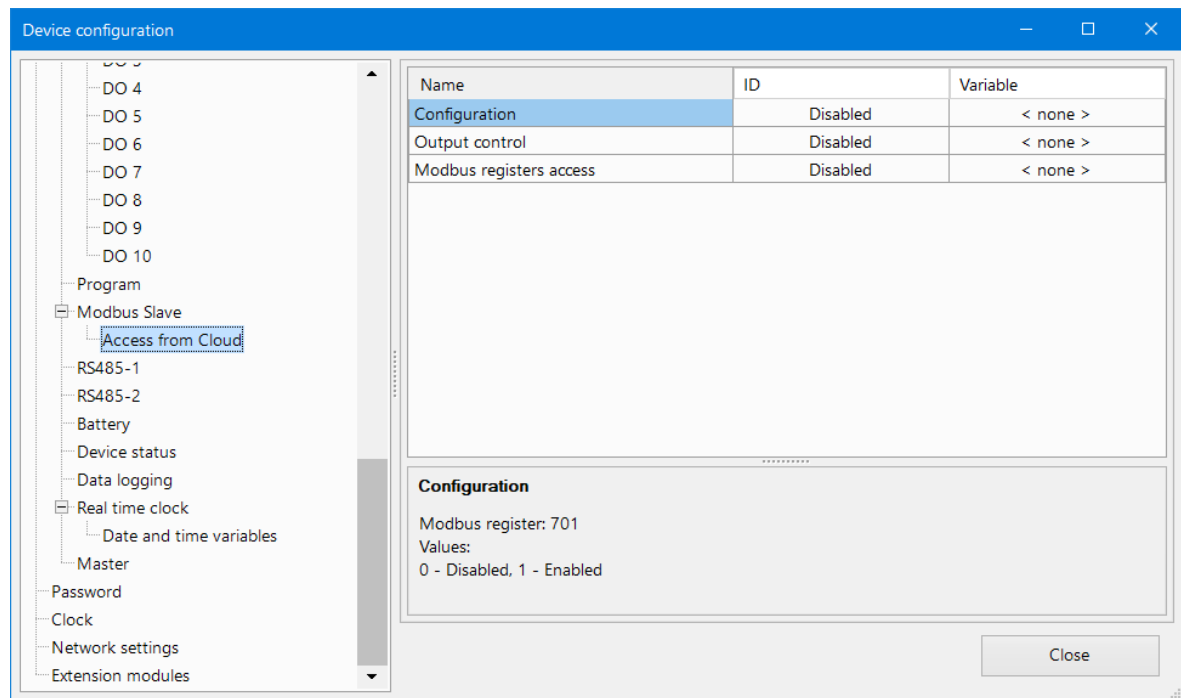
**Cloud connection**

Modbus register: 35  
Values:  
0 - Off, 1 - On

When saving the settings, the device will be rebooted.

Read Save Close

In the **Access from Cloud** section of the configuration tree, you can set the akYtec Cloud access levels to the device.



For an example of working with akYtec Cloud, see [section Task 3. Direct connection of PR103 to akYtec Cloud.](#)

## 6 Variables

Variables are used for writing and reading values on the project diagram and when programming device display.

### In-Use Variables

A variable is considered **in-use** if it meets **at least one** of the following conditions:

- General conditions for all variable types:
  - It is linked to a visualization element.
  - It is linked to a device parameter.
  - It is linked to physical buttons.
  - It is used in logical transitions between screens.
  - An output block for a non-volatile variable (Non-volatility = On) exists for the variable on the diagram.
- Additional conditions for variables of the Array type:
  - For an array with **Boolean elements** and non-volatility set to "Off" – an output block for the array or its elements exists on the diagram.
  - For an array with **Integer or Real elements** and non-volatility set to "Off" – an input block for the array or its elements exists on the diagram.

If none of the conditions are met, the variable is considered **unused**.

**Unused** variables:

- do not participate in the program logic.
- are not involved in program simulation.
- do not occupy device memory.

### Variable table

Project variables are displayed in the Variable table.

To see all project variables, click the icon  in the toolbar or use the menu item **Device** → **Variable table**.

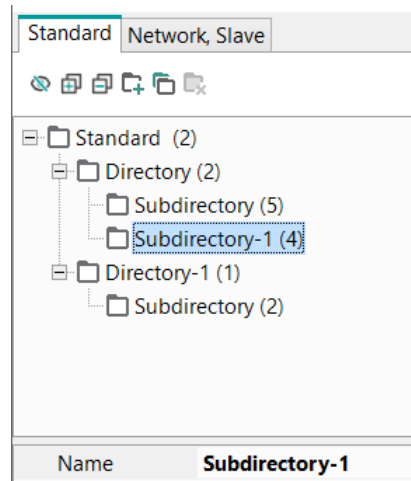
The variables are divided into three groups, each of which has a separate tab in the table:

- **Standard**
- Service
- Network – a separate tab for each communication interface.

### Variable directory tree

The **Variable directory tree** allows you to create catalog sections for organizing variables. A separate catalog tree is displayed for each variable category. For standard and network variables, you can create additional catalog sections (maximum nesting depth is 3). The catalogs for service variables are fixed and cannot be modified.

Next to each catalog name, the number of variables within that catalog is shown in parentheses. This count either includes or excludes variables in nested catalogs, depending on the "Show nested variables" setting.



|  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Enable/disable</b> the display of nested variables                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  | <b>Expand</b> nested sections                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  | <b>Collapse</b> nested sections                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | <b>Create</b> a variable catalog section.<br>Creating a section is also available through the catalog's context menu.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  | <b>Duplicate</b> catalog — the selected folder will be duplicated in the parent catalog with all nested sections and added variables.<br>Copying a section is also available through the catalog's context menu. Select <b>Copy</b> , then select the catalog where you want to add the copied section, right-click and select <b>Paste</b> .<br><br><b>NOTE</b><br>The target catalog for adding information must be one level above the copied section. |
|  | <b>Delete</b> catalog.<br>Deleting a catalog section is also available through the catalog's context menu.<br>A catalog section containing variables cannot be deleted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

To move directory sections, press and hold the **Shift** key, and use the mouse to move the section to a new location.

**NOTE**  
Moving sections is only available within the parent directory.

To rename a directory section, enter a new name on the **Name** line at the bottom of the **Variable Directory Tree**.

**NOTE**  
The directory section name field cannot be empty or duplicate the name of another section within the parent directory. If an incorrect name is entered, an error message box will appear.

To determine the directory section in which a variable resides, highlight the variable in the table and press **Ctrl + H**. The section where the variable is located highlights in blue in the directory tree. The line below shows name of the section, and the section with the variable opens in the variable table. You may also hover your mouse over a variable to summon a pop-up window with the variable's name and location.

## Variables

To use a variable in a project, you must first create it in the variable table.

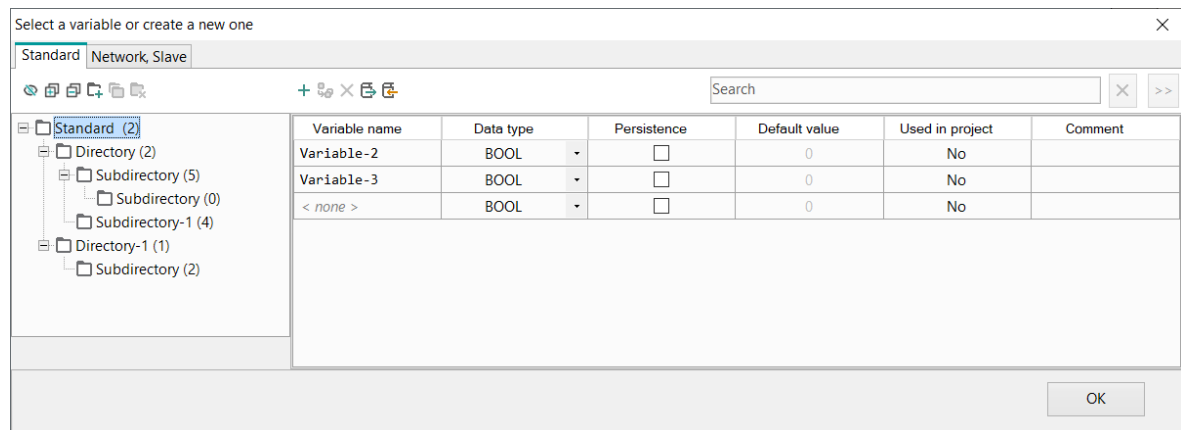


Fig. 6.1 Variable table

|  |                                           |
|--|-------------------------------------------|
|  | Create a variable                         |
|  | Duplicate a variable                      |
|  | Delete a variable                         |
|  | Export standard variables to a CSV file   |
|  | Import standard variables from a CSV file |
|  | Expand all arrays                         |
|  | Collapse all arrays                       |

To create a variable, click the button in the upper left part of the table, or enter a variable name in the "Variable name" column. Select the type and fill in the remaining parameters according to your operational needs.

- **Variable name** – name to be displayed on the Variables panel and on the variable block in the project.
- **Data type** – one of three types can be assigned: Boolean, integer, floating point. See the [Data Types 6.1](#) section for more details.

When selecting a variable of the Array type, enter the following in the **Array Settings** window that appears:

- **Size of array** – the number of elements in the array, maximum 256. Values are specified in the format [x..y], where x is the index of the first element and y is the index of the last element.
- **Element type** – the data type of the array elements: BOOL, INT, REAL.

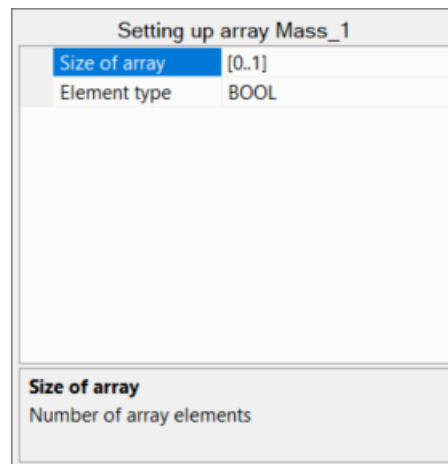


Fig. 6.2 Array settings

- **Persistence** – enable the checkbox in the setting field to save the variable value in the device ROM in case of power failure. The storage time of the variable in ROM depends on the device type, see device *operation manual*

**NOTE**

For devices on the new platform, when the Persistence checkbox is enabled in the variable table, the variable value is saved:

- To the system EEPROM for a standard variable bound to an device parameter or visualization element. For the network Slave variable.
- To the EEPROM for a standard variable not bound to the device parameter or to the visualization element.

When you save a project, the information about the non-volatile variables is also saved.

- **Default value** – the value that the variable will keep until a new value is written to it.
- **Used in project** – indication of binding to blocks in the program. If the variable is bound, the value is **Yes**.
- **Comment** – text description to be displayed in the tooltip on the project diagram when the cursor is placed over the variable block.

To duplicate a variable, right-click on the variable line and select the **Duplicate a variable** from the context menu or click the button at the top of the table.

**NOTE**

Duplicating an array element is not possible.

To remove a variable from the table, right-click on the variable row and select **Delete Variable** in the context menu or click the button at the top of the table.

**NOTE**

Deleting an array element is not possible.

**Exporting variables to a file**

To export a variable tab as a table in **.csv** format:

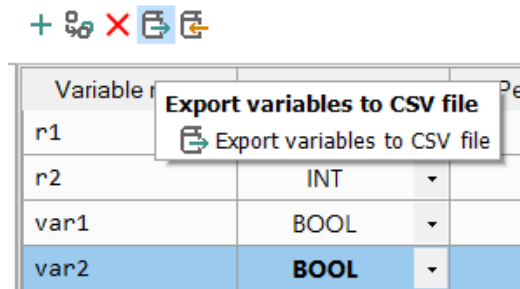
1. Click **Export Variables to CSV File** at the top of the table.
2. In the window that opens, specify the location to save the file.
3. Click the **Save** button.

**NOTE**

The file name is generated based on the exported tab following the pattern **ProjectName\_Tab\_Variables**.

**NOTE**

For second-generation devices, the Slave network variables tab is exported along with the variable parameter settings.

**Importing variables from a file**

To import a variable table from a **.csv** file, click the **Import Variables from CSV File** button at the top of the table. Select the file from which you want to import data and click **Open**. Any catalogs present in the file will also be imported, preserving the variable nesting. If the file contains incorrect data, such as a missing column for the variable name, type, or register, an error message will be displayed. After correcting the error, perform the import again. If there are matches in variable names and/or registers between the project and the imported file, an information window will appear listing all name and/or register conflicts and prompt you to either continue with or cancel the import.

**Expand/Collapse arrays**

If your project contains a variable of the Array type, you can configure the display of its elements in the variable table. An array is displayed in the variable table as an array tree. To expand the array

tree for all array-type variables in the variable table, click the **Expand all arrays** button at the top of the table. This setting is preserved the next time you open the variable table within the same session. To display the elements of a single array-type variable, click the individual "+" button located in front of the array's name.

To collapse the array tree for all array-type variables in the variable table, click the **Collapse all arrays** button at the top of the table. This setting is preserved the next time you open the variable table within the same session. To hide the elements of a single array-type variable, click the individual "-" button located in front of the array's name.

**Searching for Variables**

The variable table supports searching and filtering by name. The space character acts as a logical OR, allowing you to filter variables by multiple criteria.

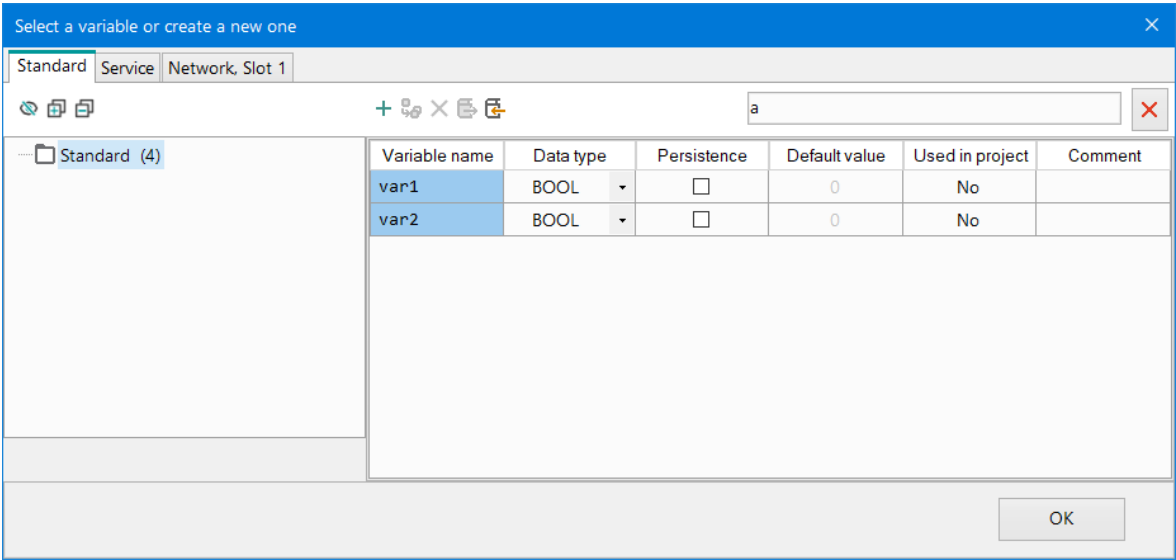


Fig. 6.3 Search for variables

If the variable entered in the search line does not exist, you can create it by clicking the  button at the top of the table. The variable is automatically assigned the name entered in the search box.

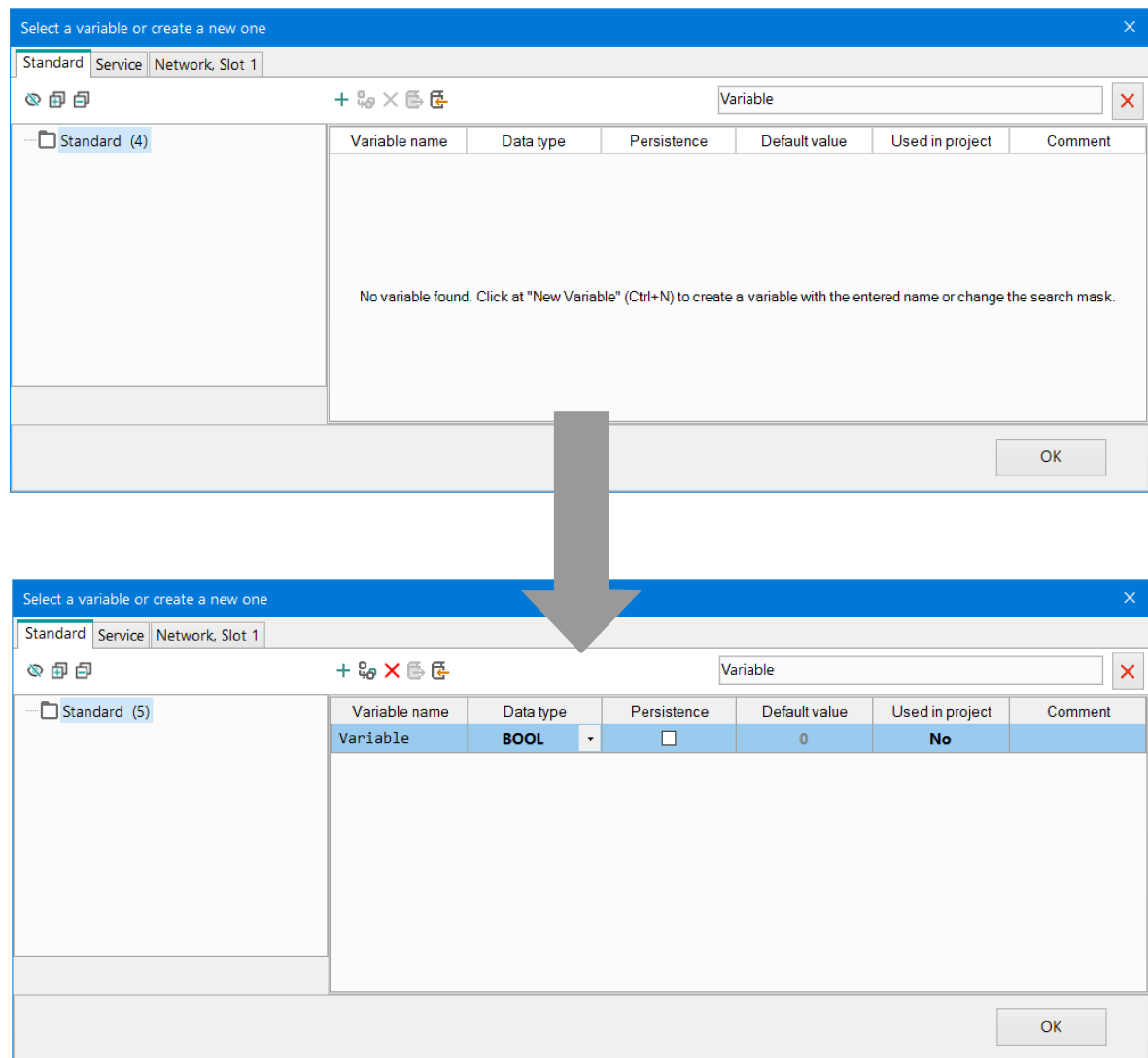
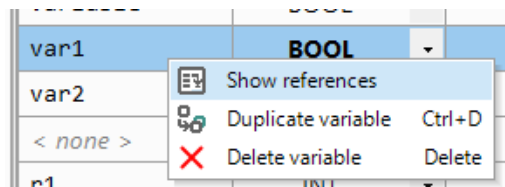


Fig. 6.4 Creating a variable

### Variable Table Context Menu

To find where a variable is used in the project, right-click on the variable's row in the table and select **Show References** from the variable's context menu.



The new window shows information about the selected variable.

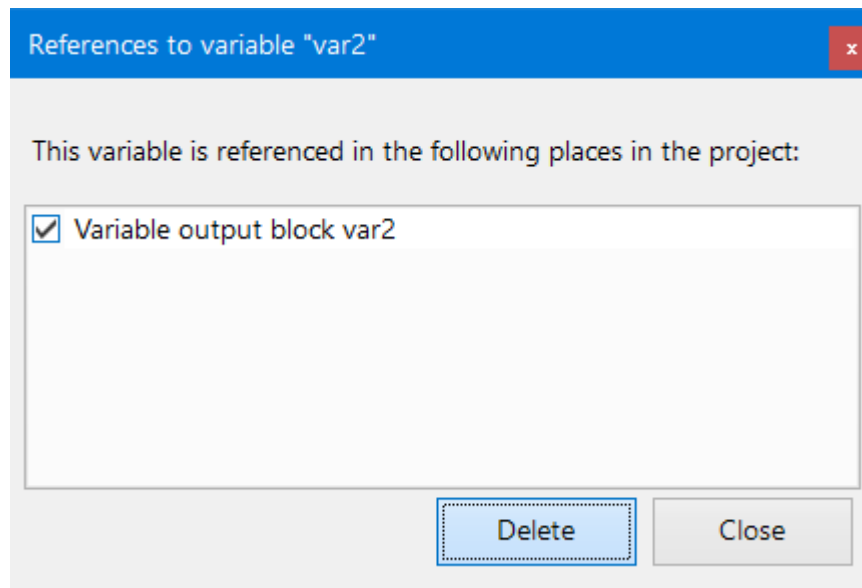


Fig. 6.5 References to a variable

For an Array type variable, references are shown both for the array itself and for its individual elements.

To remove a variable block's binding within the project, check the boxes next to the desired variables and click the **Delete** button. The variable will remain in the table but will no longer be used in the project.

### 6.1 Data types

The variables of the following types can be used in a program:

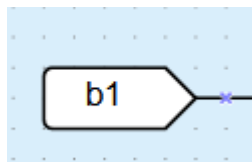
- Boolean (**BOOL**)
- Integer (**INT**)
- Real (**REAL**)
- Array

Values can only be passed from one variable to another if the variable types match.

#### BOOL

A variable of this type has only two possible values: 1 (**True**) or 0 (**False**).

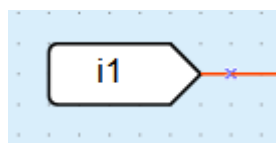
The connecting lines between the BOOL variables in the circuit program are black.



#### INT

A variable of this type is an unsigned integer in the range of 0...4,294,967,295 (4 Byte).

The connecting lines between the INT variables in the circuit program are red.

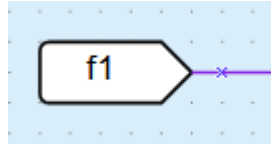


## REAL

A variable of this type has a value in the range of  $-3.402823e+38 \dots 3.402823e+38$ . It is represented by a floating-point number of single-precision (4 Byte).

Single-precision floating-point numbers provide a relative precision of 7–8 decimal digits within a range from  $10^{-38}$  to approximately  $10^{38}$ .

The connecting lines between the REAL variables in the circuit program are purple.



## Array

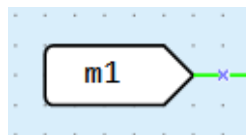
An Array type variable stores an ordered set of elements, all of the same type: BOOL, INT, or REAL. The maximum number of elements in a single array is 256.



### NOTE

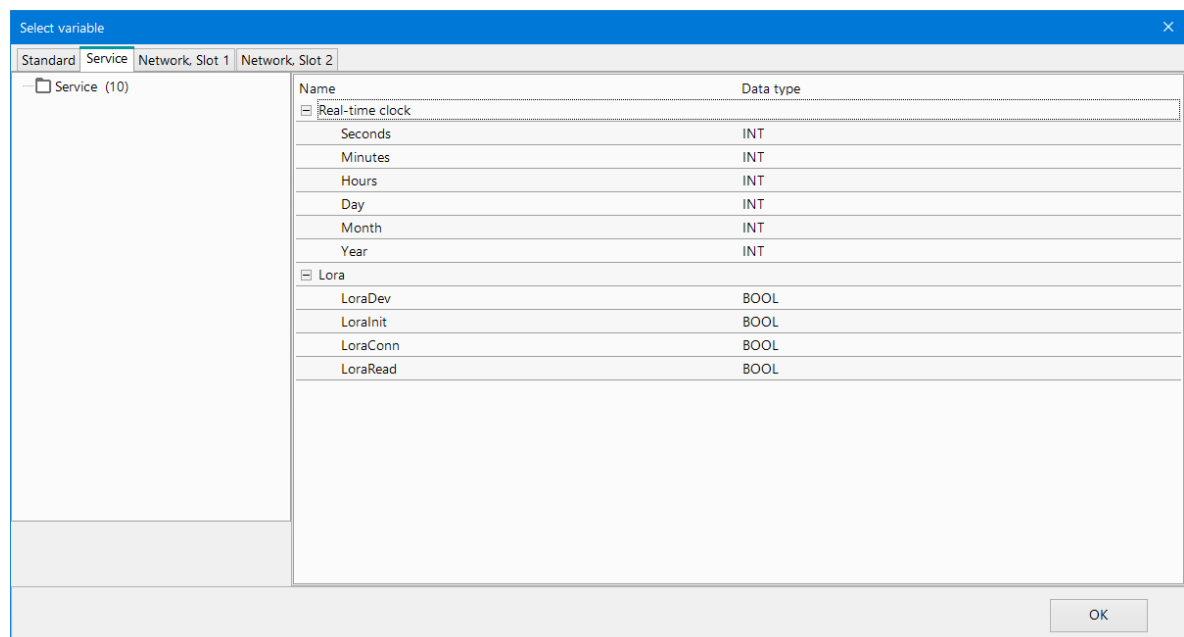
Working with arrays is available in ALP starting from version 3.0. In the current implementation, only one-dimensional arrays are supported.

The connecting lines between the Array variables in the circuit program are green.

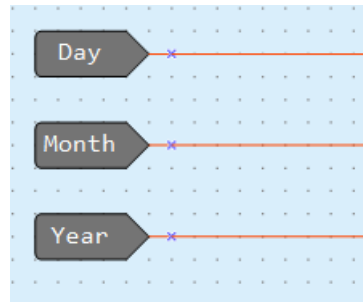


## 6.2 Service variables

Service variables are associated with the device settings and can only be read. Writing to service variables is not available. The set of service variables can differ depending on the device. If the device has a LoRa communication interface, then the service variables of the interface are also displayed in tab **Service**.



The blocks of service variables are shown in the circuit program with a gray background.



### Service variables for the second-generation devices

There are no service variables in the second-generation devices. Instead of service variables, variables are bound to device parameters (see section Binding variables to parameters).

### 6.3 Network variables

Each interface slot has a separate tab in the table.

If the interface is configured as a master, there are separate tabs for each slave device within the slot tab. The Slave tab contains the variables to be requested for this slave device.

Select a network variable or create a new one

+ Search

Slave, 16 Slave, 16

| Variable name | Data type | Read function | Write function | Register address | Bit number | Comment |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|----------------|------------------|------------|---------|
| Var2          | BOOL      | 0x01          | 0x05           | 0                | 1          |         |
| Var1          | BOOL      | 0x01          | 0x05           | 0                | 0          |         |
| Var3          | BOOL      | 0x01          | 0x05           | 0                | 2          |         |
| < none >      | BOOL      | 0x01          | 0x05           | 0                | 3          |         |

OK

Network variables and their references are deleted in the same way as standard variables.

For more details about network variables for master interface see Master mode 5.3.2.1 section.

If the interface is configured as a Slave, all network variables to be requested by the master are shown in one list.

Select a network variable or create a new one

+

Search

| Variable name | Data type | Register address | Comment |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|---------|
| Variable-2    | INT       | 514              |         |
| Variable-1    | INT       | 513              |         |
| Variable      | INT       | 512              |         |
| < none >      | INT       | 515              |         |

Standard Service Network Slot 1 Network Slot 2

OK

#### 6.4 Binding variables to parameters



##### NOTE

Variable binding to parameters is only available for **second-generation devices**. For a list of second-generation devices, see the [About](#) section.

In second-generation devices, you can bind variables to device parameters and use them in the program. Variables bound to parameters are available for reading and modification.

To bind a variable to a device parameter:

1. Open **Device Settings**.



##### NOTE

Variable binding is not available for all parameters.

2. Select the parameter for binding and click the "... " button in the **Variable** column of the settings window.

Device configuration

Device

- Analogue inputs
- Analogue outputs
- Fast digital inputs
- Digital inputs
- Discrete PWM-outputs
- Programmable LEDs (F)
- Digital outputs
- Cloud
  - Access from Cloud
- Program
- Modbus Slave
- RS485-1
- RS485-2
- Battery
- Device settings
- Device status
- Data logging
- Real time clock
  - Date and time vari
- Master

| Name          | ID   | Variable |
|---------------|------|----------|
| Baudrate      | 9600 | < none > |
| Data bits     | 8    | < none > |
| Parity        | none | < none > |
| Stop bits     | 1    | < none > |
| Slave address | 17   | < none > |

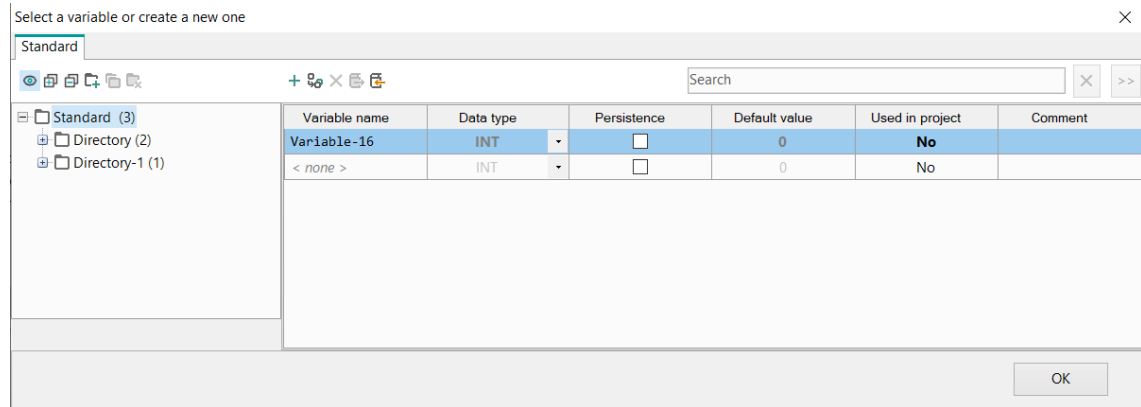
**Baudrate**

Modbus register: 760

Values:  
3 - 9600, 4 - 14400, 5 - 19200, 6 - 38400, 7 - 57600, 8 - 115200

Close

3. In the Variables window that opens, select or create a variable for binding. Variables highlighted in gray are read-only.



The name of the bound variable will be displayed in the "Variable" column next to the parameter.

After binding to parameters, variables can be used in the program. This allows parameter values to be read and modified within the program.



#### NOTE

If a variable bound to a parameter is used for writing via a block, and the parameter value has not changed, the value written through the block will be stored in the variable for one cycle. In the next cycle, the variable value will be read from the parameter.

### 6.5 Copy-paste variable block

Variables can be copied from project to project for reuse and to reduce development time. To copy a variable, select the variable block in the source project and click the  button on the toolbar or select the **Copy** command from the block's context menu. The variable is pasted into another project by clicking the  button on the toolbar or by selecting the **Paste** command from the canvas context menu.

#### Variables

When a copied variable block is pasted into a project, all its properties are checked. If a variable with exactly matching properties already exists in the project, it is linked to the block. Variables with differing properties are automatically created in the project.

Copying an array element from one project to another follows these rules:

- If the project where the element is being pasted does not contain an array with properties (type, size) identical to those of the array to which the copied element belongs, a new array is created along with the element, fully replicating the properties of the original array.
- If the target project already contains an array with identical properties, a new array is not created.

The rules for copying Array type variables are the same as those for copying standard variables.

If variable names match but other properties differ, a new variable is created. However, the name conflict is indicated in the variable table, and one of the variables must be renamed.



#### NOTE

It is not possible to paste REAL type variables into a project for a device that does not support this data type.



#### NOTE

Non-volatile variables cannot be pasted into a project for a device that does not support them.

#### Service variables

Service variables cannot be copied into a project for a device that does not support real-time clocks.

#### Network variables

Only network variables in Slave mode for an identical slot number can be copied to another project. Network variables in Master mode must be created manually. When pasting a copied network

variable block into a project, all variable properties are checked. If the project contains a variable with completely matching properties, it is duplicated into the block. Variables with differing properties are automatically created in the project. If variable names or registers match but other properties differ, a new variable is created, but a register or name conflict occurs. The conflict can be resolved in the variable table by assigning a different name or registers.

## 7 Library

If a project is open, the panel **Library Box** contains the following libraries:

- Functions
- Function blocks
- Project macros

Select an icon in the lower part of the panel to show the respective content.

**Project macros** library comprises the macros that have been created, imported or included to the project from Online Database.

View options can be changed using the icons located in the panel toolbar.

### 7.1 Functions

The library contains the following function groups:

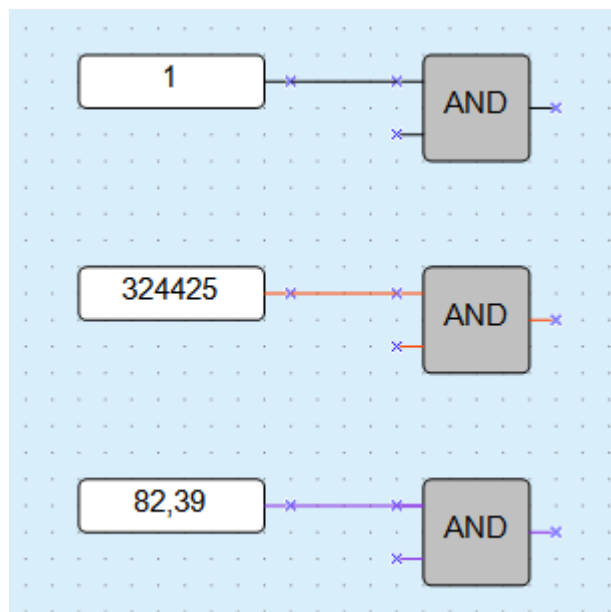
- Logical operators
- Mathematical operators
- Relational operators
- Bitshift operators
- Bit operators

#### 7.1.1 Logical operators

- Conjunction (AND)
- Disjunction (OR)
- Negation (NOT)
- Exclusive OR (XOR)

The logical operators can operate with BOOL or INT variables.

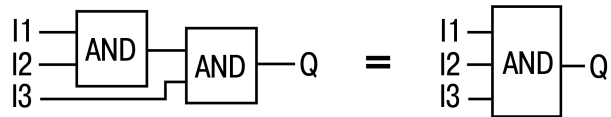
If the input values are INT, the operation is performed bitwise and the output is also an INT.



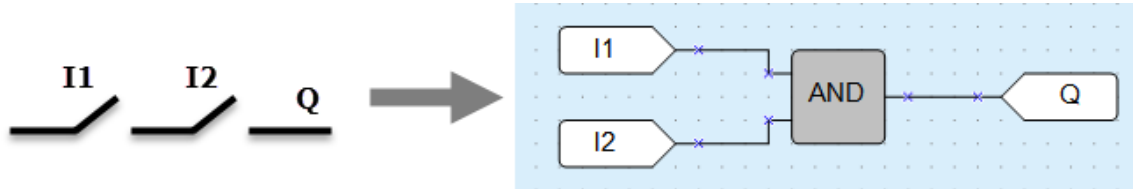
For **AND** and **OR** operators, it should be taken into account that unconnected block inputs will have the following states:

- for **AND** – TRUE
- for **OR** – FALSE

In this case, the blocks act as a signal repeater. To increase the number of inputs for logical operators, their cascade connection is used:



#### 7.1.1.1 Conjunction (AND)



The output **Q** is **True** if both inputs are **True**. The function **AND** represents a serial connection in an electrical circuit.

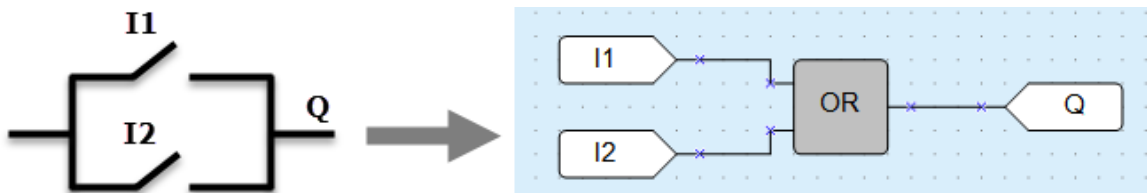
Truth table:

| I1 | I2 | Q |
|----|----|---|
| 0  | 0  | 0 |
| 0  | 1  | 0 |
| 1  | 0  | 0 |
| 1  | 1  | 1 |

Bitwise operation example with integer inputs:

|     |                     |
|-----|---------------------|
| AND | 0011<br>(decimal 3) |
|     | 0101<br>(decimal 5) |
|     | 0001<br>(decimal 1) |

#### 7.1.1.2 Disjunction (OR)



The output **Q** is **True** if at least one of the inputs is **True**. The function **OR** represents a parallel connection in an electrical circuit.

Truth table:

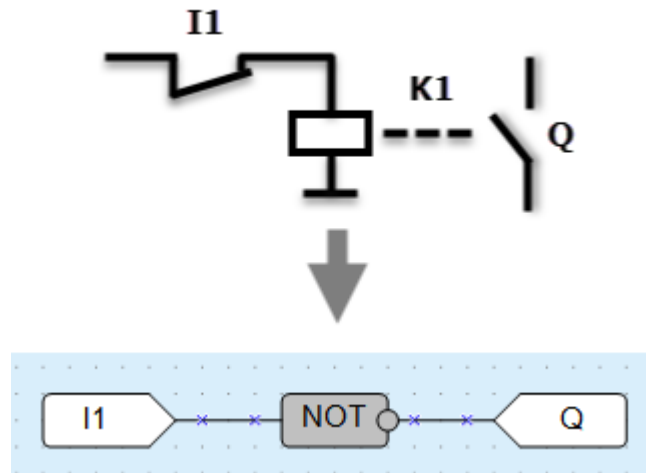
| I1 | I2 | Q |
|----|----|---|
| 0  | 0  | 0 |
| 0  | 1  | 1 |
| 1  | 0  | 1 |
| 1  | 1  | 1 |

Bitwise operation example with integer inputs:

|    |      |
|----|------|
| OR | 0011 |
|    | 0101 |
|    | 0111 |

## 7.1.1.3 Negation (NOT)

The function **NOT** inverts the signal. The output **Q** is **True** if the input is **False** and vice versa.



Truth table:

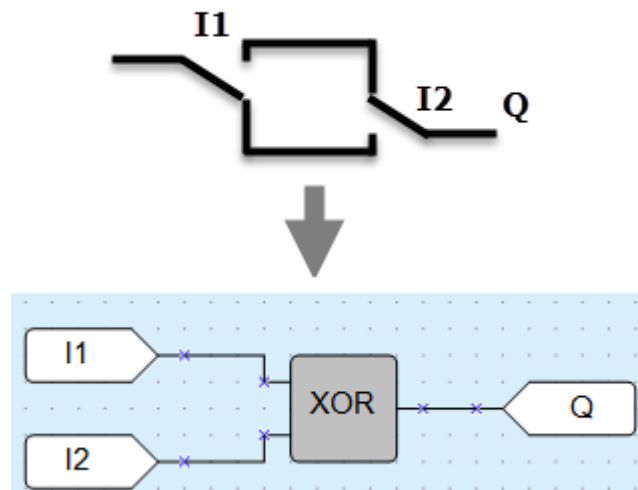
| I1 | Q |
|----|---|
| 0  | 1 |
| 1  | 0 |

Bitwise operation example with integer inputs:

|     |    |
|-----|----|
| NOT | 01 |
|     | 10 |

The bitwise NOT, or complement, is a unary operation that performs logical negation on each bit, forming the ones' complement of the given binary value.

## 7.1.1.4 Exclusive OR (XOR)



The output **Q** is **True** if only one of the inputs is **True**.

Truth table:

| I1 | I2 | Q |
|----|----|---|
| 0  | 0  | 0 |
| 0  | 1  | 1 |

| I1 | I2 | Q |
|----|----|---|
| 1  | 0  | 1 |
| 1  | 1  | 0 |

Bitwise operation example with integer inputs:

|     |      |
|-----|------|
| XOR | 0011 |
|     | 0101 |
|     | 0110 |

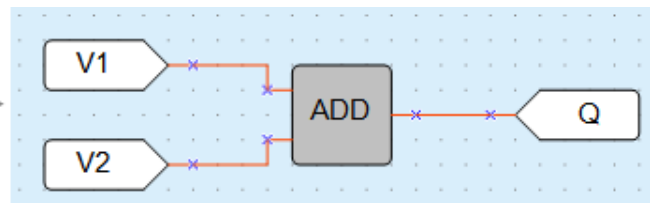
### 7.1.2 Mathematical operators

There are different operators for different data types:

| Operator         | INT        | REAL        |
|------------------|------------|-------------|
| Addition         | <u>ADD</u> | <u>fADD</u> |
| Subtraction      | <u>SUB</u> | <u>fSUB</u> |
| Multiplication   | <u>MUL</u> | <u>fMUL</u> |
| Division         | <u>DIV</u> | <u>fDIV</u> |
| Modulo operation | <u>MOD</u> | –           |
| Power function   | –          | <u>fPOW</u> |
| Absolute value   | –          | <u>fABS</u> |

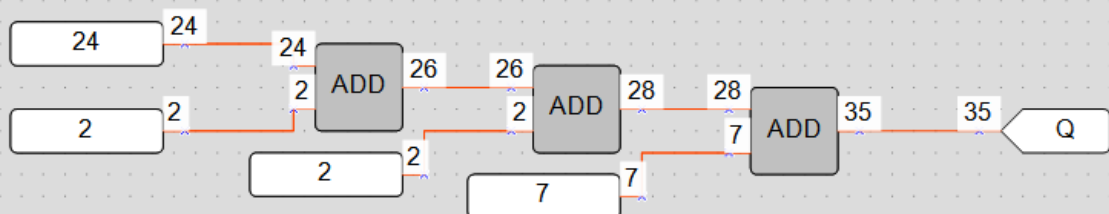
#### 7.1.2.1 Addition (ADD, fADD)

$$V1 + V2 = Q$$



The function ADD operates with INT variables, while the function fADD operates with REAL variables. The output value Q is the sum of the input values.

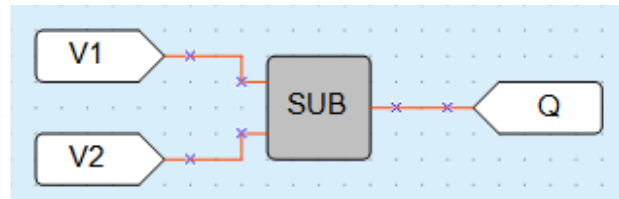
**Example:**



The output value may not exceed 4294967295 (32 bits). Otherwise the extra bits will be truncated.

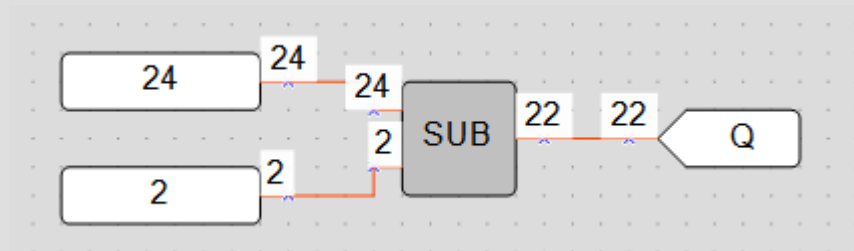
## 7.1.2.2 Subtraction (SUB, fSUB)

$$V1 - V2 = Q$$



The function **SUB** operates with INT variables, while the function **fSUB** operates with REAL variables.

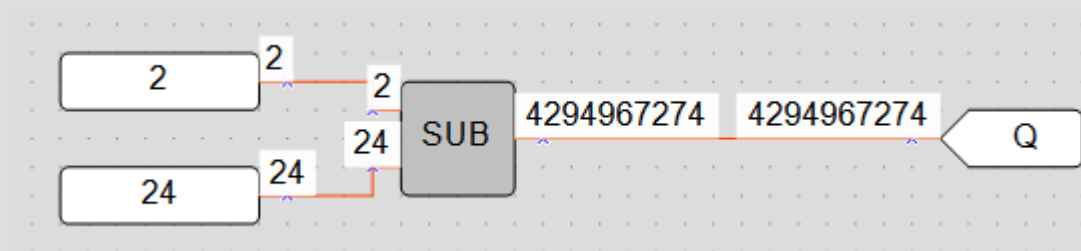
The output value **Q** is the result of subtraction of the value **I2** from the value **I1**.

**Example:**

If the value **I1** is less than the value **I2**, the output is calculated as follows:

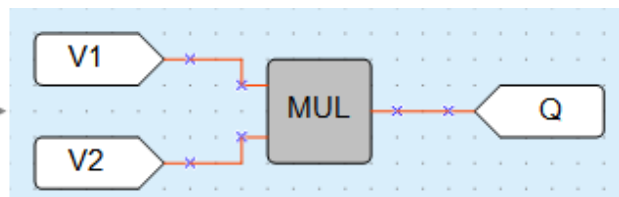
$$Q = I1 + 0x100000000 - I2$$

$$0x100000000 = 4294967296$$



## 7.1.2.3 Multiplication (MUL, fMUL)

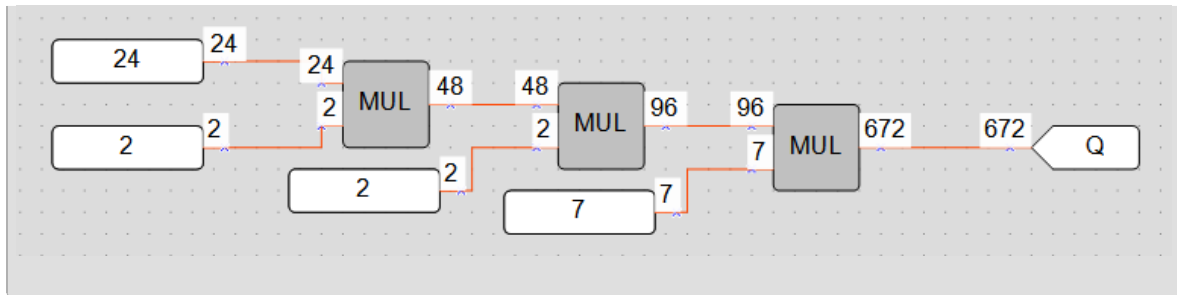
$$V1 \times V2 = Q$$



The function **MUL** operates with INT variables, while the function **fMUL** operates with REAL variables.

The output value **Q** is the product of the input values.

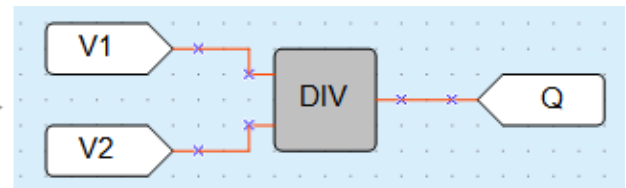
**Example:**



The output value may not exceed 4294967295 (32 bits). If it does happen, the extra bits will be truncated.

#### 7.1.2.4 Division (DIV, fDIV)

$$V1 \div V2 = Q$$

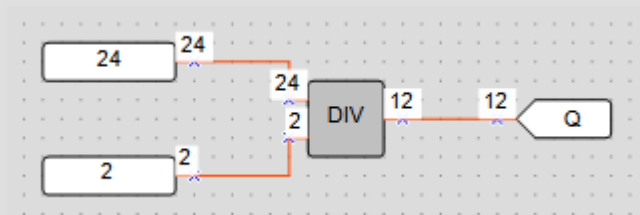


The function **DIV** operates with INT variables, the function **fDIV** operates with REAL variables. The output value **Q** is the quotient of the input values, where the value **I1** is the dividend and the value **I2** is the divisor.

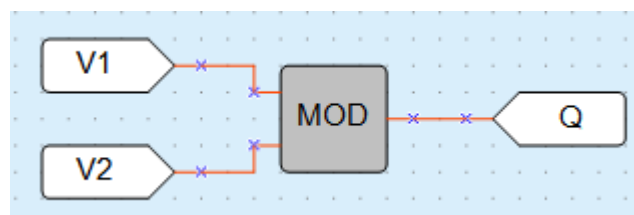
If the quotient is not an INT, it is rounded down to an INT.

In case of division by 0 the output value is 0xFFFFFFFF.

##### Example:

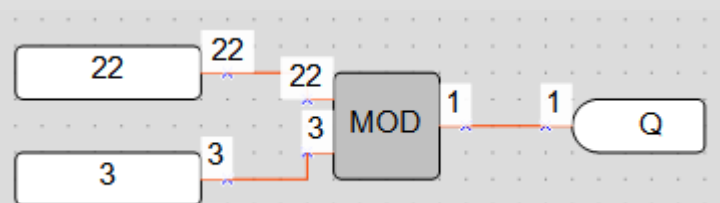


#### 7.1.2.5 Modulo operator (MOD)



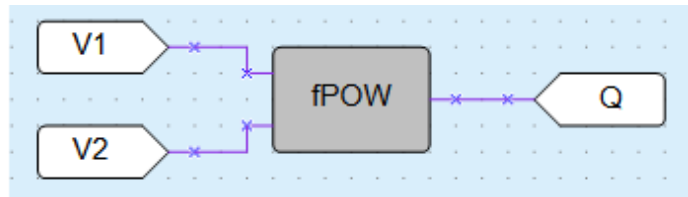
The function **MOD** operates with INT variables. The output **Q** is a remainder of the division of input values.

##### Example:



## 7.1.2.6 REAL-Power function (fPOW)

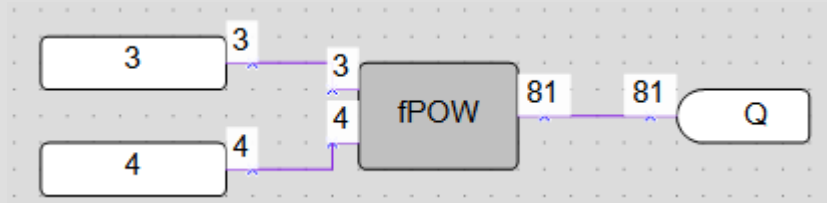
$$V1^{(V2)} = Q \rightarrow$$



The function **fPOW** operates with REAL variables.

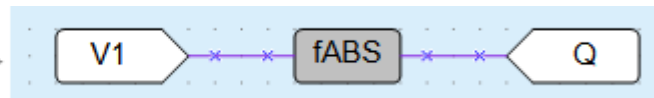
The output value **Q** is the value **I1** raised to the power of the value **I2**.

**Example:**



## 7.1.2.7 REAL-Absolute function (fABS)

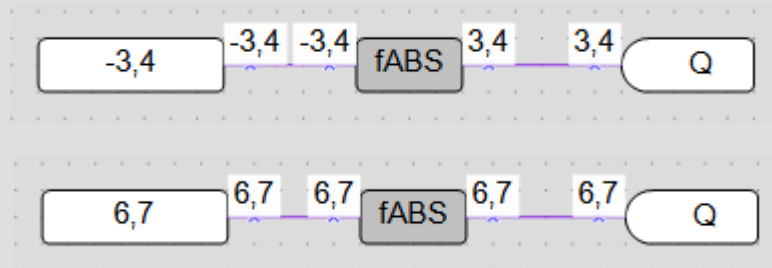
$$|V| = Q \rightarrow$$



The function **fABS** operates with REAL variables.

The output value **Q** is an absolute value of the input value.

**Example:**

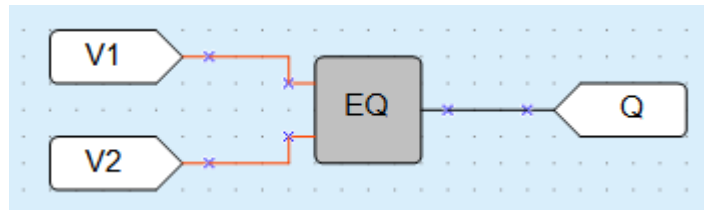


## 7.1.3 Relational operators

The relational operators are functions that test or define some kind of relation between two or more values.

- Equal (EQ)
- Greater than (GT, fGT)
- Binary selection (SEL)

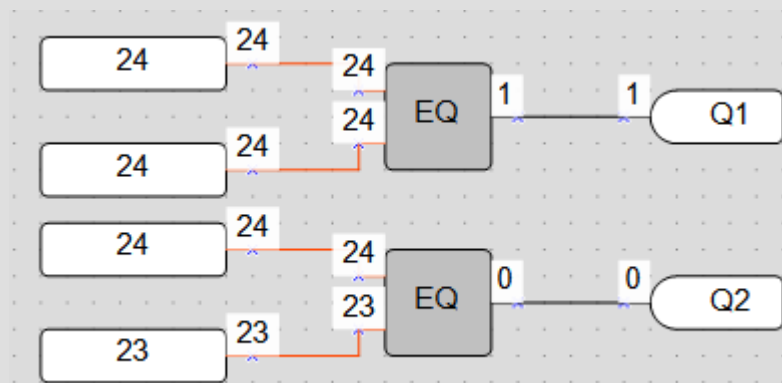
## 7.1.3.1 Equal (EQ)



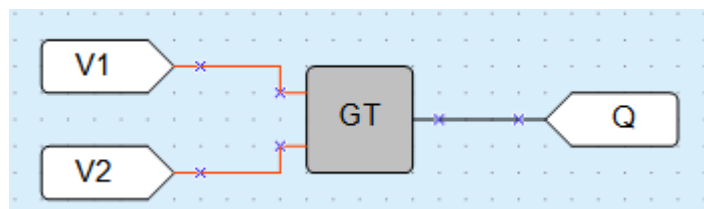
The function **EQ** operates with INT variables.  
The output value **Q** is **True** if values **I1** and **I2** are equal.

- $V1 = V2 \rightarrow Q = 1$ ;
- $V1 > V2 \rightarrow Q = 0$ ;
- $V1 < V2 \rightarrow Q = 0$ .

**Example:**



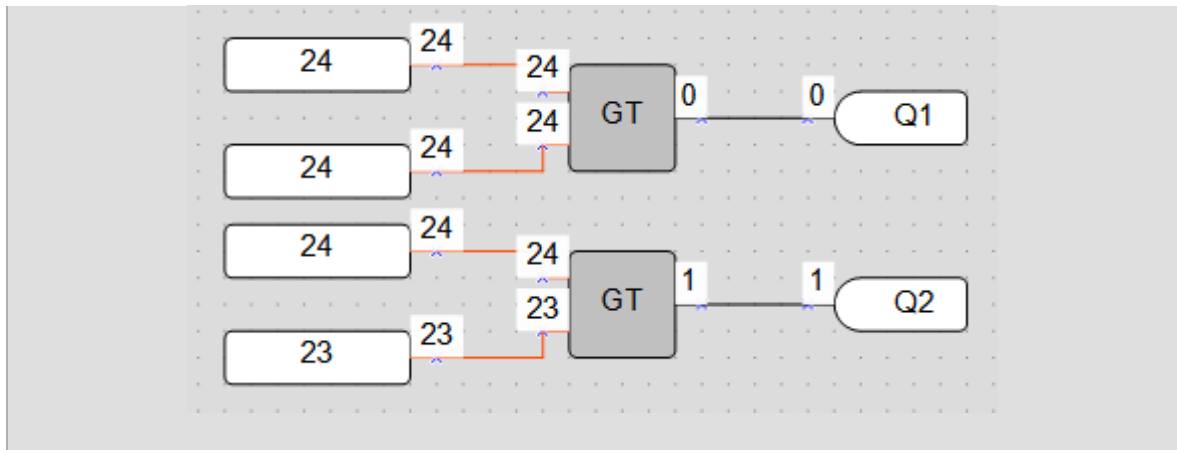
## 7.1.3.2 Greater than (GT, fGT)



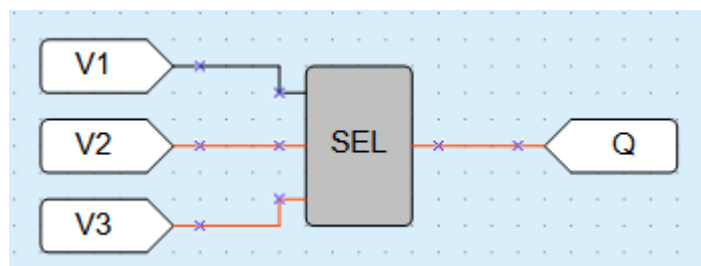
The function **GT** operates with INT variables, while the function **fGT** operates with REAL variables.  
The output value **Q** is **True** if the value **I1** is greater than the value **I2**.

- $V1 = V2 \rightarrow Q = 0$ ;
- $V1 > V2 \rightarrow Q = 1$ ;
- $V1 < V2 \rightarrow Q = 0$ .

**Example:**



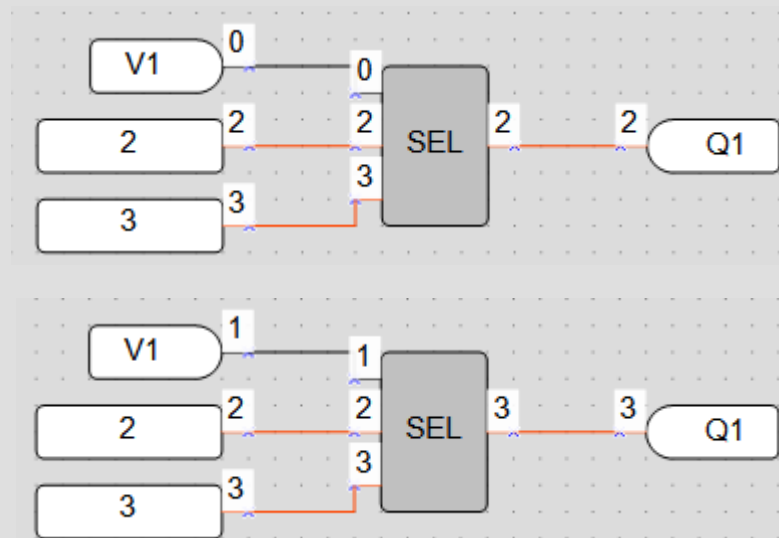
#### 7.1.3.3 Binary selection (SEL, fSEL)



The function **SEL** operates with INT variables, the function **fSEL** operates with REAL variables. If the value **I1** is **False**, the output value **Q** is set to the value **I2**, else to the value **I3**.

- V1 = 0 → Q = V2;
- V1 = 1 → Q = V3.

**Example:**



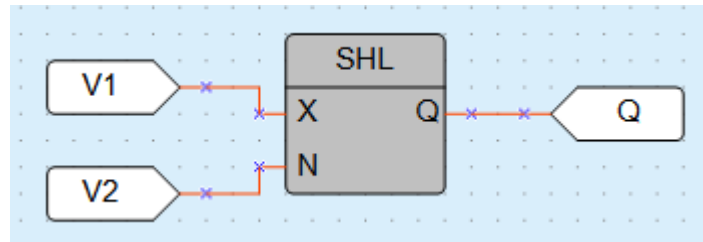
#### 7.1.4 Bitshift operators

The bitshift operators treat a variable as a series of bits that can be moved (shifted) to the left or right.

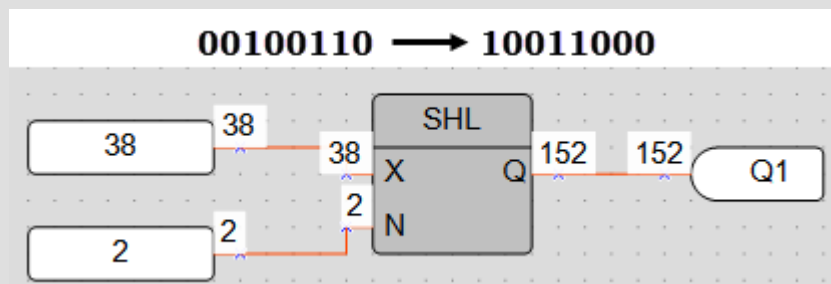
- Shift register left (SHL)
- Shift register right (SHR)

## 7.1.4.1 Shift register left (SHL)

The function **SHL** operates with INT variables. It is used to shift all bits of the operand **X** to the left by the **N** number of bits; vacated bits are zero-filled. The result is set to the output **Q**.

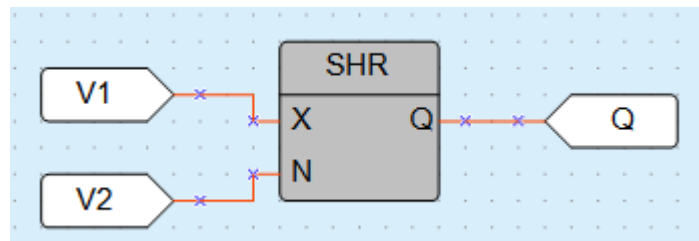
**Example:**

Left shift of the number 38 (decimal) = 00100110 (binary) by 2 bits

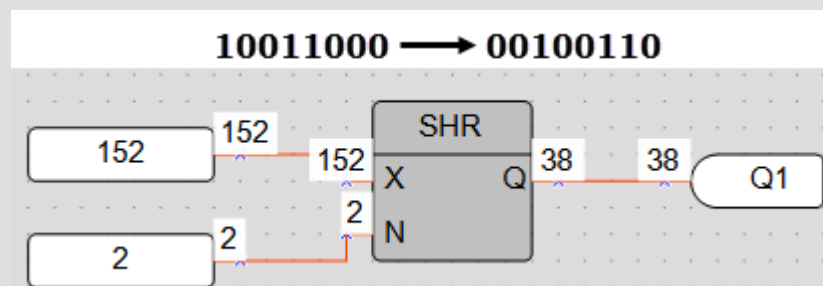


## 7.1.4.2 Shift register right (SHR)

The function **SHR** operates with INT variables. It is used to shift all bits of the operand **X** to the right by the **N** number of bits; vacated bits are zero-filled. The result is set to the output **Q**.

**Example:**

Right shift of the number 152 (decimal) = 10011000 (binary) by 2 bits

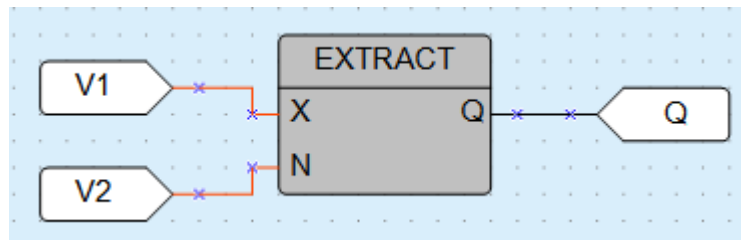


### 7.1.5 Bit operators

The bit operator treats a value as a series of bits to perform operations on one or more individual bits of an operand.

- Read single bit (EXTRACT)
- Set single bit (PUTBIT)
- Decoder (DC32)
- Encoder (CD32)

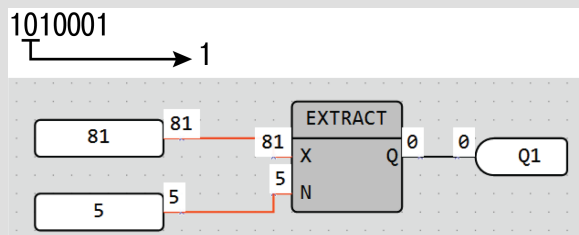
#### 7.1.5.1 Read single bit(EXTRACT)



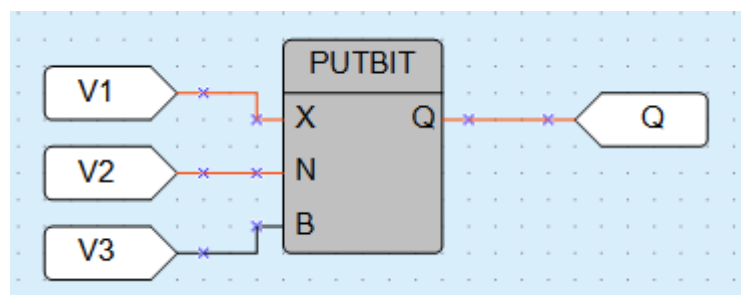
The output value **Q** (BOOL) of the function **EXTRACT** is the value of bit **N** (INT) in the operand **X** (INT). The bit numbering is zero-based.

**Example:**

Reading of the 5th bit from the number 81 (decimal) = 1010001 (binary):



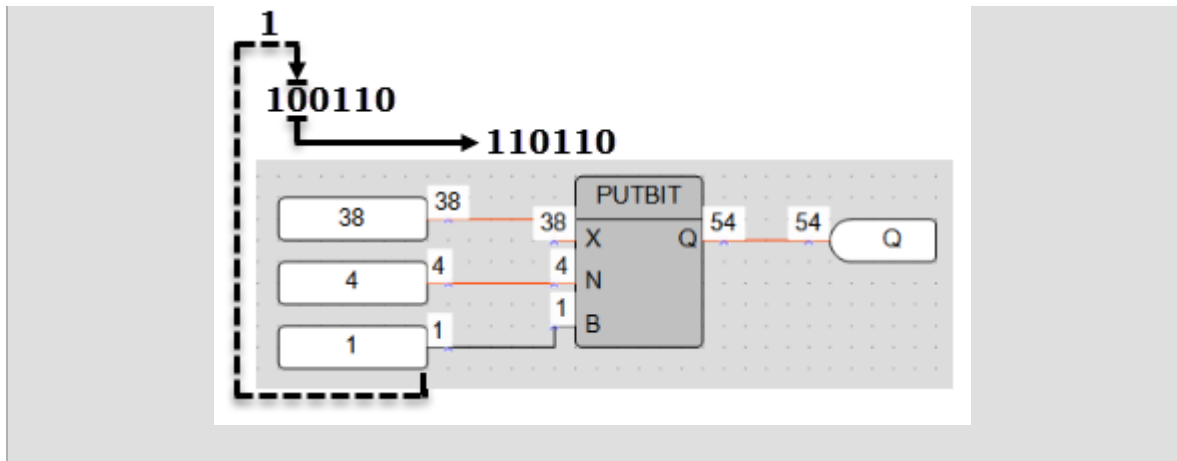
#### 7.1.5.2 Set single bit (PUTBIT)



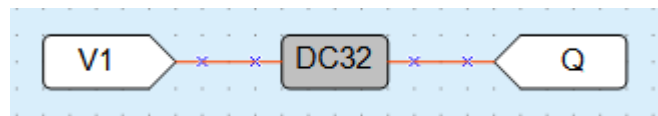
This output value **Q** (INT) is the value of the operand **X** (INT) where the bit **N** (INT) is set to the value at the input **B** (BOOL). The bit numbering is zero-based.

**Example:**

Setting of the 4th bit to 1 in the number 38 (decimal) = 100110 (binary):



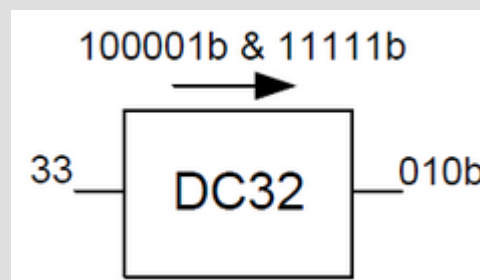
### 7.1.5.3 Decoder (DC32)



The decoder converts a binary code at the input to a position code at the output. Decoding is carried out bitwise by the logical operation **AND** with the operand 0x1F (11111b). Truth table:

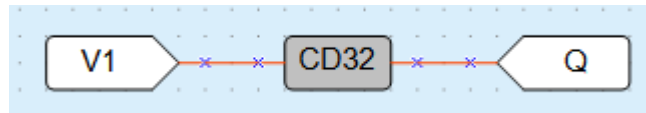
| Binary code |   |   |   |   | Position code |    |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|-------------|---|---|---|---|---------------|----|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 5           | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 32            | 31 | ... | 6   | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| ...         |   |   |   |   | ...           |    |     | ... |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| 1           | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 1           | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0             | 1  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 1           | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |

**Example:**



### 7.1.5.4 Encoder

Encoder (CD32) is used to perform the operation of converting the positional code from the input into binary code at the output.



If there is more than one “1” bits in the position code, the encoder operates only with the most significant “1” bit.

Truth table:

| Binary code |   |   |   |   | Position code |    |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
|-------------|---|---|---|---|---------------|----|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| 5           | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 32            | 31 | ... | 6   | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 0           | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| ...         |   |   |   |   | ...           |    |     | ... |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |
| 1           | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 1           | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0             | 0  |     | 1   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |
| 1           | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1             | 0  |     | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |  |

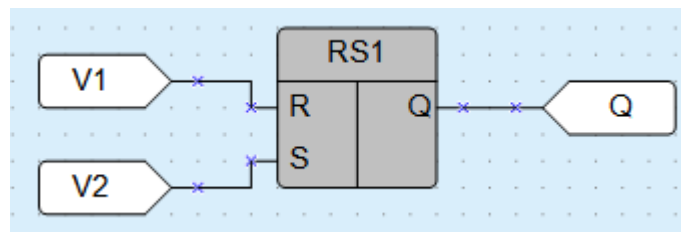
## 7.2 Function blocks

- Triggers
- Timers
- Generators
- Counters
- Controllers

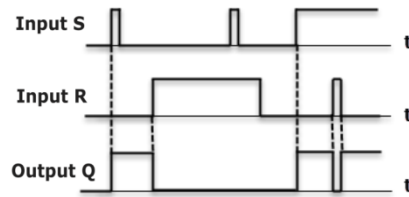
### 7.2.1 Triggers

- RS trigger reset dominant (RS)
- SR trigger set dominant (SR)
- Rising edge (RTRIG)
- Falling edge (FTRIG)
- D-trigger (DTRIG)

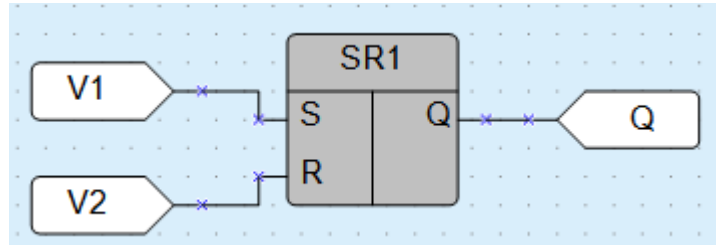
#### 7.2.1.1 RS trigger reset dominant



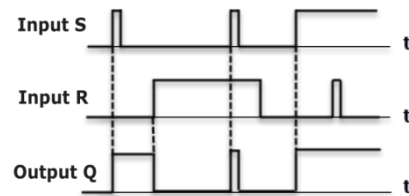
The output **Q** is **True** with a rising edge at the input **S** (Set) and **False** with a rising edge at the input **R** (Reset). The input **R** has higher priority.



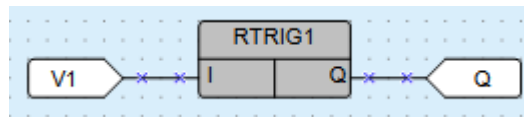
#### 7.2.1.2 SR trigger set dominant



The output **Q** is **True** with a rising edge at the input **S** (Set) and **False** with a rising edge at the input **R** (Reset). The input **S** has higher priority.

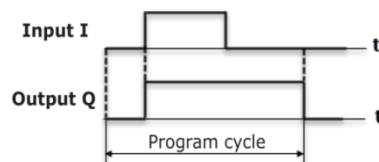


#### 7.2.1.3 Rising edge (RTRIG)

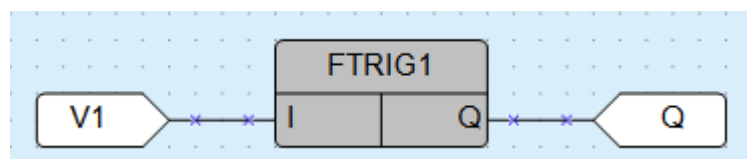


Detector for a rising edge appears.

The output **Q** remains **False** until a rising edge at the input **I**. As soon as the input **I** becomes **True**, the output becomes **True** and remains **True** for one program cycle.

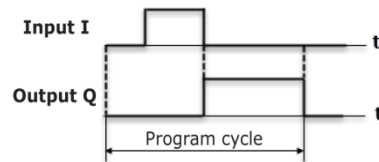


#### 7.2.1.4 Falling edge (FTRIG)

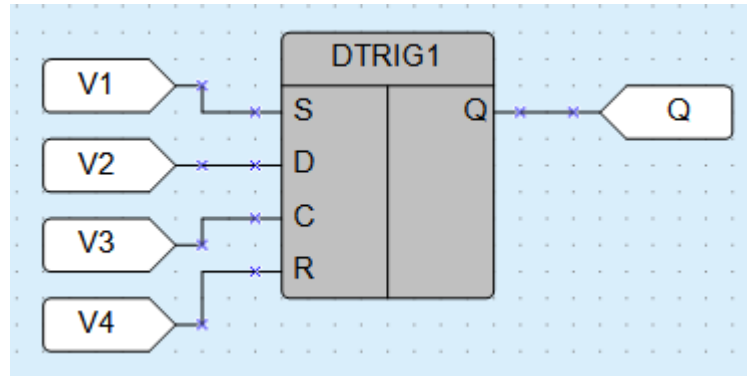


Detector for a falling edge.

The output **Q** remains **False** until a falling edge at the input **I**. As soon as the input **I** becomes **False**, the output becomes **True** and remains **True** for one program cycle.

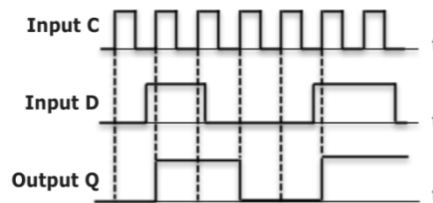


### 7.2.1.5 D-trigger (DTRIG)



D-trigger generates a pulse at the output **Q** with the pulse duration specified at the input **D** and synchronized with the clock pulse at the input **C**.

If the input **D** is **True**, the output **Q** becomes **True** with a rising edge of the clock pulse at the input **C**. If the input **D** is **False**, the output **Q** becomes **False** with a rising edge of the clock pulse at the input **C**.



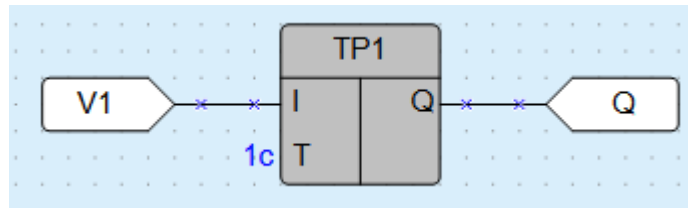
The output **Q** can be forced to set to **True** with a rising edge at the input **S** (Set) and forced to reset to **False** with a rising edge at the input **R** (Reset), regardless of the states of the inputs **C** and **D**. The input **R** has higher priority.

## 7.2.2 Timers

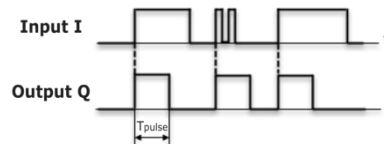
- Pulse (TP)
- ON-delay timer (TON)
- OFF-delay timer (TOF)
- Timer (CLOCK)
- Weekly timer (CLOCKWEEK)

### 7.2.2.1 Pulse (TP)

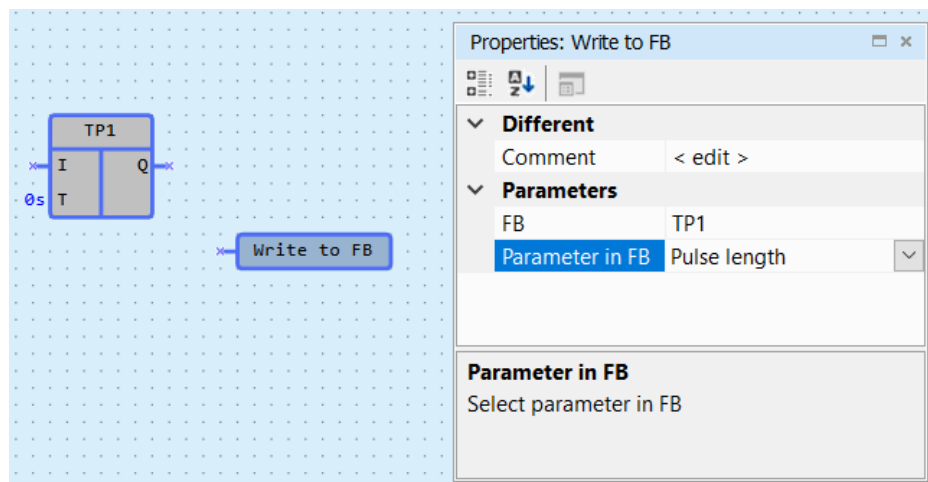
The Pulse Timer (TP) is used to generate an output pulse of a specified duration. The output **Q** becomes **True** with a rising edge at the input **I** for the time specified at the input **T**. During this time, the output **Q** remains **True** regardless of the signal change at the input **I**. The output **Q** is reset to **False** with the end of pulse.



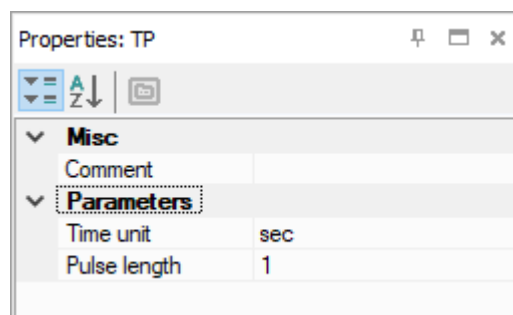
The operation of the pulse timer is illustrated by the diagram shown in the figure below.



Time range: 0...4,147,200,000 ms or 48 days.

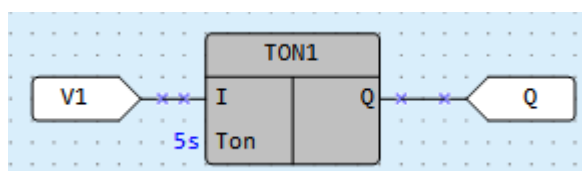


The values of the function block's parameters can be set using a Write to FB block, as shown in the figure above, or configured in Property Box:

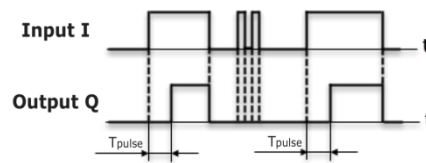


#### 7.2.2.2 ON-delay timer (TON)

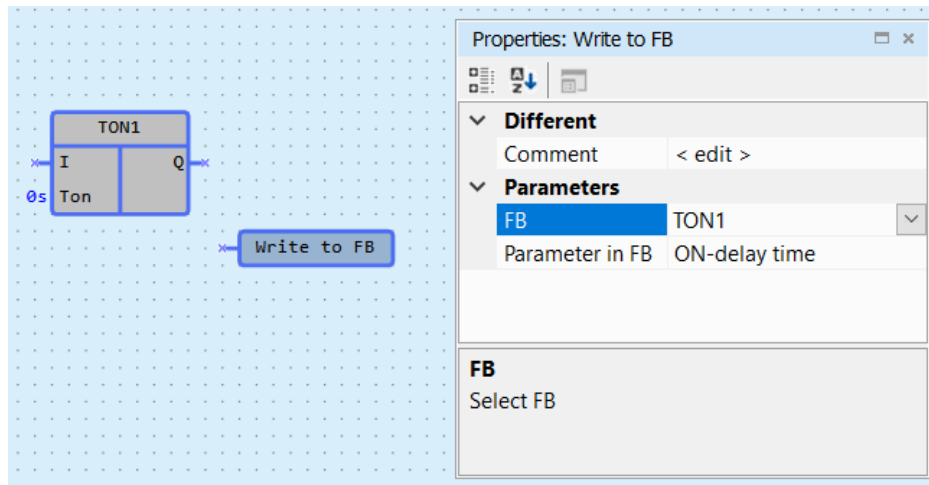
The On-Delay Timer (TON) is used to delay the transmission of a signal. The output **Q = False** if the input **I = False**. The delay time specified at the input **TON** starts with a rising edge at the input **I**. When the time **TON** is elapsed, the output **Q** becomes **True** and remains **False** until a falling edge appears at the input **I**. Input changes shorter than **TON** are ignored.



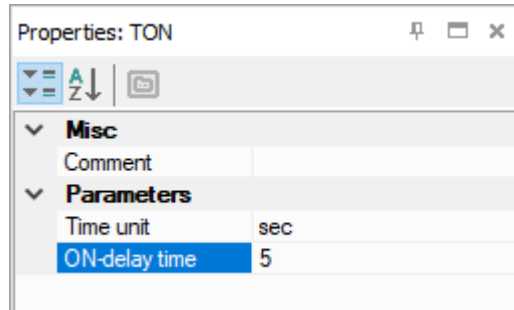
The operation of the timer is explained by the diagram shown in the figure below.



Time range: 0...4,147,200,000 ms or 48 days.

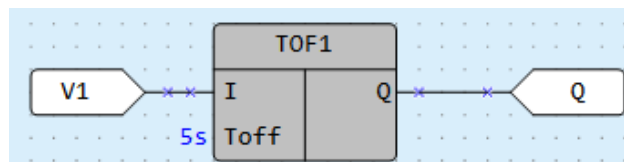


The values of the function block's parameters can be set using a Write to FB block, as shown in the figure above, or configured in Property Box:

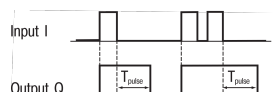


### 7.2.2.3 OFF-delay timer (TOF)

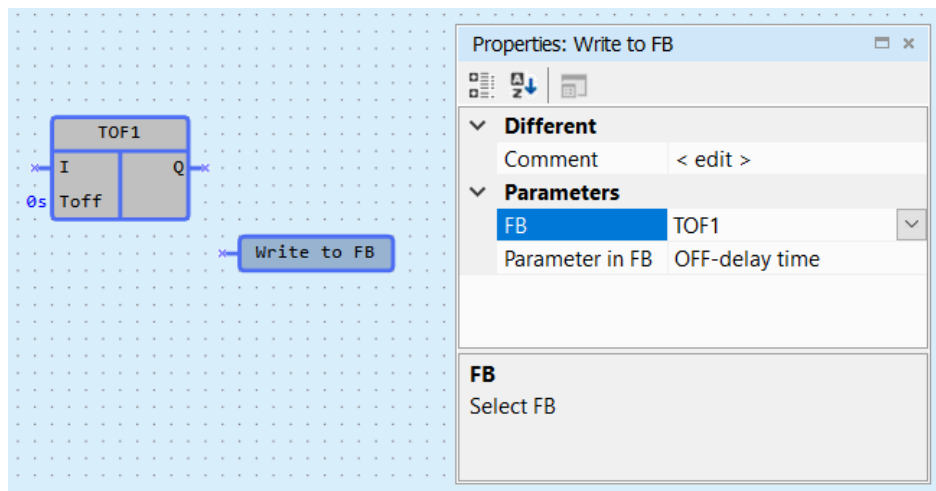
The Off-Delay Timer (TOF) is used to delay turning off the output. The output **Q = False** if the input **I = False**. The delay time specified at the input **TOFF** starts with a falling edge at the input **I**. When the time **TOFF** is elapsed, the output **Q** becomes **False** and remains **False** until a rising edge appears at the input **I**. Input changes shorter than **TOFF** are ignored.



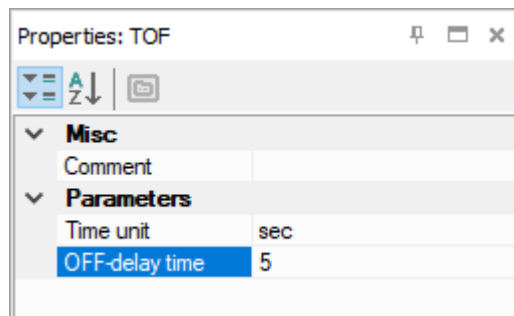
The operation of the timer is explained by the diagram shown in the figure below.



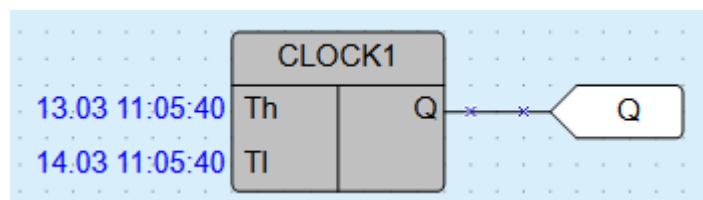
Time range: 0...4,147,200,000 ms or 48 days.



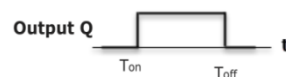
The values of the function block's parameters can be set using a Write to FB block, as shown in the figure above, or configured in Property Box:



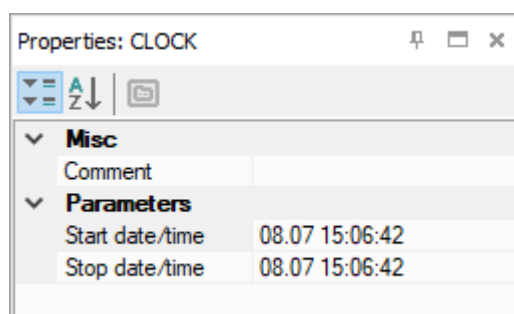
#### 7.2.2.4 Timer (CLOCK)



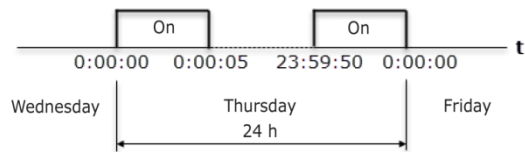
The block **CLOCK** is an interval timer controlled by a real-time clock.



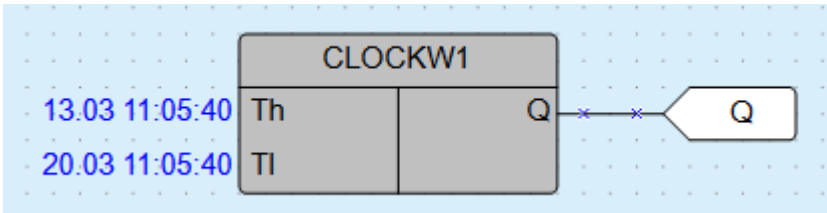
The times **TH** and **TL** can be set in Property Box.



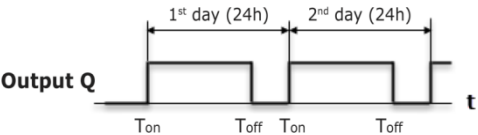
Time range: from 0.00 seconds to 24 hours.  
If **TH** < **TL**, the state of the output **Q** is as follows:



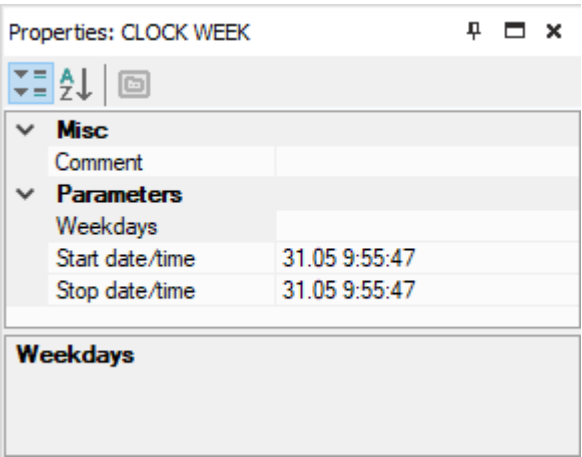
7.2.2.5 Weekly timer (CLOCKWEEK)



The block **CLOCKWEEK** is an interval timer with the parameter **Weekdays** controlled by a real-time clock.



The times **TH** and **TL** can be set in Property Box.

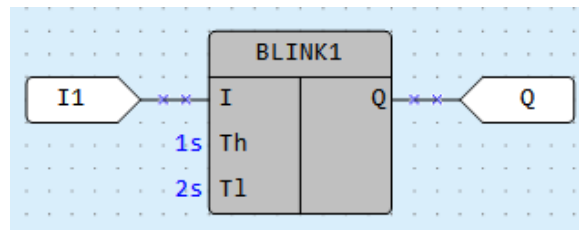


Time range: from 0.00 seconds to 24 hours.

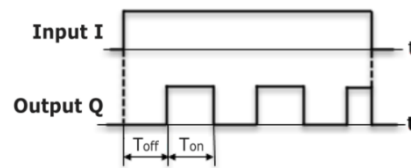
7.2.3 Generators

- Pulse generator (BLINK)

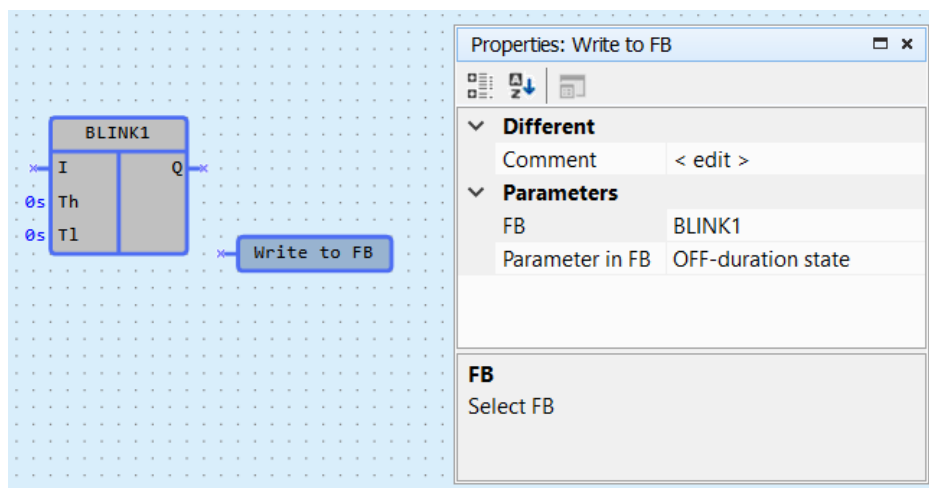
## 7.2.3.1 Pulse generator (BLINK)



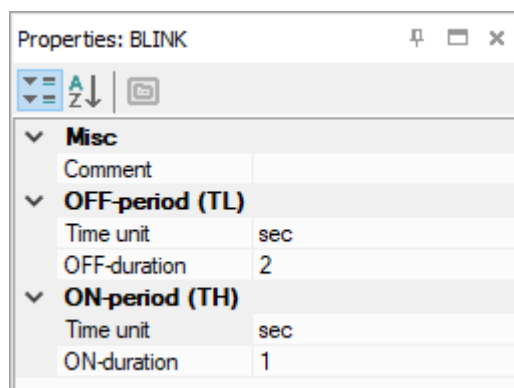
If the input **I** becomes **True**, the block **BLINK** generates a square wave on the output **Q** with a period of **TH + TL**, starting with an interval of the duration of **TL**, followed by a pulse of the duration of **TH**. It continues that way until the input **I** is **False**.



Time range: 0...4,233,600,000 milliseconds or 49 days.



The values of the function block's parameters can be set using a Write to FB block, as shown in the figure above, or configured in Property Box:

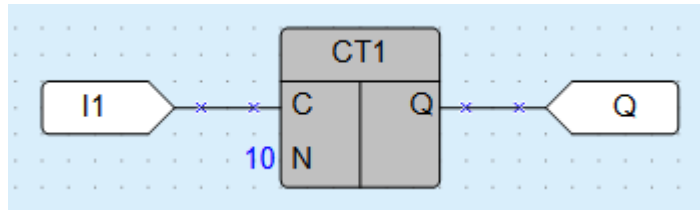


## 7.2.4 Counters

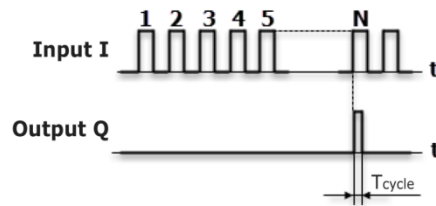
- Threshold counter with self-reset (CT)
- Universal counter (CTN)

- Threshold counter (CTU)

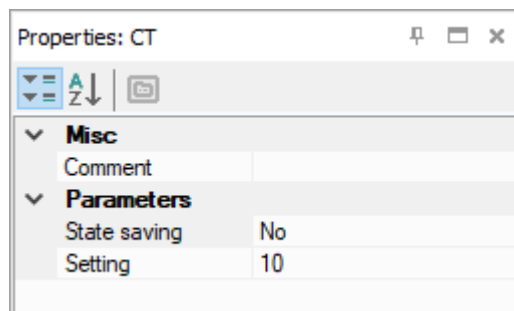
#### 7.2.4.1 Threshold counter with self-reset (CT)



The output **Q** is of type BOOL. If the number of pulses counted on the input **C** exceeds the threshold (**Setting**) specified at the input **N**, the output **Q** becomes **True** and remains for one program cycle. The operation of the counter is explained in the diagram below.

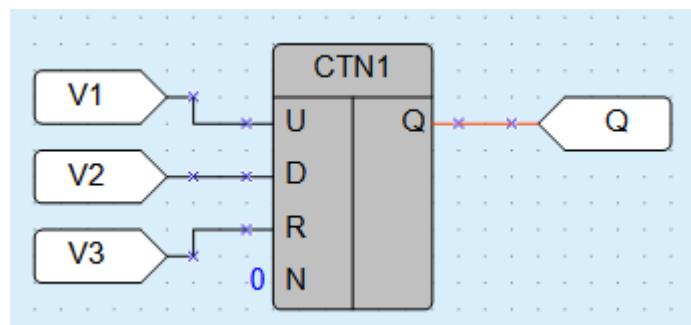


The parameters **Setting** and **State saving** can be set in Property Box.

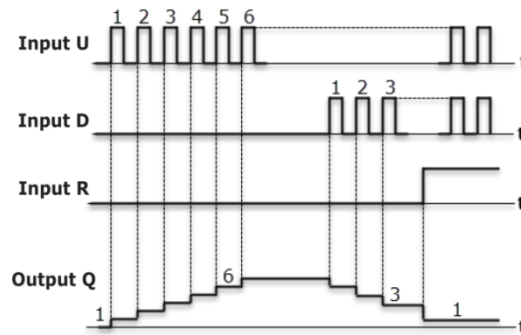


Threshold range: 0...65535.

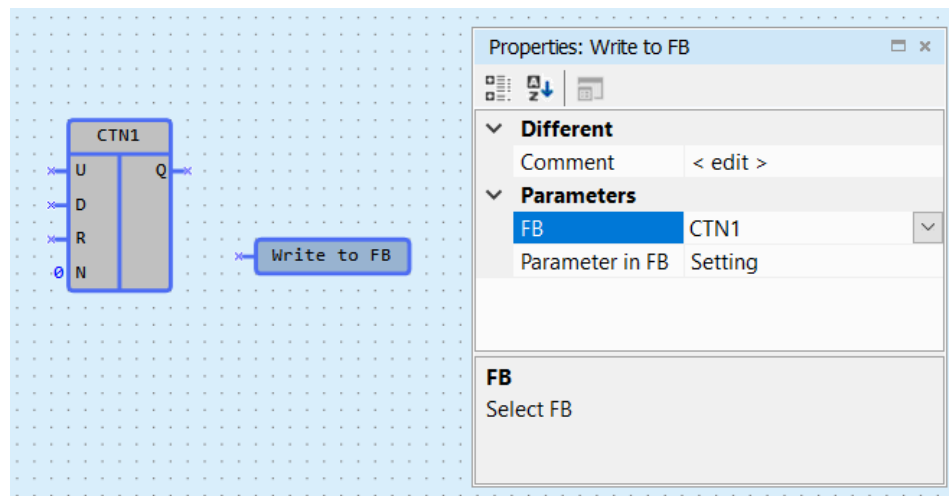
#### 7.2.4.2 Universal counter (CTN)



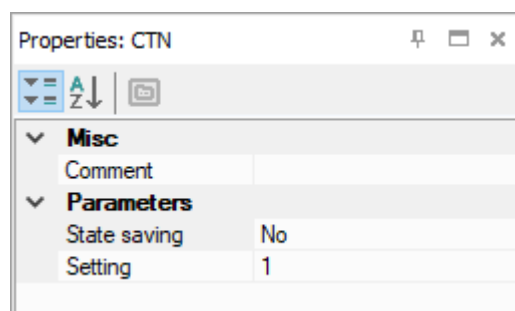
The output **Q** is of type INT. A rising edge at the input **U** increases the value at the output **Q** by 1. A rising edge at the input **D** decreases the value at the output **Q** by 1.  
If the input **R = True**, the output **Q** gains the value **Setting** from the input **N**.



The input **U** has higher priority than the input **D**.  
Setting range: 0...65,535.

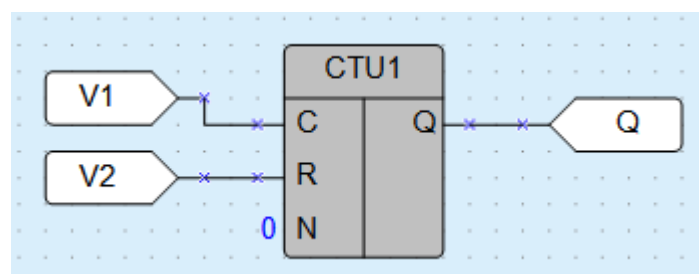


The values of the function block's parameters can be set using a Write to FB block, as shown in the figure above, or configured in Property Box:

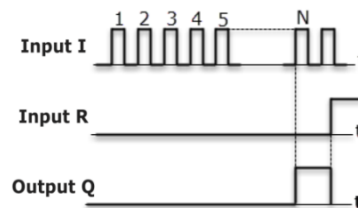


If **State saving** = **Yes**, the state of the counter is permanently stored in the non-volatile memory.

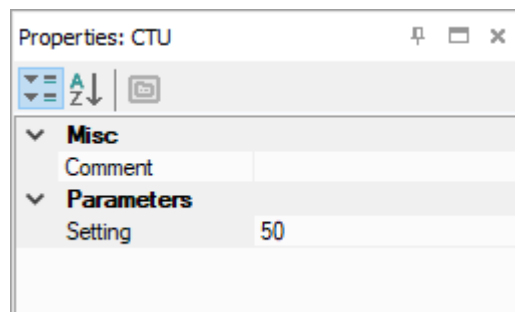
#### 7.2.4.3 Threshold counter (CTU)



The output **Q** is of type Boolean. If the number of pulses counted on the input **C** exceeds the threshold (**Setting**) specified at the input **N**, the output **Q** becomes **True** and remains **True** until a rising edge at the input **R**. The input **R** has higher priority than the input **C**. The operation of the counter is explained in the diagram below.



The parameter **Setting** can be set in Property Box.

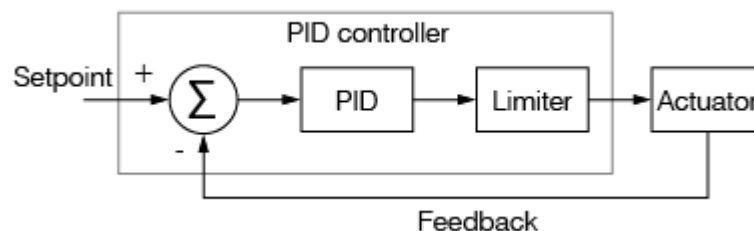
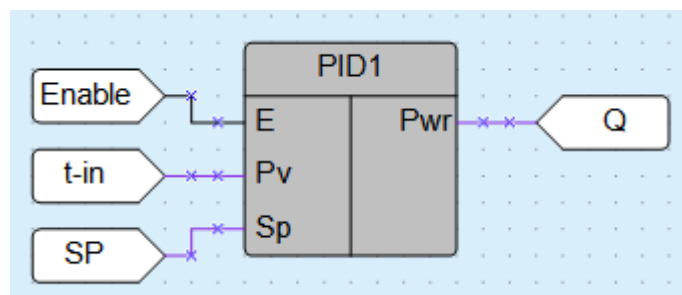


Threshold range: 0...65535.

### 7.2.5 Analog

- PID-controller (PID) for first generation devices
- PID-controller (PID\_REG) for second generation devices

#### 7.2.5.1 PID-controller (PID) for first generation devices



The function block **PID** is used to implement of the proportional-integral-derivative control.

Table 7.1 PID block inputs/outputs

| Name       | Type | I/O | Description                                                                                                                         | Values            |
|------------|------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>E</b>   | BOOL | I   | Enable control (0 = Off, 1 = On). If disabled, the parameter <b>Pwr</b> takes the value of the parameter <b>Output safe state</b> . | 0 – Off<br>1 – On |
| <b>Pv</b>  | REAL | I   | Process value                                                                                                                       |                   |
| <b>Sp</b>  | REAL | I   | Setpoint                                                                                                                            |                   |
| <b>Pwr</b> | REAL | O   | Output power, %                                                                                                                     | 0...100           |

Table 7.2 PID block parameters

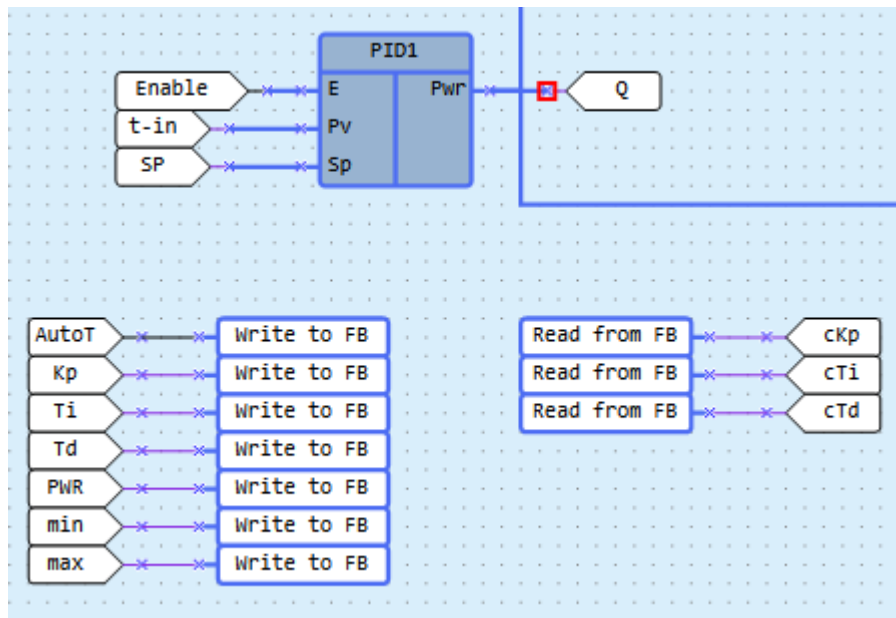
| Name                     | Type | Description                                                       | Values                           | Access               |               |                     |
|--------------------------|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
|                          |      |                                                                   |                                  | Prop-<br>erty<br>Box | Write<br>ToFB | Read<br>From-<br>FB |
| <b>Control mode</b>      | BOOL | 0 – Heating<br>1 – Cooling                                        | 0/1                              | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Output safe state</b> | REAL | Output value when control is disabled, %                          | 0...100                          | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Kp</b>                | REAL | Proportional gain, multiplication factor for proportional control | 0...100                          | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Ti (s)</b>            | REAL | Integral time, time constant for integral control in seconds      | –3,402823E+38...<br>3,402823E+38 | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Td (s)</b>            | REAL | Derivative time, time constant for derivative control in seconds  | –3,402823E+38...<br>3,402823E+38 | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Output max.</b>       | REAL | Output upper limit, % (default 80 %)                              | 0...100                          | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Output min.</b>       | REAL | Output lower limit, % (default 20 %)                              | 0...100                          | X                    | X             |                     |
| <b>Start AT</b>          | BOOL | 0 – stop auto-tuning<br>1 – start auto-tuning                     | 0/1                              |                      | X             |                     |
| <b>AT completed</b>      | BOOL | Flag: 0 – auto-tuning stopped<br>1 – auto-tuning started          | 0/1                              |                      |               | X                   |
| <b>Kp calculated</b>     | REAL | Calculated proportional gain                                      | –3,402823E+38...<br>3,402823E+38 |                      |               | X                   |
| <b>Ti calculated</b>     | REAL | Calculated integral time                                          | –3,402823E+38...<br>3,402823E+38 |                      |               | X                   |
| <b>Td calculated</b>     | REAL | Calculated derivative time                                        | –3,402823E+38...<br>3,402823E+38 |                      |               | X                   |

Tuning of a control loop is the adjustment of its control parameters (**Kp**, **Ti**, **Td**) to the optimal values for the desired control response.

## Auto-tuning

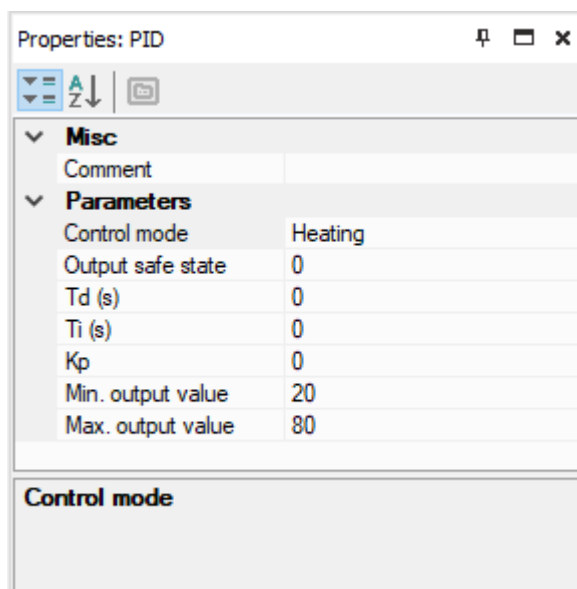
Programmable loop tuning can be performed using the blocks WriteToFB <sup>W</sup> and ReadFromFB <sup>R</sup>.

To write the parameters, use the block WriteToFB or Property Box.  
To read the parameters, use the block ReadFromFB.



To use auto-tuning, add the block WriteToFB to the circuit program and set the reference to the parameter **Start AT** of the PID block.

To start the auto-tuning, enable control ( $E = 1$ ) and set the parameter **Start AT** = 1.



Upon completion of the auto-tuning, the new values of the parameters **Kp**, **Ti** and **Td** are calculated and the flag **AT completed** becomes 1.

If **Start AT** = 0, the flag **AT completed** = 0 as well.

If you set **Start AT** = 0 before the completion of auto-tuning, the auto-tuning is stopped, the flag **AT completed** becomes 0 and no new coefficients are calculated.

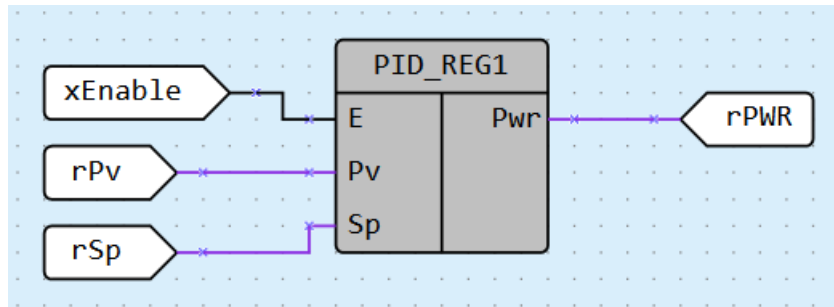
During the auto-tuning, a test signal limited by parameters **Output max.** and **Output min.** is applied to the output **Pwr**.

**NOTE**

If the maximum gain is not sufficient to reach the setpoint, the auto-tuning cannot be completed and will continue until it is stopped with **Start AT = 0**.

**7.2.5.2 PID-controller (PID\_REG) for second generation devices****NOTE**

The PID REG is not available for PR103 devices.



The PID controller is used to implement the proportional-integral-derivative (PID) control law. The controller's output power is calculated using the formula:

$$MV(t) = \frac{1}{X_p} \cdot \left( e(t) + \frac{1}{T_i} \cdot \int_0^t e(\tau) d\tau + T_d \cdot \frac{de(t)}{dt} \right)$$

, where

$X_p$  – proportional band (measurement units)

$T_i$  – integral time constant [s]

$T_d$  – derivative time constant [s]

$e(t)$  – error (deviation)

$MV(t)$  – PID output

**Block Inputs**

| Name | Type | Description                                                                                                            | Values             |
|------|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| E    | BOOL | Controller enable. When disabled, the output is set to the value specified in the 'Output Power in Off State' property | 0 – Off;<br>1 – On |
| Pv   | REAL | Current value of the controlled variable                                                                               | –9999...9999*      |
| Sp   | REAL | Setpoint value of the controlled variable                                                                              |                    |

\*If a value outside this range is applied to the input, the regulator's Pwr output will be reset to the value specified in the 'Output Power in Off State' parameter.

**Block Outputs**

Table 7.3 Block Outputs

| Name | Type | Description             | Values |
|------|------|-------------------------|--------|
| Pwr  | REAL | Controller output power |        |

## Inputs Available via Write to FB

Table 7.4 Inputs Available via Write to FB

| Name                                      | Type | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Values                                         |
|-------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Control mode                              | BOOL | Controller operating modes:<br>– 'Heater' mode: used for controlling actuators that increase the controlled variable;<br>– 'Cooler' mode: used for controlling actuators that decrease the controlled variable | 0 – Heater;<br>1 – Cooler                      |
| Start AT                                  | BOOL | Controller auto-tuning control                                                                                                                                                                                 | 0 – Auto-tuning off<br>1 – Auto-tuning started |
| Proportional band                         | REAL | PID controller proportional band, measurement units                                                                                                                                                            | 0..9999                                        |
| Integral time constant                    | REAL | Integral time constant, sec                                                                                                                                                                                    | 0..4000                                        |
| Derivative time constant                  | REAL | Derivative time constant, sec                                                                                                                                                                                  | 0..4000                                        |
| Output power in OFF state                 | REAL | Pwr output state when input E is 0                                                                                                                                                                             | -9999..9999                                    |
| Output max.                               | REAL | Upper limit of output power                                                                                                                                                                                    | -9999..9999                                    |
| Output min.                               | REAL | Lower limit of output power                                                                                                                                                                                    | -9999..9999                                    |
| Dead zone                                 | REAL | Dead band around setpoint/2 where controller output remains unchanged, measurement units                                                                                                                       |                                                |
| Output type                               | BOOL | Controller output signal selection                                                                                                                                                                             | 0 – Power<br>1 – Discrete CRV                  |
| Full travel length                        | REAL | Time for valve stem to move from fully closed to fully open position, sec                                                                                                                                      | 5..999**                                       |
| Minimum pulse time                        | REAL | Minimum control pulse duration for the valve, sec                                                                                                                                                              | 0.001..100                                     |
| Backlash compensation time                | REAL | Valve backlash sampling time, sec                                                                                                                                                                              | 0..10                                          |
| Setpoint change rate                      | REAL | Setpoint rate of change, measurement units/sec                                                                                                                                                                 | 0 – Function disabled<br>0...9999              |
| Manual mode of operation of the regulator | BOOL | Flag for switching controller to manual mode                                                                                                                                                                   | 0 – Automatic mode<br>1 – Manual mode          |
| Manual output control "More"              | BOOL | In manual mode: command to send "Increase" signal to block output                                                                                                                                              |                                                |

| Name                                                           | Type | Description                                                                                                                                        | Values      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Manual output control "Less"                                   | BOOL | In manual mode: command to send "Decrease" signal to block output                                                                                  |             |
| Initial value of controlled variable for PID-autotuning (Pv_0) | REAL | Controlled variable value that will be at input Pv when zero power is applied (object at rest). This parameter is required for correct auto-tuning | -9999..9999 |

\*\*To apply a new full stroke time for the valve, restart the block by toggling the signal at input E.

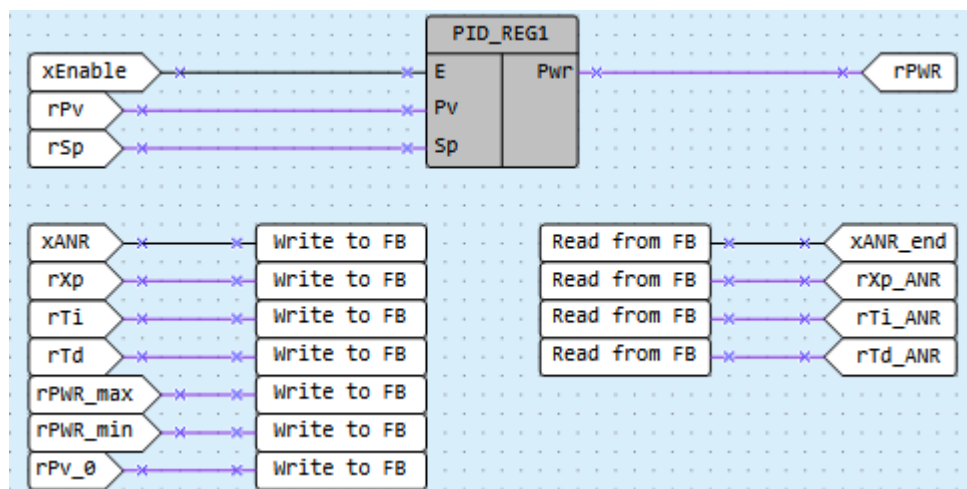
### Outputs Available via Read from FB

Table 7.5 Outputs Available via Read from FB

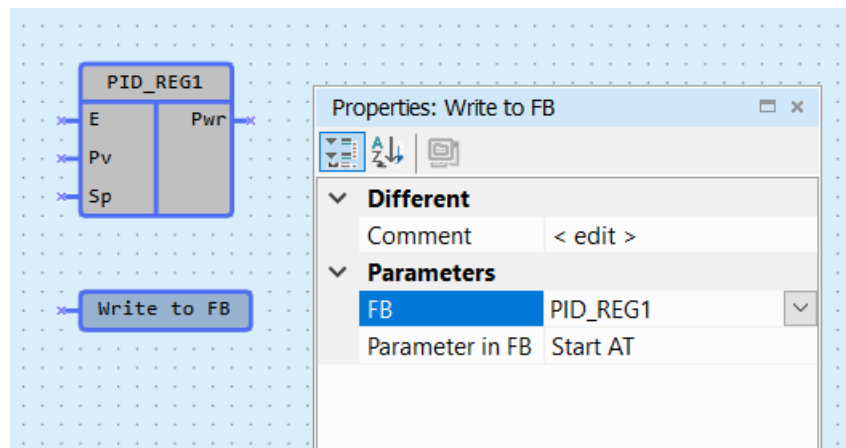
| Name                                  | Type | Description                                                       | Values                                   |
|---------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| AT completed                          | BOOL | Auto-tuning completion flag                                       | 0 – AT not completed<br>1 – AT completed |
| Calculated proportional band          | REAL | Proportional band calculated after auto-tuning, measurement units | 0..9999                                  |
| Calculated integral time constant     | REAL | Integral time constant calculated after auto-tuning, sec          | 0..4000                                  |
| Calculated differential time constant | REAL | Derivative time constant calculated after auto-tuning, sec        | 0..4000                                  |
| "More"                                | BOOL | Valve open signal                                                 |                                          |
| "Less"                                | BOOL | Valve close signal                                                |                                          |

### Auto-Tuning

PID controller auto-tuning is performed using Read from and Write to FB blocks.



To start auto-tuning, add a **Write to FB** block and bind it to the PID controller's **Start Auto-Tuning** variable.



Values for other FB parameters can be set using the **Write to FB** block, as shown in the figure above, or configured in the properties panel.

Use **Read from FB** blocks to read the values of parameters **Calculated proportional band**, **Calculated integral time constant**, **Calculated differential time constant**, and **AT completed**.

To start auto-tuning, apply a logical "1" to input **E**.

Upon completion of the auto-tuning process, new coefficient values are available for reading: **Calculated proportional band**, **Calculated integral time constant**, and **Calculated differential time constant**. The **AT completed** parameter is set to logical one.



#### CAUTION

The auto-tuning completion flag remains at logical one for one cycle only.

If the **Start AT** input is reset to logical zero before tuning completion, the process stops, the completion flag is not set, and new coefficient values are not calculated.

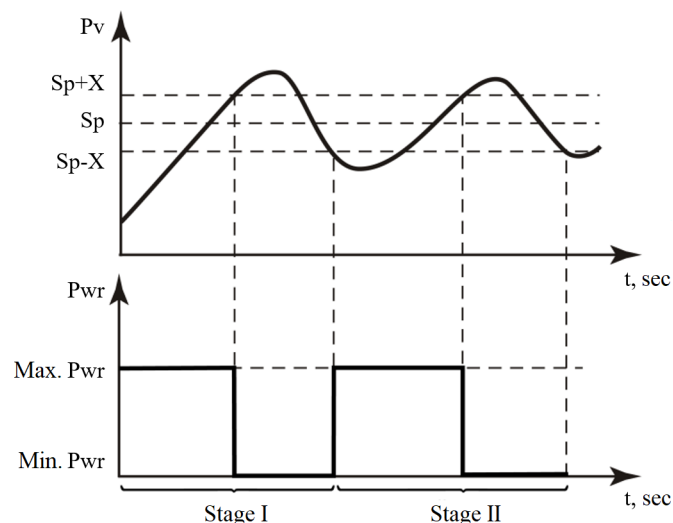


#### CAUTION

For correct auto-tuning, the **Initial value of controlled variable for PID-autotuning** parameter must be set. It should equal the controlled variable value corresponding to zero actuation (object at rest).

During the tuning process, test power limited by the **Output max.** and **Output min.** parameter values is applied to the PID controller output.

Auto-tuning sequence for 'Heater' mode:



1. When the current value is below the setpoint by more than  $X = 0.04 * (Sp - Pv_0)$ , maximum power (according to settings) is applied to the block output.
2. Once the current value exceeds the setpoint by more than  $X = 0.04 * (Sp - Pv_0)$ , minimum power is applied to the block output.
3. Steps 1 and 2 are repeated once more.

- The calculated PID controller parameters are sent to the corresponding outputs, and the completion flag is set (for one cycle).

If the maximum power setting is insufficient to reach the setpoint, the auto-tuning process will not complete until manually reset.

### Working with digital CRV

To work with a discrete control valve, set the value to "**Control valve (digital)**" in the corresponding parameter (Output Type), or, when working with this parameter via **Write to FB**, write the value "1" to it.

For correct operation, the valve parameters must be set: **Full travel time**, **Minimum pulse length**, and **Backlash compensation time**.

Access to control signals (Increase/Decrease) is through the corresponding outputs of the controller's **Read from FB** block.

In this mode, the **Pwr** output displays the virtual valve position (which may differ from the actual position).

When logical "1" is removed from input E, the valve remains in its current position.

For quick setup, we recommend using ready-made macros from the Component Manager:

- For power control — **PID AT\_** block;
- Macro with full functionality in power control mode — **PID AT\_F\_**;
- For discrete CRV control – **PID Valve\_** block;
- Macro with full functionality in discrete CRV control mode — **PID Valve\_F\_**.

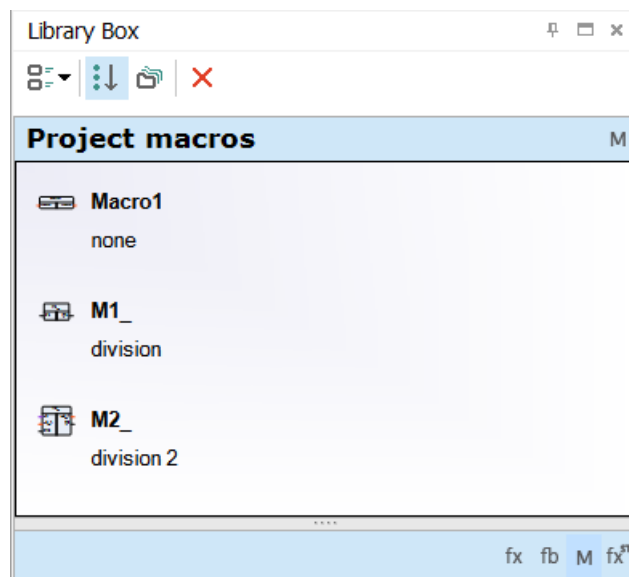
### Manual Mode

Operation in power control mode: when switching the controller to manual mode (the **Manual mode of operation of the regulator** input is set to 1), the calculated power value is fixed.

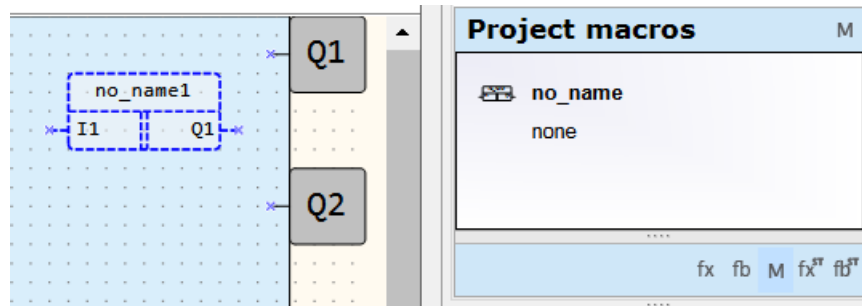
Operation in discrete CRV control mode: when switching the controller to manual mode (the **Manual mode of operation of the regulator** input is set to 1), the calculated valve position is fixed, and the manual valve open/close control inputs become available.

### 7.3 Project macros

**Project Macros** section contains macros created by the user or downloaded from Online Database using Component Manager.



To add a macro to a project, drag-and-drop the macro from the Library Box to the workspace.



To open the project macro in the separate workspace for editing, select it in the workspace or in the library and use the item **Edit macro** in the macro context menu.

To remove the macro from the Library Box, select the macro and click the **✗** icon in the panel toolbar.

For details about macros creation, development and handling see section [Macro development](#).

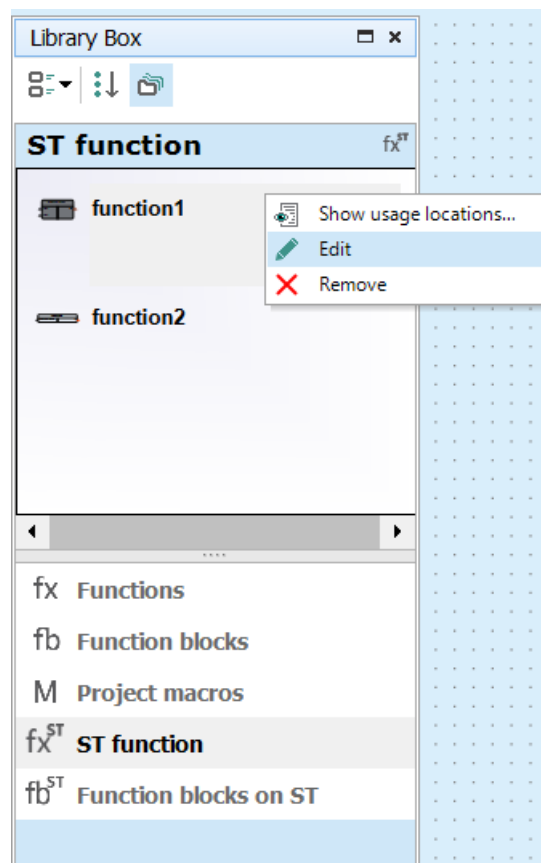
#### 7.4 ST functions



##### NOTE

User can create functions in ST language for PR100(M02), PR102, PR200, PR103, PR205, PR225 and SMI200 devices.

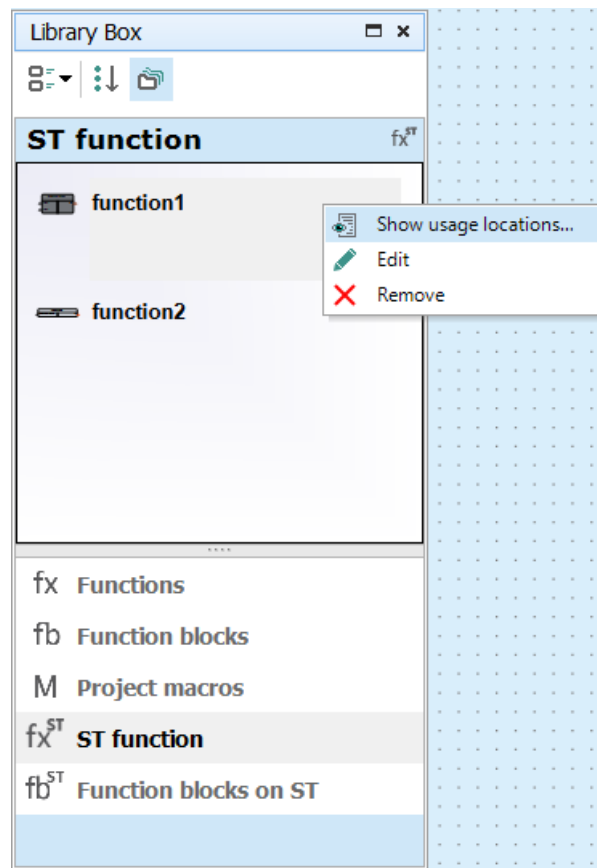
If you have created ST functions in your project, they will be available in the Library Box.



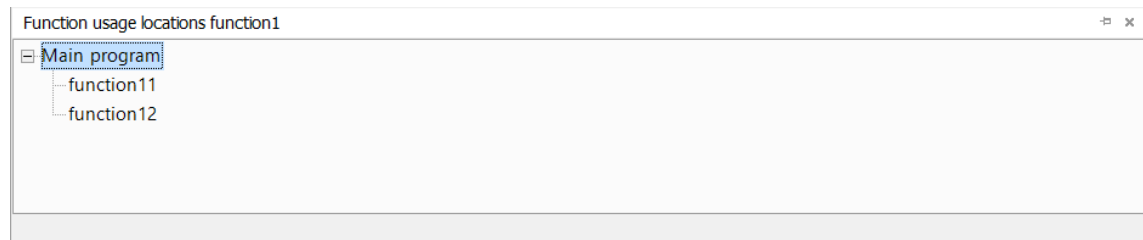
#### Usage locations

To view all places where the function is used:

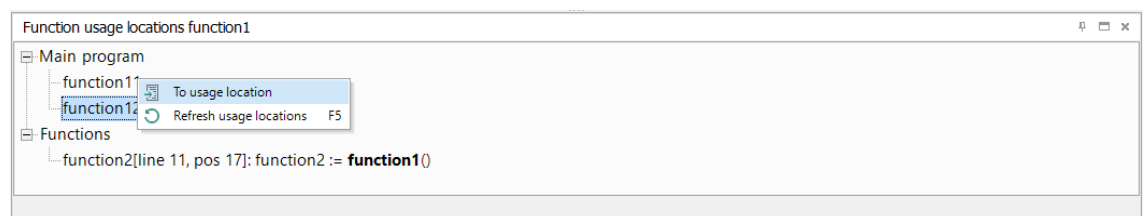
1. Right-click on the function name
2. Select item **Show usage location....**



The **Function usage locations** panel will open at the bottom of the window, displaying where the function is used in the diagram and in the function editor.



3. Right-click on the line that indicates where the function is used.
4. Select item **To usage location**.



The focus will shift to where the function is used in the diagram or in the function editor.

**NOTE**  
 Double-click leads to the same result.

If the places where functions are used have changed while working with the program, you should update the **Function usage locations** panel:

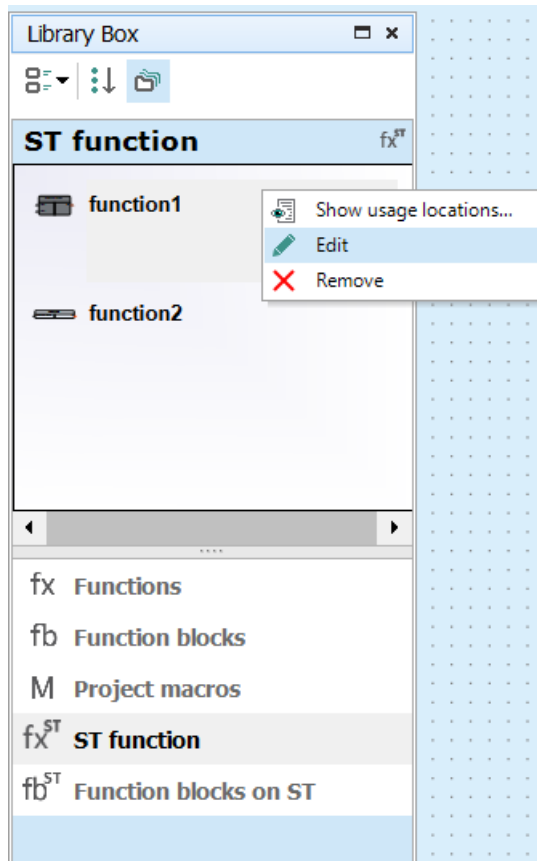
1. Right-click on any line of the panel.

2. Select the item  **Refresh usage locations**.

### Go to the function editor

To go to the function editor:

1. Right-click on the function name.
2. Select the item **Edit**.

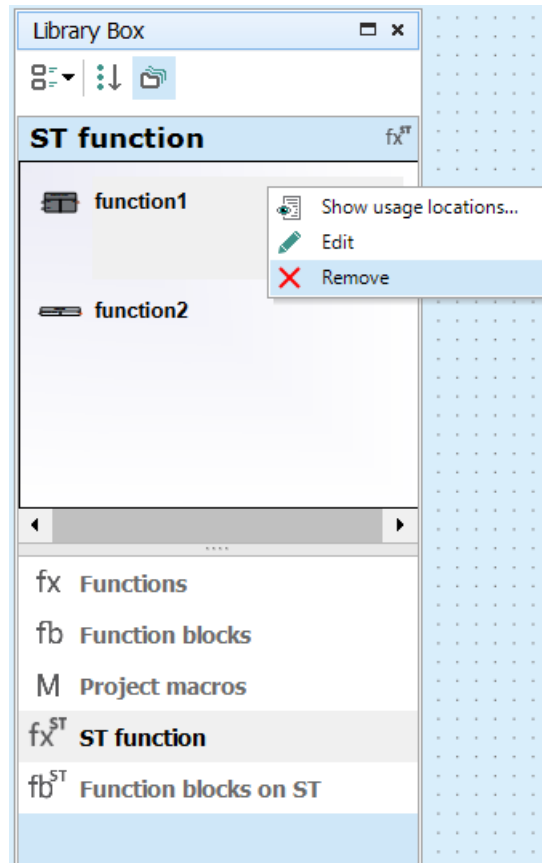


The function editor will open.

### Delete function

To remove a function from a project:

1. Right-click on the function name.
2. Select the item **Remove**.

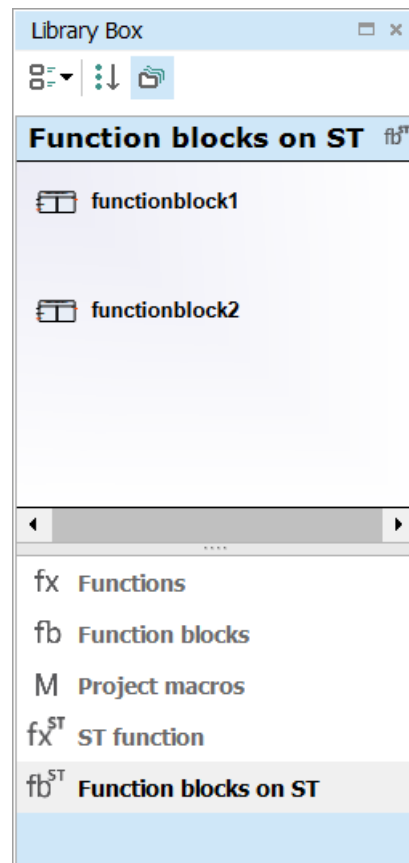
**NOTICE**

If the function is used in the diagram and/or in other functions, deletion may result in compilation errors.

**7.5 ST function block****NOTE**

User can create functions in ST language for PR100(M02), PR102, PR200, PR103, PR205, PR225 and SMI200 devices.

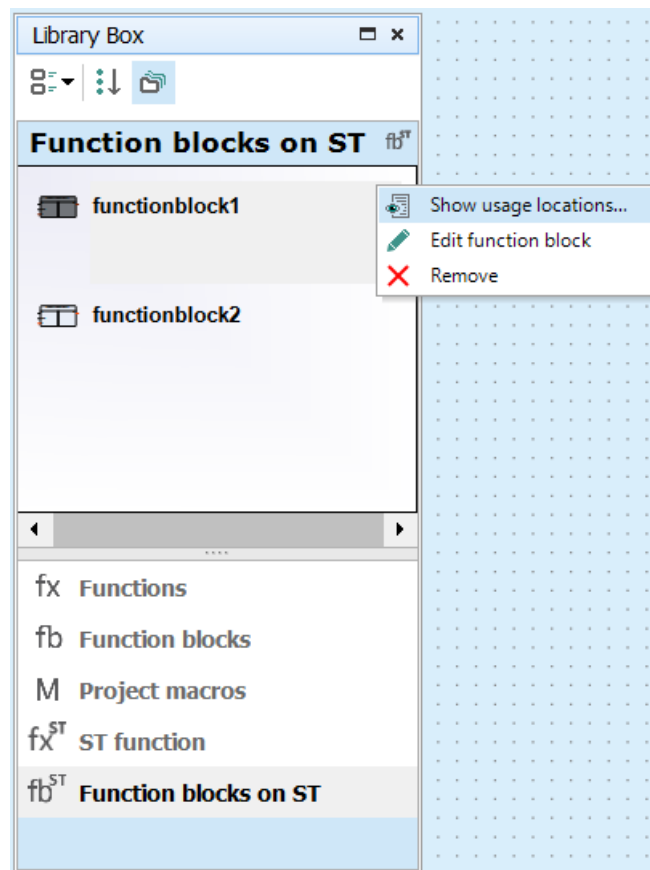
If ST function blocks are created in the project, they will be available in the component library.



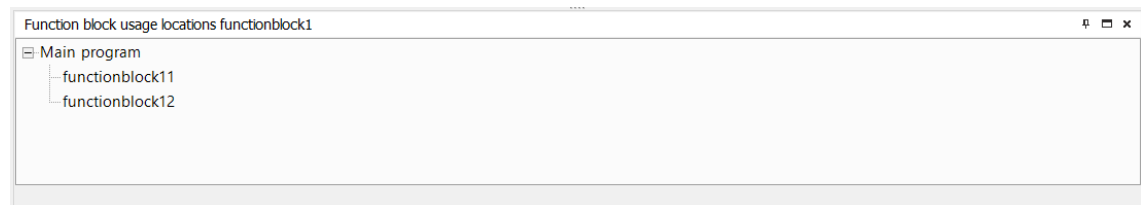
### Usage location

To view all places where the function is used:

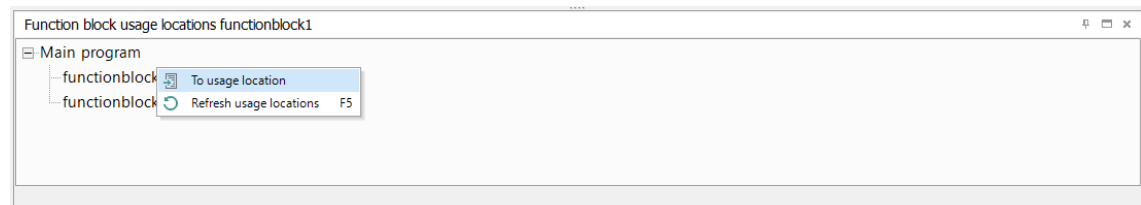
1. Right-click on the name of the function block.
2. Select the item  **Show usage locations....**



The **Function block usage locations** panel will open at the bottom of the window, showing where the function block is used in the main program and in the editor.



3. Right-click on the line with the location where the function block is used.
4. Select the item **To usage location**.



The focus will shift to where the function block is used on the diagram or in the editor.

**i** **NOTE**  
Double-click leads to the same result.

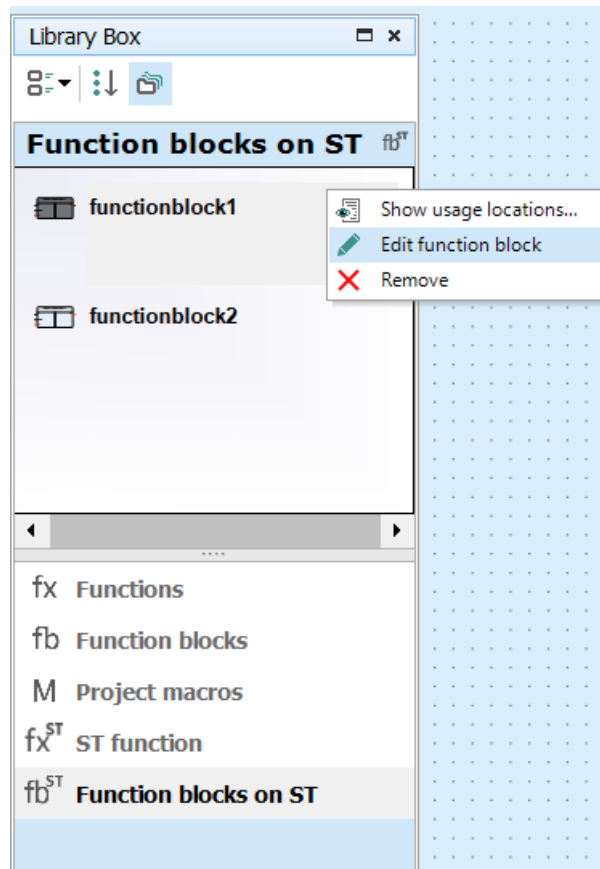
If the places where function blocks are used have changed while working with the program, you should update the **Function block usage location** panel:

1. Right-click on any line of the panel.
2. Select the item **Refresh usage locations**.

**Go to the function block editor**

To go to the function block editor:

1. Right-click on the function block name.
2. Select the item **Edit**.

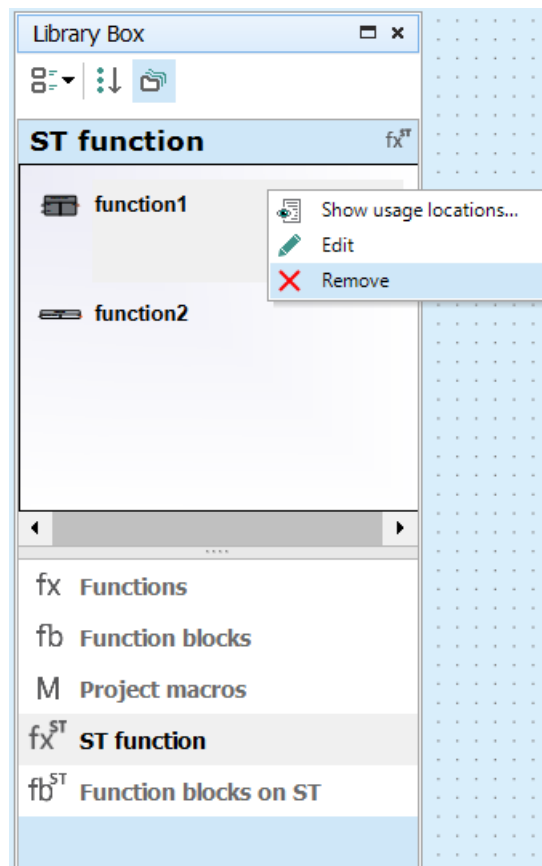


The function block editor 4.13 will open.

**Delete function block**

To delete a function block:

1. Right-click the function block name.
2. Select the item **Remove**.

**NOTICE**

If the function block is used in the main program and/or in other functions, deletion may result in compilation errors.

**7.6 Display elements**

If the workspace with a display form is active, only display elements are available in Library Box. With these blocks, the information on the device display can be controlled. The display elements can be placed within the display form by drag-and-drop. The following elements are available:

- Text box
- I/O box (INT/REAL)
- I/O box (BOOL)
- Dynamic box
- Combobox

Use Property Box to customize an element.

Common parameters for all elements:

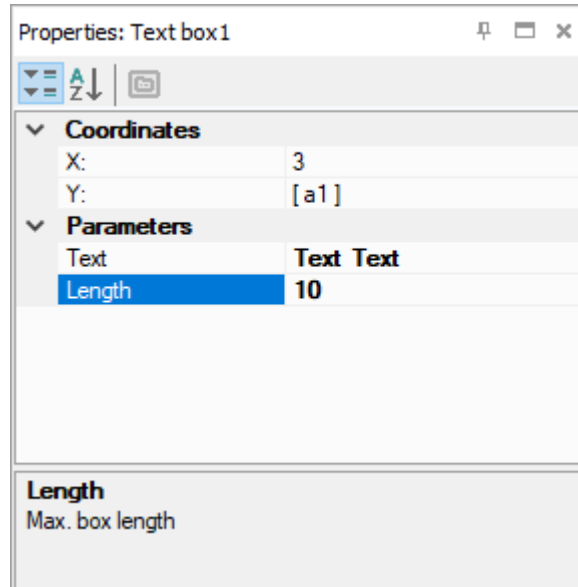
- **Coordinate X** – the position of the first (left) character placeholder of the element from the left edge of the form (from 0 to 15).
- **Coordinate Y** – the position of the first (left) character placeholder of the element from the upper edge of the form, depending on number of the rows in the form.
- There are two ways to determine coordinates: constant (default) or variable. To use a coordinate dependent on a variable, select the coordinate and open the list on the right of the input field.
  - **Constant** – specify the coordinates in Property Box or place the element within the form by drag-and-drop.
  - **Variable** – click **Select** to select an INT variable from the list and confirm with **OK**. The display element will move according to the coordinate value controlled by the variable.
- **Length** – the number of reserved characters. The display element occupies one display row in height, its length can be from 1 to 16 characters.

### 7.6.1 Text box

Text box is used to display plain text.

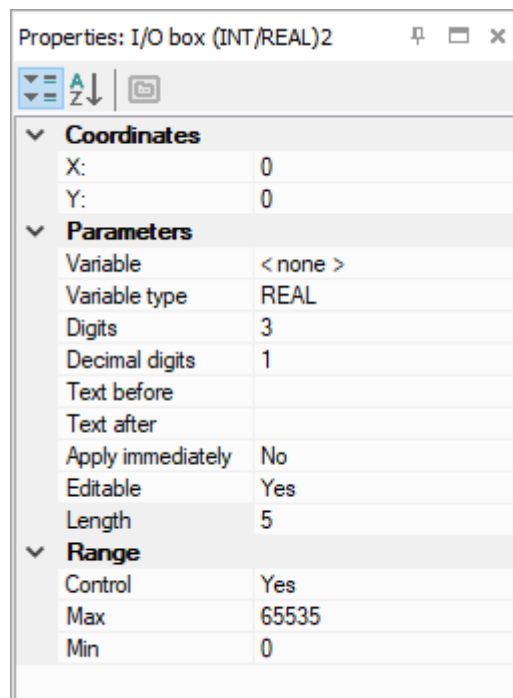
#### Parameters

**Text** – text to display. The parameter **Length** specifies the number of the reserved characters.



### 7.6.2 I/O box (INT/REAL)

I/O box (INT/REAL) is used to display a variable of type INT or REAL. The variable value can be changed with the device function buttons.



#### Parameters

- **Variable** – the reference to a variable. Use icon “...” in the input field to select the variable.
- **Data type** – INT or REAL. If the variable has been already selected, its data type will be accepted.

- **Digits** – the total number of displayed digits.
- **Decimal digits** – the number of the characters after the decimal point: 0...6 characters or **Auto** for Auto-precision\*.
- **Text before** – the text to the left of the displayed variable.
- **Text after** – the text to the right of the displayed variable.
- **Editable** – if set to **Yes**, the displayed value can be changed using the device function buttons.

**NOTE**

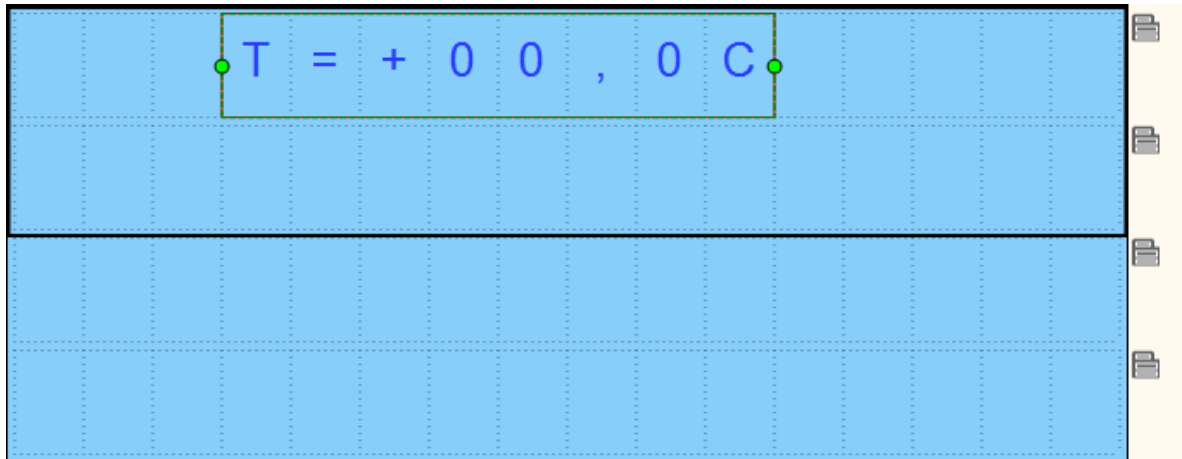
*An output variable should be selected. The option has no effect with an input variable.*

- **Length** – the total number of reserved characters including both the text before and after.

**Range:**

The group of parameters is used to limit the input value. If **Editable** = **No**, the parameters of this group have no effect.

- **Limit** – if set to **Yes**, the value entered using the device function buttons is limited by the user parameters **Max** and **Min**, else it is limited only by the available memory area.
- **Max** – the maximum input value.
- **Min** – the minimum input value.

**\* Auto-precision**

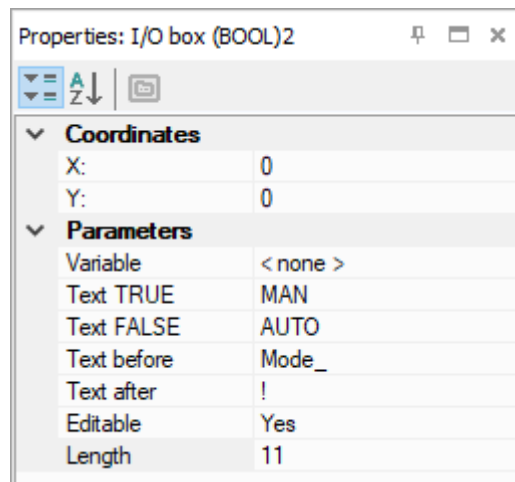
The option enables to display a REAL variable most precisely for the set number of reserved characters (parameter **Digits**). To use the option, select in the workspace an I/O-Box display element with associated variable of REAL type and select **Auto** for the parameter **Decimal digits** in the Property Box.

**Example:**

To display the variable VAR1, 4 digits with Auto-precision are reserved. The value 1.546745 will be displayed rounded as 1.547. If the value changes to 110.478696, it will be displayed as 110.5.

**7.6.3 I/O box (BOOL)**

I/O box (BOOL) is used to display a variable of BOOL type. The value of the variable can be changed with the device function buttons.



### Parameters

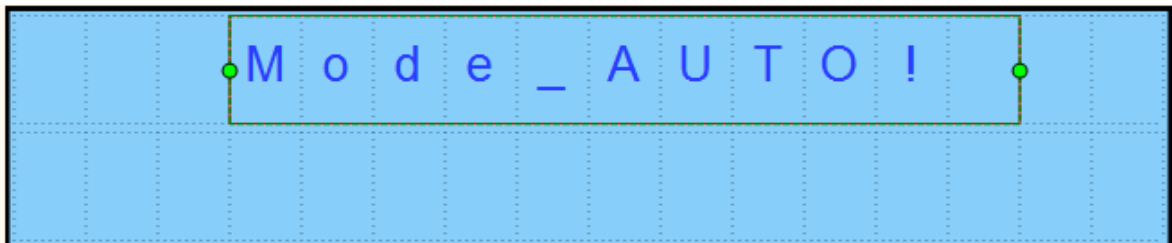
- **Variable** – the reference to a variable. Use icon “...” in the input field to select the variable.
- **Text TRUE** – the text displayed if the variable is **True**.
- **Text FALSE** – the text displayed if the variable is **False**.
- **Text before** – the text to the left of the displayed variable.
- **Text after** – the text to the right of the displayed variable.
- **Editable** – if set to **Yes**, the displayed value can be changed using the device function buttons.



#### NOTE

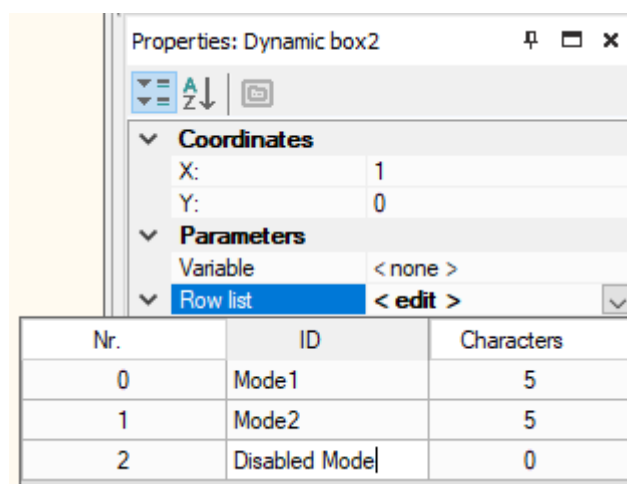
An output variable should be selected. The option has no effect with an input variable.

- **Length** – the total number of reserved characters including both the text before and after.



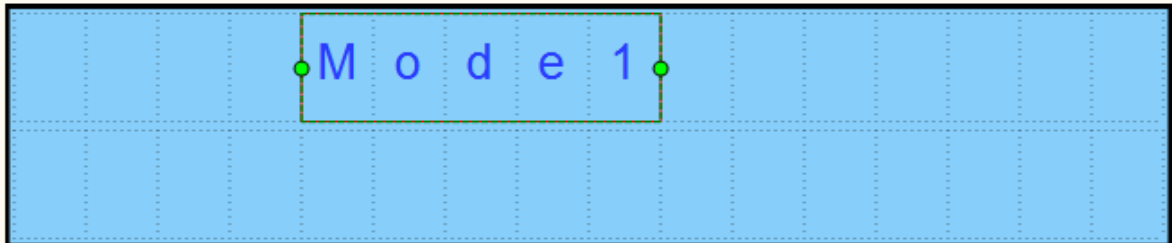
### 7.6.4 Dynamic box

Dynamic box is an output field. It is used to display one of the text rows from a list depending on a row **ID**. The row **ID** is saved in a referenced variable of INT type.



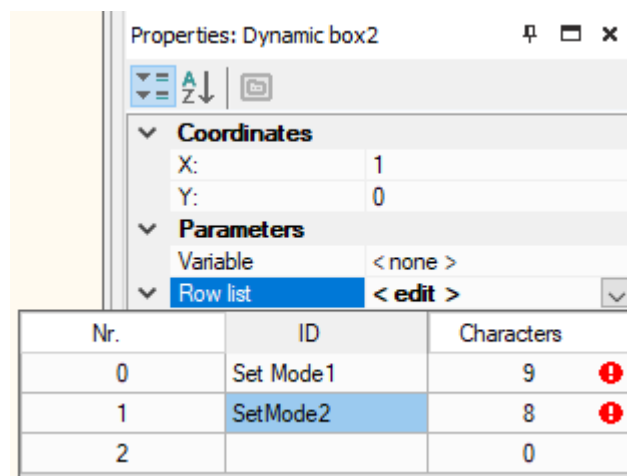
### Parameters

- **Variable** — the reference to an integer project variable. To select the variable, click the “...” button and select from the *variable table 6*;
- **Row list** — the list with text rows. The **Text** from the row is displayed if the value of the referenced variable equals to the row **ID**. The column **Characters** shows the number of characters in the text. If the value of **Length** parameter is exceeded, there will be an exclamation mark near the number.
- **Length** — the number of reserved characters.



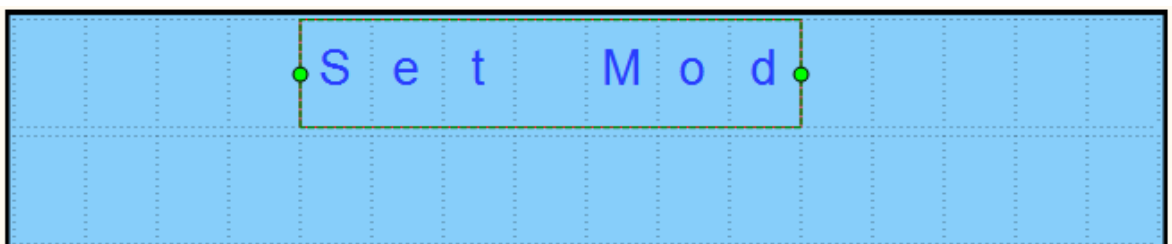
### 7.6.5 ComboBox

ComboBox is an input / output field. It is used to display one of the text rows from a list depending on a row **ID**. The row **ID** is saved in a referenced variable of INT type. The **ID** can also be selected using the device function buttons.



### Parameters

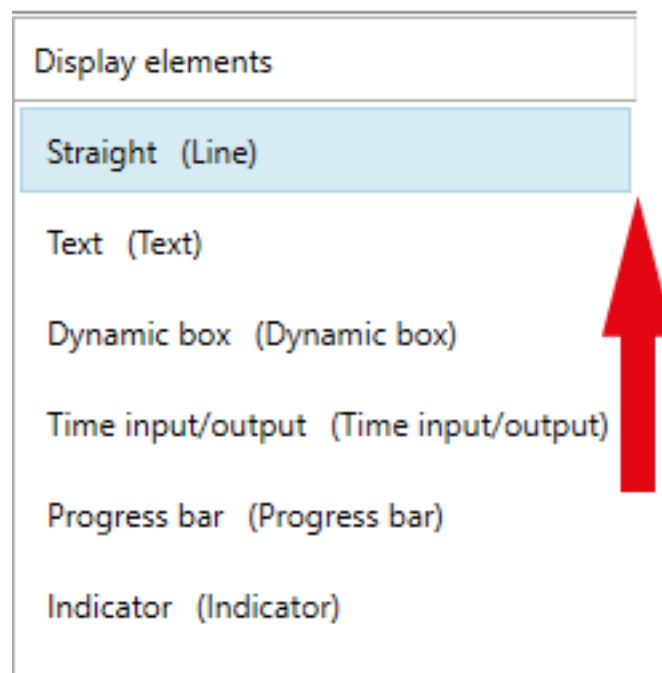
- **Variable** — the reference to a program variable. Use the icon «...» in the input field to select the variable.
- **Row list** — the table with text rows. The **Text** of the selected row is displayed and the row **ID** is saved in the referenced output variable. The column **Characters** shows the number of characters in the text. If the value of **Length** parameter is exceeded, there will be an exclamation mark near the number.
- **Length** — the number of the reserved characters.



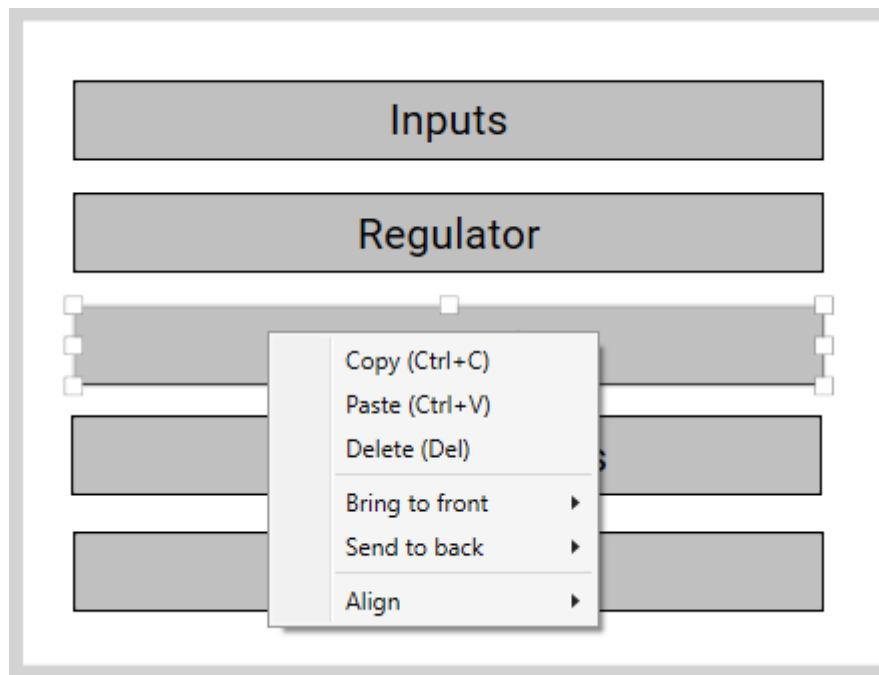
### 7.7 Basic graphic elements

- Text
- Indicator
- Progress bar
- Dynamic text
- Input/output int/float
- Time input/output
- IP Input/Output
- Line
- Polygon
- Circle
- Button 7.7.11
- Switch 7.7.12
- Switch group 7.7.13
- Image
- Menu
- Graph

These elements are used to design the display of devices with a graphic color LCD. If several editable visualization elements are added to the screen, the order of their selection using the SEL button will be determined by the order in the "Screen Components" list from bottom to top (the lower elements will be highlighted first):



You can change the order of elements by dragging and dropping an element in the list or using the context menu by right-clicking on an element on the canvas:



The following data provides information on the amount of RAM (visualization RAM) required for displaying visualization elements on devices with a graphical color LCD:

| Visualization Element | Visualization RAM Used, bytes     | Additional Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                     |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Empty Screen          | 252                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                          |
| Physical Buttons      | 80                                | RAM calculation:<br>80 bytes (each button)<br>+ 20 bytes * number of variables + 10 bytes * number of actions + 10 bytes (mandatory reserve)<br>Calculation examples:<br>1. Changing a variable on short press = $80 + 20 * 1 + 10 * 1 + 10 = 120$ bytes<br>2. Screen transition on short press = $80 + 20 * 0 + 10 * 1 + 10 = 100$ bytes<br>3. Changing a variable on short and long press, and screen transition on short press = $80 + 20 * 2 + 10 * 3 + 10 = 160$ bytes |                                                          |
| Text                  | 464                               | If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                          |
| Indicator             | Default size, without frame – 630 | If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | The amount of RAM used directly depends on the element's |

| Visualization Element | Visualization RAM Used, bytes | Additional Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       |                               | If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>dimensions and frame thickness:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Larger element dimensions require more memory for display;</li> <li>– Frame 0 px (disabled) - minimum RAM usage for an element of this size;</li> <li>– Frame 1 px - RAM usage increases compared to an element without a frame;</li> <li>– Frame 2 px or more - RAM usage increases compared to an element with a 1 px frame. When the frame thickness exceeds 2 px, the amount of RAM used does not increase further and corresponds to the usage for an element with a 2 px thick frame.</li> </ul> |
| Progress bar          | 408                           | <p>If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.</p> <p>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.</p> <p>Value visibility: +16 bytes for displaying the value (Value, visible = Yes).</p>                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Dynamic box           | 836 (for one line)            | <p>+4 bytes for each additional line.</p> <p>If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.</p> <p>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.</p> <p>Input control: +12 bytes for allowing editing (Disable editing = No).</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| REAL/INT input/output | 776                           | <p>If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.</p> <p>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.</p>                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

| Visualization Element      |               | Visualization RAM Used, bytes                                       | Additional Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                            |               |                                                                     | Input control: +24 bytes for allowing editing (Disable editing = No).                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Time input/output          |               | 688 for date <b>or</b> time only.<br>704 for date <b>and</b> time.  | If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.<br>Input control: +28 bytes for allowing editing (Disable editing = No).                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Input/Output of IP Address |               | 676                                                                 | If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.<br>Input control: +24 bytes for allowing editing (Disable editing = No).                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Line                       | Straight line | 182                                                                 | If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                            | Broken line   | 190                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Polygon                    | Rectangle     | 338                                                                 | If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.<br>Fill: +132 bytes (Appearance, Fill = Yes).<br>Action configuration (screen transition or variable change) = 10 bytes * number of actions + 26 bytes. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                            | Triangle      | 334                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                            | Diamond       | 338                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Circle                     | Circle        | Default size, without fill – 978<br>Default size, with fill – 1346  | If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.<br>Action configuration (screen transition or variable change) = 10 bytes * number of actions + 26 bytes.                                               | The amount of RAM used directly depends on the element's dimensions and the presence of a fill: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Larger element dimensions require more memory for display;</li> <li>– The RAM usage for an element with a fill is greater than for an element without a fill.</li> </ul> |
|                            | Circle sector | Default size, without fill – 1502<br>Default size, with fill – 1878 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Visualization Element |  | Visualization RAM Used, bytes                            | Additional Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       |  |                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | For certain combinations of settings, the "Thickness" parameter of the focus frame may slightly affect the visualization RAM used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Button                |  | Rectangular without rounded corners, without frame – 894 | <p>If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.</p> <p>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.</p> <p>Action configuration (screen transition or variable change) = 10 bytes * number of actions + 26 bytes.</p> <p>+6 bytes for adding a 1px frame (for a rectangular button without rounded corners).</p> <p>+20 bytes for adding a frame with a thickness of 2 px or more (for a rectangular button without rounded corners).</p> | <p>For a round button or a rectangular button with rounded corners, the amount of RAM used directly depends on the element's dimensions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Larger element dimensions require more memory for display.</li> </ul> <p>For certain combinations of settings, the "Thickness" parameter of the focus frame may slightly affect the visualization RAM used.</p> |
| Switch                |  | Default size, without frame – 1192                       | <p>If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.</p> <p>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>The amount of RAM used directly depends on the element's dimensions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Larger element dimensions require more memory for display.</li> </ul> <p>For certain combinations of settings, the "Thickness" parameter of the focus frame may slightly affect the visualization RAM used.</p>                                                                  |
| Switch group          |  | 1688 (for a group with one cell)                         | <p>+ 208 bytes for each additional cell.</p> <p>If a variable is used: +20 bytes per variable.</p> <p>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Image                 |  | 372                                                      | If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Calculation of user visualization flash memory usage = Width * Height * 2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

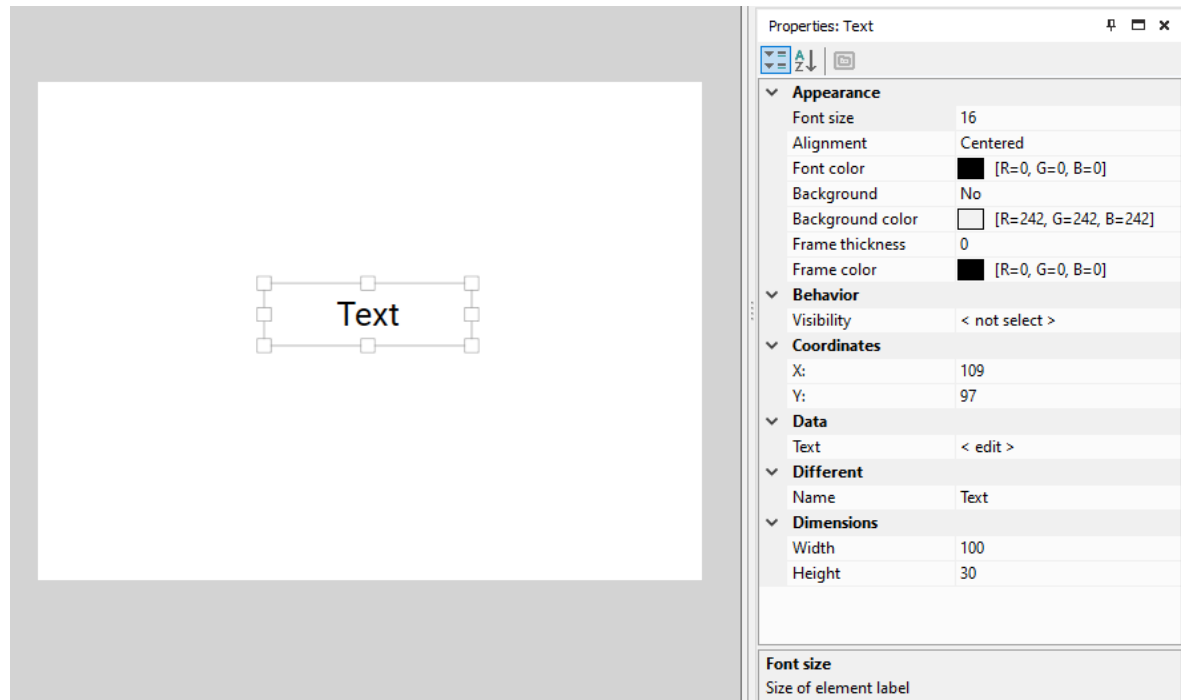
| Visualization Element |                                | Visualization RAM Used, bytes         | Additional Usage                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       |                                |                                       | Action configuration (screen transition or variable change) = 10 bytes * number of actions + 26 bytes.<br>+ 32 bytes for adding a frame.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | The calculation uses the width and height (in pixels) of the original image loaded into the visualization editor.<br>If the same image is copied and linked to multiple visualization elements, no additional user visualization flash memory is used. |
| Menu                  |                                | 1870 (for a menu with one item)       | + 298 bytes for each additional row/line.<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding of the element or row.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Chart                 | Back-ground operation disabled | Without pens, time scale 2 sec – 982  | Additional cost for increasing display time range:<br>From 2 bytes for 3 seconds up to 916 bytes for 23:59:59.<br>Additional cost per pen:<br>+ 20 bytes (first pen) + each subsequent pen depending on the time range (from 74 bytes for 2 seconds up to 990 bytes for 23:59:59).<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding of the element or pen.   | The amount of RAM used directly depends on the element's width:<br>– A wider element requires more memory for display.                                                                                                                                 |
|                       | Back-ground operation enabled  | Without pens, time scale 2 sec – 1002 | Additional cost for increasing display time range:<br>From 6 bytes for 3 seconds up to 2748 bytes for 23:59:59.<br>Additional cost per pen:<br>+ 20 bytes (first pen) + each subsequent pen depending on the time range (from 94 bytes for 2 seconds up to 2842 bytes for 23:59:59).<br>If visibility is controlled by a variable: +20 bytes for the visibility variable binding of the element or pen. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

### 7.7.1 Text

The **Text** element is intended for placing a text block in the visualization screen.

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions, enter text and set other parameters on the properties panel.



#### Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis – from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis – from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

#### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

#### Parameters

| Group      | Parameter        | Description                                                         |
|------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance | Font size        | Size of text displayed in element: 16, 32, 48                       |
|            | Alignment        | Alignment of the text displayed in the element: left, center, right |
|            | Font color       | The color of the text displayed in the element                      |
|            | Background       | The background of the text displayed in the element                 |
|            | Background color | The background color of the text displayed in the element           |

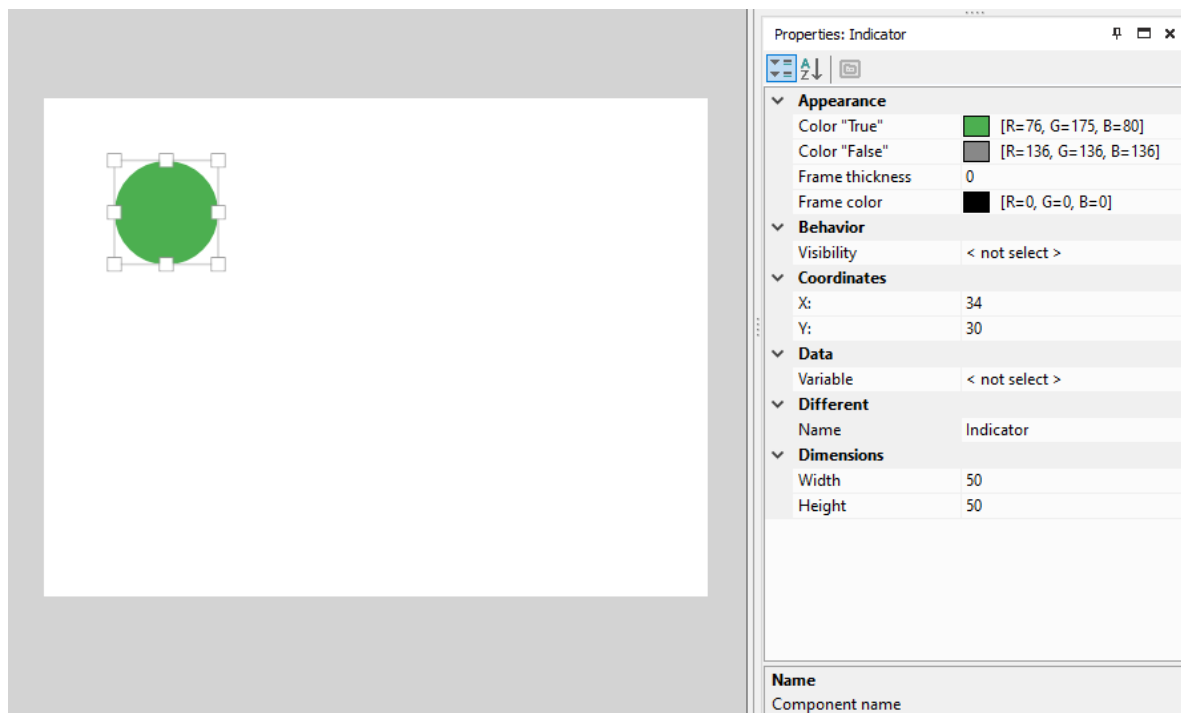
| Group            | Parameter              | Description                                                                                      |
|------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                  | <b>Frame thickness</b> | Element frame thickness                                                                          |
|                  | <b>Frame color</b>     | Element border color                                                                             |
| <b>Behavior</b>  | <b>Visibility</b>      | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element |
| <b>Data</b>      | <b>Text</b>            | The field contains the text that will be displayed in the element                                |
| <b>Different</b> | <b>Name</b>            | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor              |

### 7.7.2 Indicator

The **Indicator** element is designed to display the value of a Boolean variable in the visualization screen. If the variable value is **1**, the indicator takes the color "True". If the variable value is **0**, the indicator takes the color "False".

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions and set the parameters on the properties panel.



#### Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

#### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

## Parameters

| Group      | Parameter       | Description                                                                                      |
|------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance | Color "True"    | The color of the element if the value of the bound variable is TRUE                              |
|            | Color "False"   | The color of the element if the value of the bound variable is FALSE                             |
|            | Frame thickness | Element frame thickness                                                                          |
|            | Frame color     | Element border color                                                                             |
| Behavior   | Visibility      | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element |
| Data       | Variable        | A boolean variable is bound to the parameter for display                                         |
| Different  | Name            | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor              |

**NOTE**

If no variable is bound to the **Variable** parameter, the color of the element will always be True.

## 7.7.3 Progress bar

The Progress bar element is designed to display the value of an integer or floating-point variable as a scale on the visualization screen.

## Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions and set the parameters on the properties panel.

**Properties: Progress bar**

- Appearance**
  - Color: [R=76, G=175, B=80]
  - Background: Yes
  - Background color: [R=242, G=242, B=242]
  - Frame thickness: 1
  - Frame color: [R=0, G=0, B=0]
- Behavior**
  - Visibility: < not selected >
- Coordinates**
- Data**
  - Variable: < not selected >
  - Data type: REAL
- Different**
  - Name: Progress bar
- Dimensions**
- Value**
  - Minimum: -99999
  - Maximum: 999999
  - Visibility: Yes
  - Font size: 16
- Coordinates**

## Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

### Dimensions

The element's dimensions are defined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the element's borders on the screen field. For vertical orientation of the element, the Y value must be greater than the X value.

### Parameters

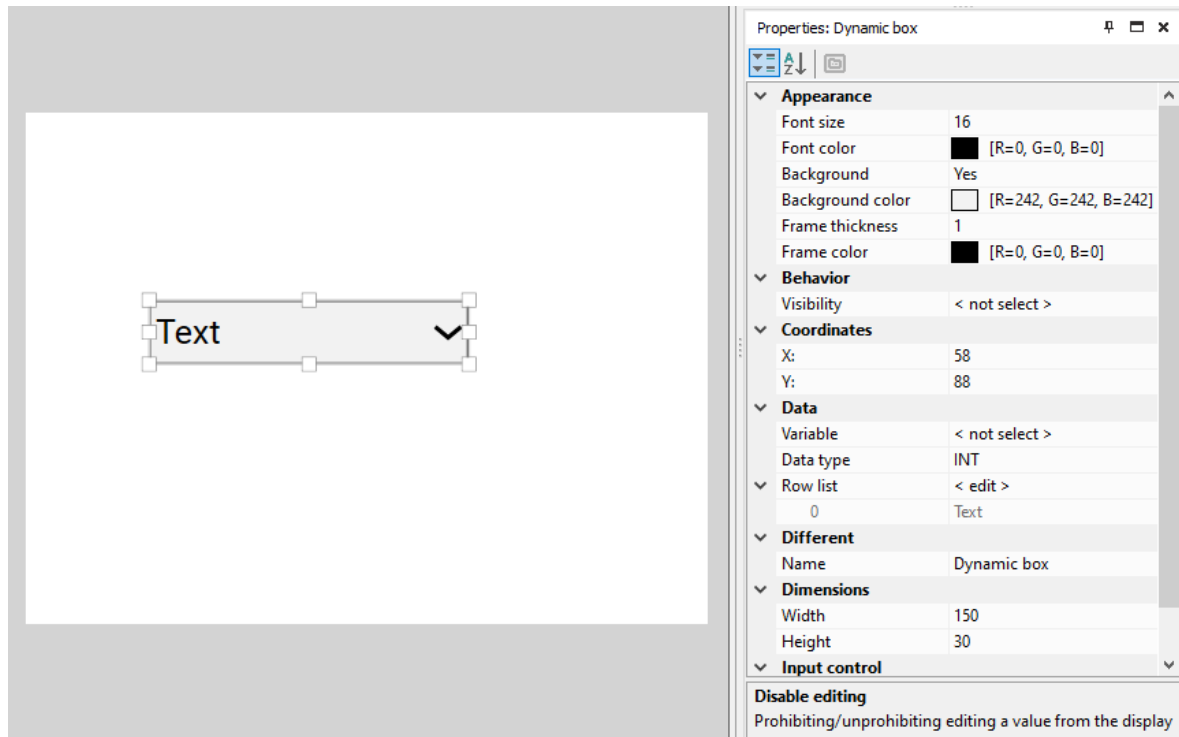
| Group      | Parameter        | Description                                                                                      |
|------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance | Color            | Element scale color                                                                              |
|            | Background       | Background of the displayed element                                                              |
|            | Background color | Background color of the displayed element                                                        |
|            | Frame thickness  | Element frame thickness                                                                          |
|            | Frame color      | Element border color                                                                             |
| Behavior   | Visibility       | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element |
| Data       | Variable         | An integer or floating point variable is bound to the parameter for display.                     |
|            | Variable type    | Type of variable bound to element: floating point, integer                                       |
| Different  | Name             | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor              |
| Value      | Minimum          | 0 % of element scale                                                                             |
|            | Maximum          | 100 % of the measurement scale                                                                   |
|            | Visibility       | Displaying the scale value in an element                                                         |
|            | Font size        | The font size of the text displayed in the element: 16, 32, 48                                   |

#### 7.7.4 Dynamic box

The **Dynamic box** element is designed to select and display the value of an integer variable from a drop-down list on the visualization screen. The integer value can be assigned a text designation, which will be displayed in the drop-down list.

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions, and set the parameters and data on the properties panel.



### Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

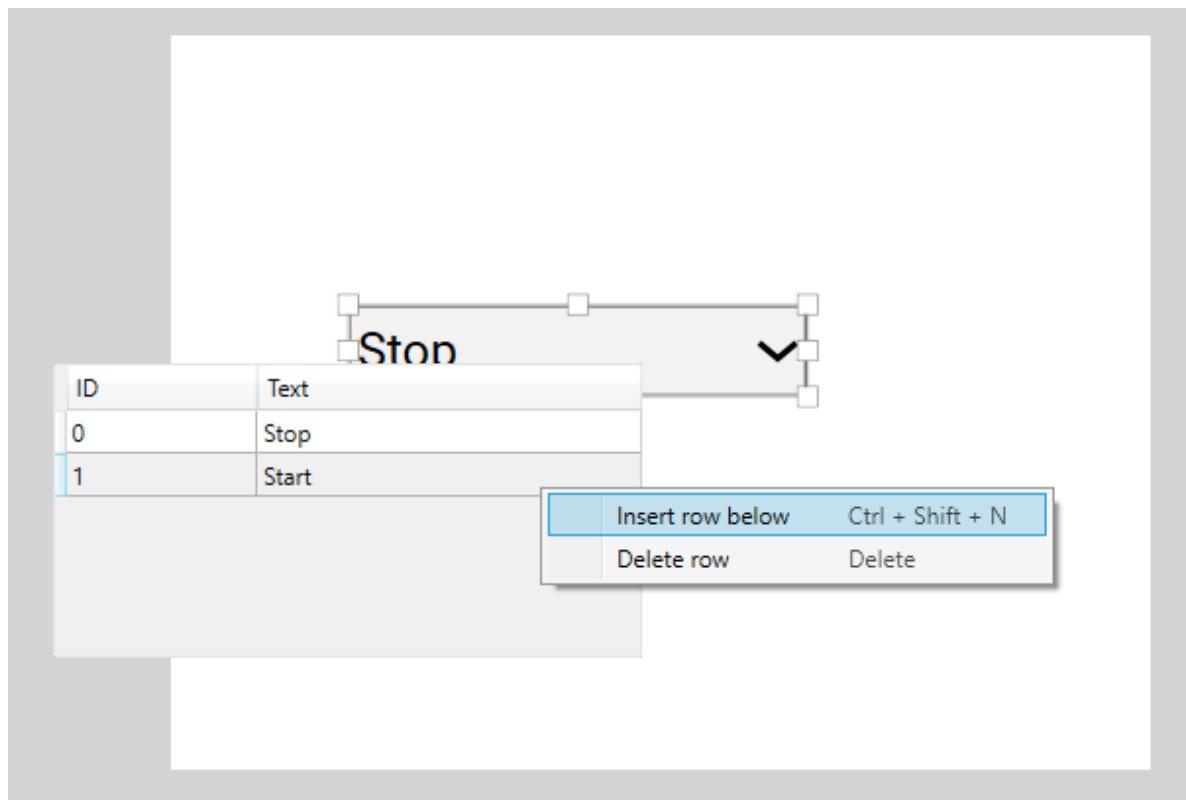
### Parameters

| Group      | Parameter        | Description                                                                                       |
|------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance | Font size        | The size of the text displayed in the element: 16, 32, 48                                         |
|            | Font color       | The color of the text displayed in the element                                                    |
|            | Background       | The background of the text displayed in the element                                               |
|            | Background color | The background color of the text displayed in the element                                         |
|            | Frame thickness  | Element frame thickness                                                                           |
|            | Frame color      | Element border color                                                                              |
| Behavior   | Visibility       | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element. |
| Data       | Variable         | A variable is bound to the parameter to store values                                              |
|            | Data type        | Selecting the data type of the bound variable: INT and BOOL                                       |

| Group         | Parameter       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|               |                 | If a Boolean variable type is selected, the element's drop-down list can contain only two lines.<br>If an integer variable type is selected, the drop-down list can contain a maximum of 128 rows. |
|               | Row list        | In tabular form, the variable values and their corresponding names, which will be displayed in the element's drop-down list                                                                        |
| Different     | Name            | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor                                                                                                                |
| Input control | Disable editing | If set to <b>Yes</b> , the value of the bound variable can only be viewed, the input option will not be available. Otherwise, entering a value in the element overwrites the variable value        |

To add a new line to an element's drop-down list, follow these steps:

1. Double-click the **Dynamic box** element in the screen editor.
2. In the window that opens, right-click on one of the rows in the table.
3. Select **Insert row below**.



**Example:**

Table 7.6 List of lines

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| 0 | Stop  |
| 1 | Start |
| 2 | Pause |

### 7.7.5 REAL/INT input/output

The **REAL/INT input/output** element is intended for inputting and displaying the value of an integer or floating-point variable on the visualization screen.

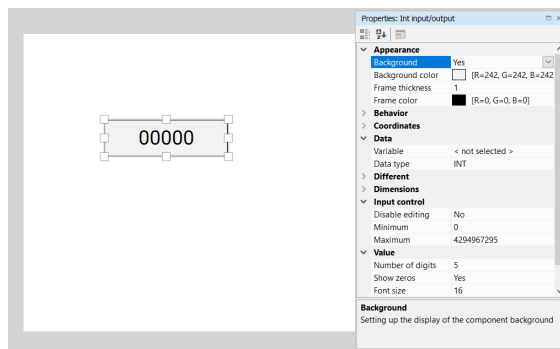


Fig. 7.1 Input/Output int

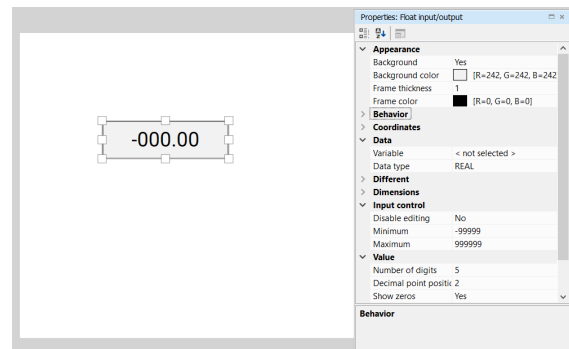


Fig. 7.2 Input/Output float

### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions, and set the parameters and data on the properties panel.

#### Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen.
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

#### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.



#### NOTE

If the output variable is outside the limits specified in the **Minimum / Maximum** parameters, then the element on the device will display the current state of the variable and highlight the frame of this element in red.

#### Configuring Properties

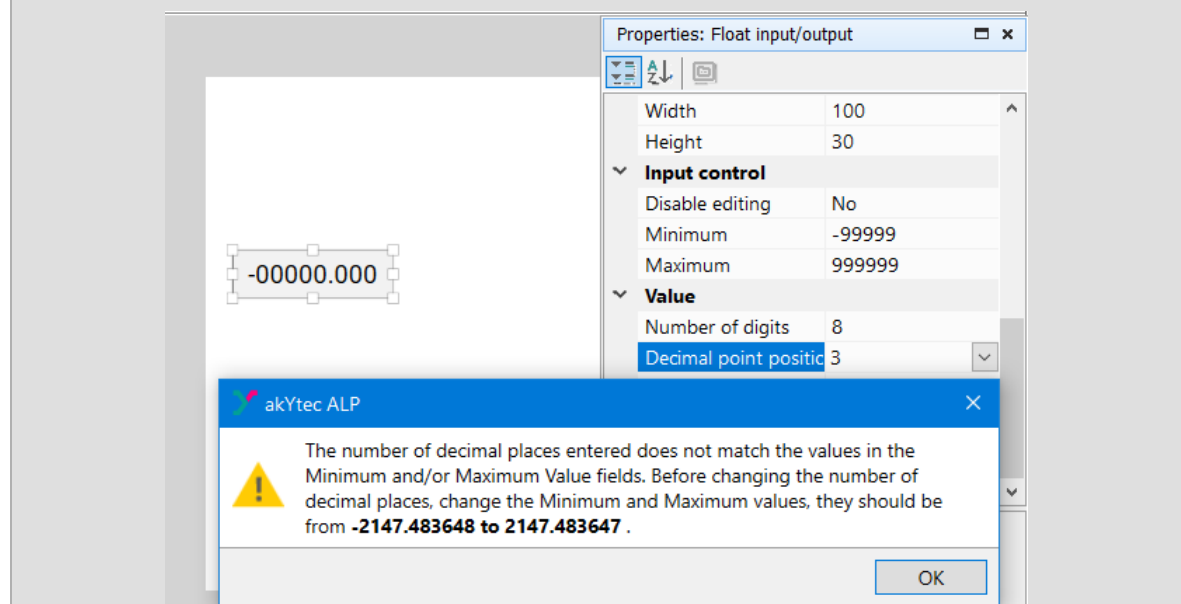
| Group      | Parameter               | Description                                                 | Additional Options |
|------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Appearance | <b>Background</b>       | The background of the text displayed in the element         |                    |
|            | <b>Background color</b> | The background color of the text displayed in the element   |                    |
|            | <b>Frame thickness</b>  | Element frame thickness                                     |                    |
|            | <b>Frame color</b>      | Element border color                                        |                    |
| Data       | <b>Variable</b>         | A variable is bound to the parameter                        |                    |
|            | <b>Data type</b>        | To input/output an integer value, specify the Integer type. |                    |

| Group         | Parameter                                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 | Additional Options                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Value         | <b>Number of digits</b>                                                                   | The number of digits displayed in the element                                                                                                                                               | When selecting a float variable:<br>Cannot be less than or equal to the value of <b>Decimal point position</b> .                                                                                                                                                             |
|               | <b>Decimal point position</b><br>(setting available only when selecting a float variable) | The number of digits in the fractional part of the value displayed in the element                                                                                                           | Changing this value may require adjusting the <b>Maximum</b> and <b>Minimum</b> values. (See example after the table)                                                                                                                                                        |
|               | <b>Show zeros</b>                                                                         | Setting up the display of trailing zeros                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|               | <b>Font size</b>                                                                          | The size of the text displayed in the element:<br>16, 32, 48                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|               | <b>Font color</b>                                                                         | The color of the text displayed in the element                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|               | <b>Alignment</b>                                                                          | Alignment of the text displayed in an element                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Input control | <b>Disable editing</b>                                                                    | If set to <b>Yes</b> , the value of the bound variable can only be viewed, the input option will not be available. Otherwise, entering a value in the element overwrites the variable value |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|               | <b>Minimum</b>                                                                            | Minimum value to enter in an element                                                                                                                                                        | When selecting a float variable:<br>The limit for the value is calculated using the formula:<br>$2147483648 / 10^{\text{Number of Decimal Places}}$<br>Changing this value may require adjusting the <b>Number of Decimal Places</b> property. (See example after the table) |
|               | <b>Maximum</b>                                                                            | Maximum value for input in element                                                                                                                                                          | When selecting a float variable:<br>The limit for the value is calculated using the formula:<br>$2147483647 / 10^{\text{Number of Decimal Places}}$<br>Changing this value may require adjusting the <b>Number of</b>                                                        |

| Group              | Parameter         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Additional Options                                                                  |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                    |                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>Decimal Places</b> property.<br>(See example after the table)                    |
| <b>Coordinates</b> | <b>X</b>          | Position value of the element along the X-axis.<br>The element position is determined by the coordinates of the top-left corner. Coordinate counting starts at 0 and proceeds from left to right; the final value is determined by the element dimensions and screen width.  | Coordinates can be set by moving the object across the screen.                      |
|                    | <b>Y</b>          | Position value of the element along the Y-axis.<br>The element position is determined by the coordinates of the top-left corner. Coordinate counting starts at 0 and proceeds from top to bottom; the final value is determined by the element dimensions and screen height. |                                                                                     |
| <b>Behavior</b>    | <b>Visibility</b> | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                     |
| <b>Different</b>   | <b>Name</b>       | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |
| <b>Dimensions</b>  | <b>Width</b>      | Width of the element along the X-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Element dimensions can be set by changing the object boundaries on the screen field |
|                    | <b>Height</b>     | Height of the element along the Y-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                     |

**Example:**

For the **Input/Output float** visualization element with 8 total digits displayed, it is necessary to set 6 decimal places:

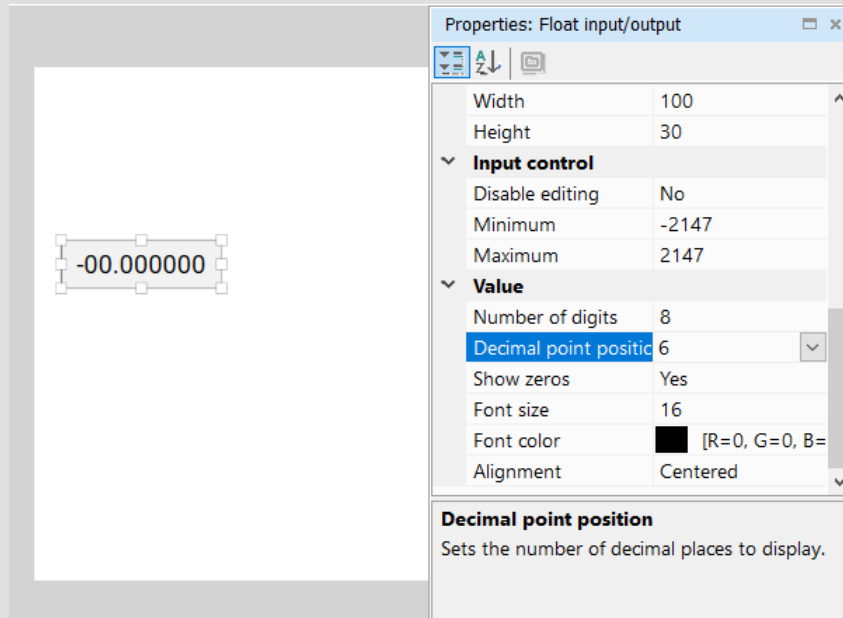


When selecting 6 for the **Number of Decimal Places** property, an error will be displayed indicating the limits of the **Minimum** and **Maximum** values, calculated using the formula:

**Minimum** value =  $-2147483648 / 10^6 = -2147.483648$

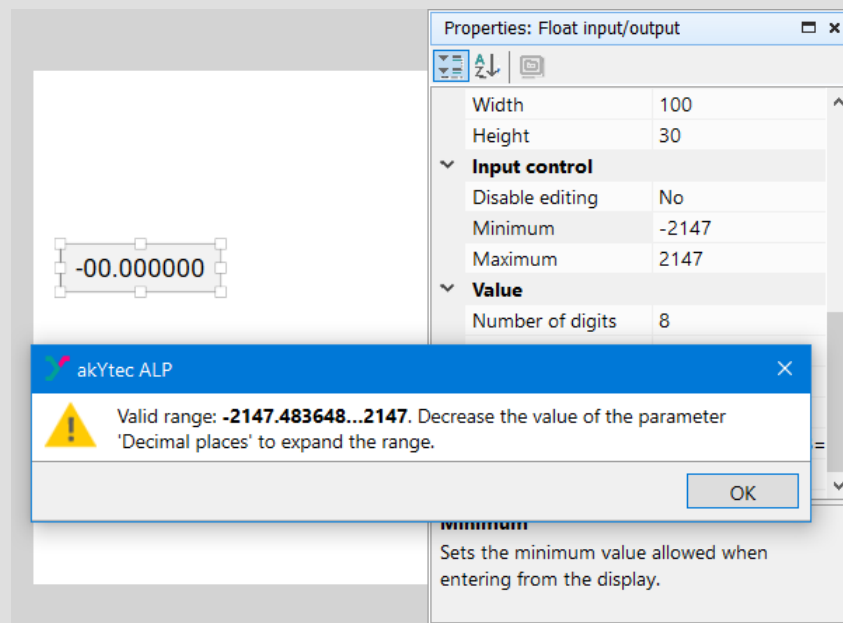
**Maximum** value =  $2147483647 / 10^6 = 2147.483647$

Enter the **Minimum** and **Maximum** values within the specified range, and select 6 for the **Number of Decimal Places** property:



The value has changed; the visualization element now displays 6 decimal places.

When attempting to change the **Minimum** or **Maximum** value to a value outside the range calculated by the formula above, an error message will be displayed:



The **Number of Decimal Places** property and the **Minimum** and **Maximum** values are interrelated.



#### NOTE

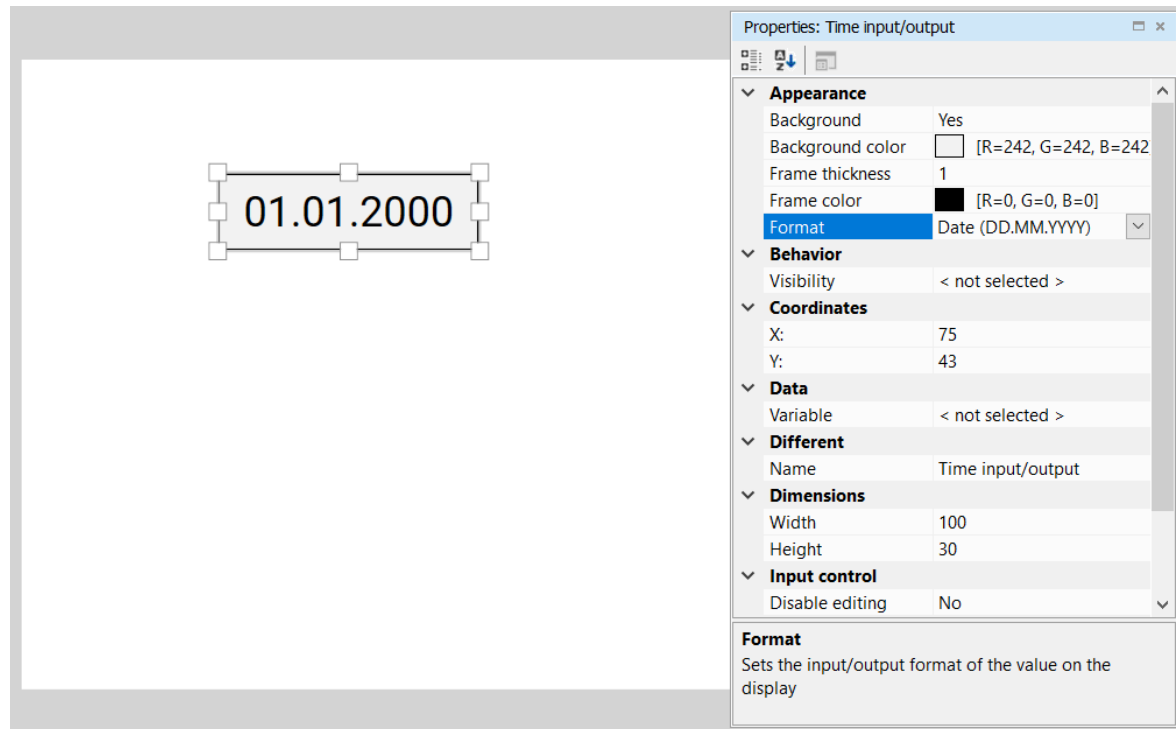
If the output variable exceeds the boundaries specified in the **Minimum** / **Maximum** parameters, the device will display the current state of the variable and highlight the element border in red.

### 7.7.6 Time input/output

The **Time input/output** element is used to input and display the date and time value on the visualization screen. An integer variable is used to store the date and time value, which stores the number of seconds since 00:00:00 January 01, 2000.

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions, and set the parameters and data on the properties panel.



#### Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

#### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

#### Parameters

| Group      | Parameter        | Description                                               |
|------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance | Background       | The background of the text displayed in the element       |
|            | Background color | The background color of the text displayed in the element |
|            | Frame thickness  | Element frame thickness                                   |
|            | Frame color      | Element border color                                      |

| Group                | Parameter              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                      | <b>Format</b>          | Select from the drop-down list the format for displaying the date and time. Format notations:<br>– <b>ss</b> – seconds;<br>– <b>mm</b> – minutes;<br>– <b>hh</b> – hours;<br>– <b>DD</b> – day;<br>– <b>MM</b> – month;<br>– <b>YYYY</b> – year. |
| <b>Behavior</b>      | <b>Visibility</b>      | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Data</b>          | <b>Variable</b>        | A variable is bound to the parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Input control</b> | <b>Disable editing</b> | If set to <b>Yes</b> , the value of the bound variable can only be viewed, the input option will not be available. Otherwise, entering a value in the element overwrites the variable value                                                      |
| <b>Value</b>         | <b>Font size</b>       | The size of the text displayed in the element: 16, 32, 48                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                      | <b>Font color</b>      | The color of the text displayed in the element                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                      | <b>Alignment</b>       | Alignment of the text displayed in an element                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Different</b>     | <b>Name</b>            | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor                                                                                                                                                              |

#### 7.7.7 Input/output of IP address

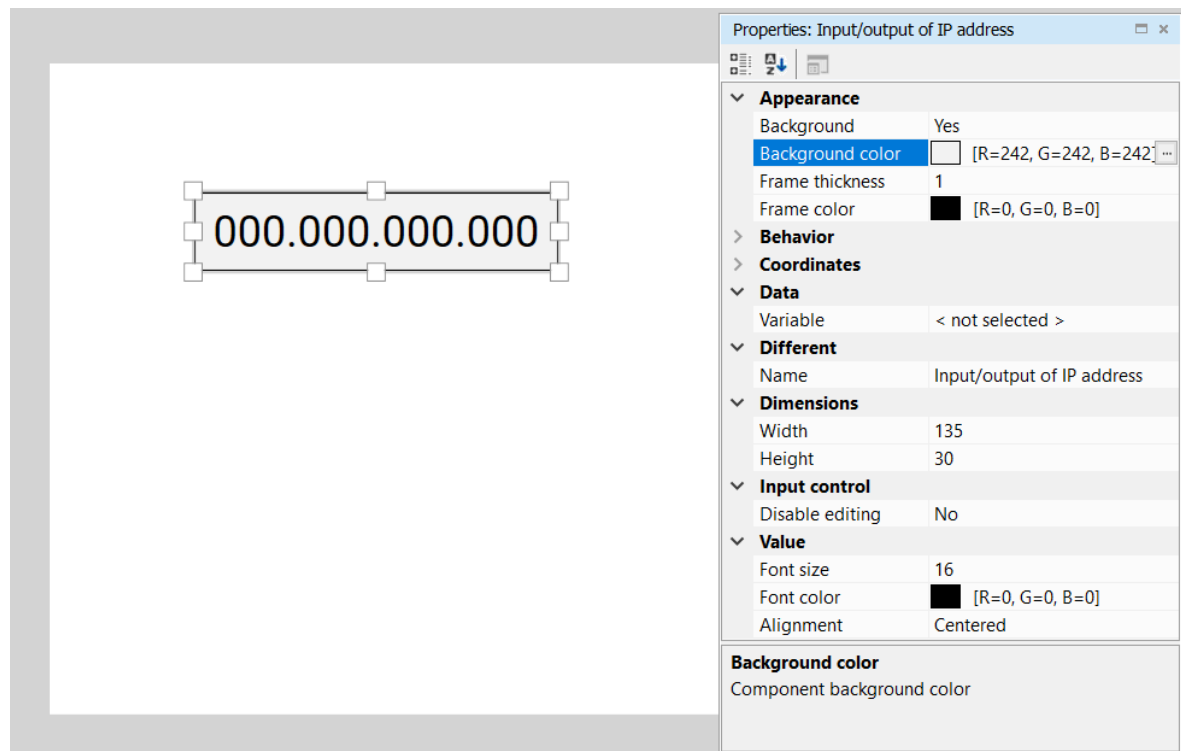
The **Input/output of IP address** element is used to enter and display the IP address (IPv4) value on the visualization screen. An integer variable is used to store the IP address value, the value of which is calculated using the formula:

$$int = o1 * 256^3 + o2 * 256^2 + o3 * 256^1 + o4 * 256^0,$$

where *int* is the value of an integer variable;  
*o1*, *o2*, *o3*, *o4* – IP address octets.

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions, and set the parameters and data on the properties panel.



### Coordinates

The element's location is determined by the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the element across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

### Parameters

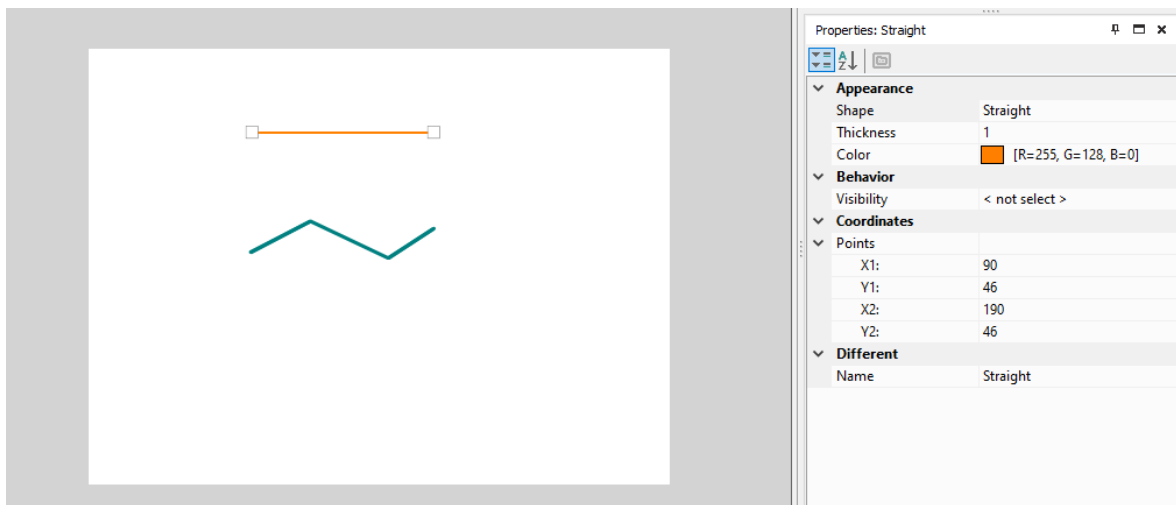
| Group         | Parameter        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance    | Background       | The background of the text displayed in the element                                                                                                                                         |
|               | Background color | The background color of the text displayed in the element                                                                                                                                   |
|               | Frame thickness  | Element frame thickness                                                                                                                                                                     |
|               | Frame color      | Element border color                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Behavior      | Visibility       | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element                                                                                            |
| Data          | Variable         | A variable is bound to the parameter                                                                                                                                                        |
| Input control | Disable editing  | If set to <b>Yes</b> , the value of the bound variable can only be viewed, the input option will not be available. Otherwise, entering a value in the element overwrites the variable value |
| Value         | Font size        | Size of text displayed in element: 16, 32, 48                                                                                                                                               |

| Group     | Parameter  | Description                                                                         |
|-----------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | Font color | The color of the text displayed in the element                                      |
|           | Alignment  | Alignment of the text displayed in an element                                       |
| Different | Name       | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor |

### 7.7.8 Line

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions and set the parameters on the properties panel.



#### Coordinates

The location of the straight line is determined by two points, the coordinates of which along the X and Y axes are specified in the properties panel or by moving the points across the screen. The coordinates along both axes start from 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

The location of the broken line is determined by four points.

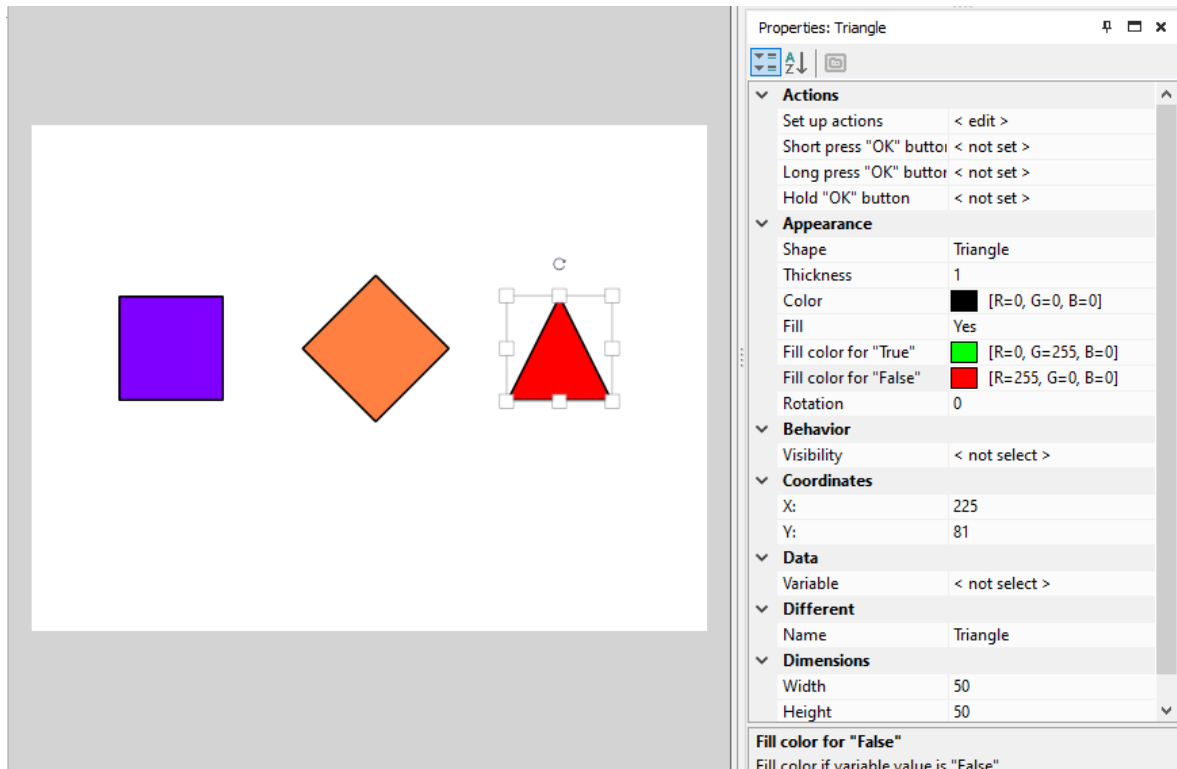
#### Parameters

| Group      | Parameter  | Description                                                                                      |
|------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Appearance | Shape      | Display line shape: straight, polyline                                                           |
|            | Thickness  | Line thickness                                                                                   |
|            | Color      | Element color                                                                                    |
| Behavior   | Visibility | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element |
| Different  | Name       | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor              |

### 7.7.9 Polygon

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions and set the parameters on the properties panel.



#### Coordinates

The polygon's location is determined by the coordinates of its center along the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the object across the screen. The coordinates along both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

#### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

#### Parameters

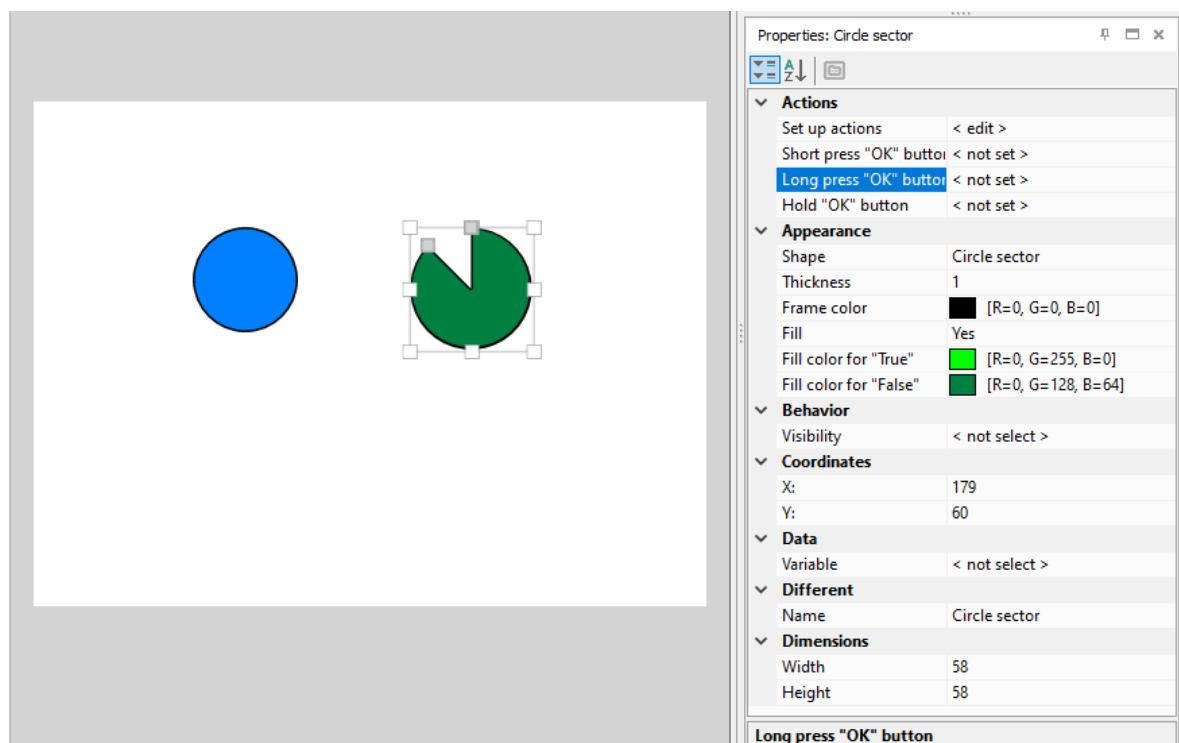
| Group      | Parameter               | Description                                                      |
|------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Actions    | Set up actions          | Select an action to navigate between screens                     |
|            | Short press "OK" button | List of actions performed by short pressing the "OK" button      |
|            | Long press "OK" button  | List of actions performed by long pressing the "OK" button       |
|            | Hold "OK"               | List of actions performed when holding the "OK" button           |
| Appearance | Shape                   | The shape of the displayed polygon: triangle, rectangle, rhombus |

| Group            | Parameter                     | Description                                                                                      |
|------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                  | <b>Thickness</b>              | Polygon outline thickness                                                                        |
|                  | <b>Color</b>                  | Polygon outline color                                                                            |
|                  | <b>Fill</b>                   | Presence of fill in the figure                                                                   |
|                  | <b>Fill color for «True»</b>  | Fill color of the shape if the bound variable is <b>True</b>                                     |
|                  | <b>Fill color for «False»</b> | The fill color of the shape if the bound variable is <b>False</b>                                |
|                  | <b>Rotation</b>               | Rotate an element around its center in degrees                                                   |
| <b>Behavior</b>  | <b>Visibility</b>             | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element |
| <b>Data</b>      | <b>Variable</b>               | A variable is bound to the parameter                                                             |
| <b>Different</b> | <b>Name</b>                   | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor              |

### 7.7.10 Circle

#### Setting up properties

For correct display on the device screen, you should specify the location coordinates, element dimensions and set the parameters on the properties panel.



#### Coordinates

The location of the circle is determined by the coordinates of its center along the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the object across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;

- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

### Dimensions

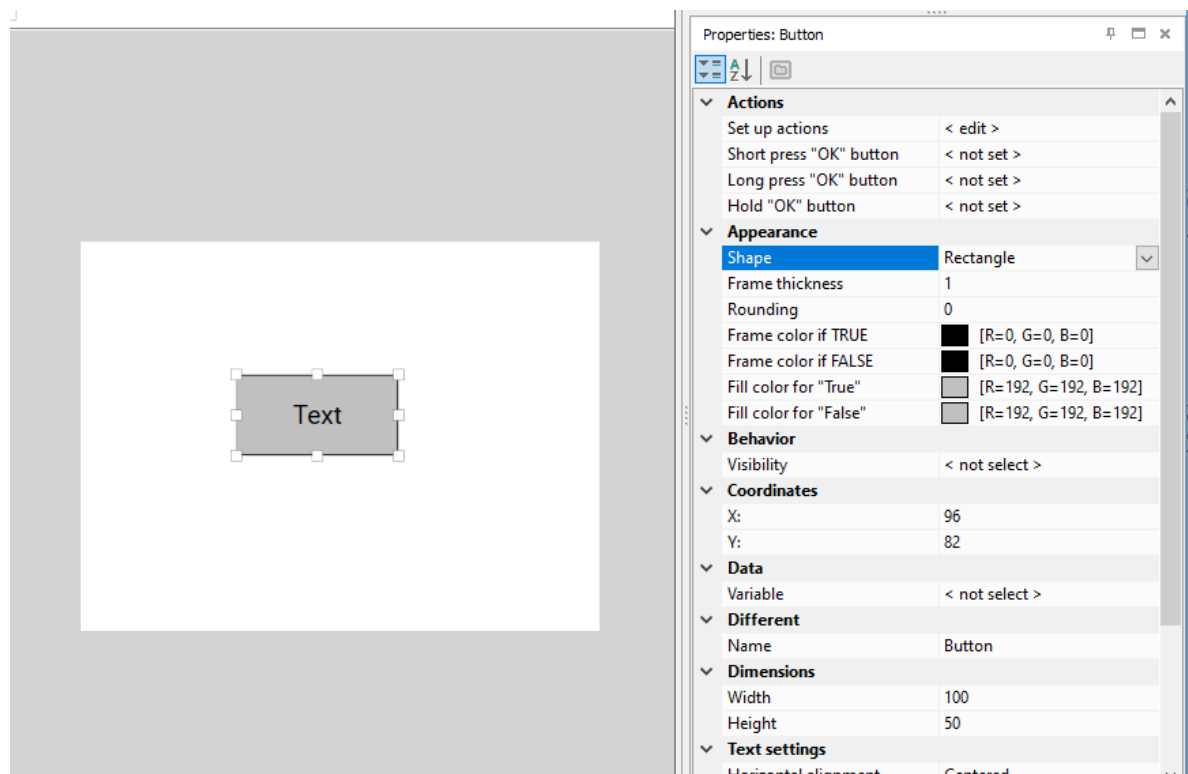
The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

### Parameters

| Group             | Parameter                      | Description                                                                                       |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Actions</b>    | <b>Set up actions</b>          | Select an action to navigate between screens                                                      |
|                   | <b>Short press "OK" button</b> | List of actions performed by short pressing the <b>OK</b> button                                  |
|                   | <b>Long press "OK" button</b>  | List of actions performed by long pressing the <b>OK</b> button                                   |
|                   | <b>Hold "OK" button</b>        | List of actions performed when holding the <b>OK</b> button                                       |
| <b>Appearance</b> | <b>Shape</b>                   | The shape of the displayed circle: circle, circle sector                                          |
|                   | <b>Thickness</b>               | Thickness of the outline of the figure                                                            |
|                   | <b>Frame color</b>             | Color of the outline of the figure                                                                |
|                   | <b>Filling</b>                 | Presence of fill in the figure                                                                    |
|                   | <b>Fill color for "True"</b>   | The fill color of the shape if the bound variable is <b>True</b>                                  |
|                   | <b>Fill color for "False"</b>  | The fill color of the shape if the bound variable is <b>False</b>                                 |
| <b>Behavior</b>   | <b>Visibility</b>              | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element. |
| <b>Data</b>       | <b>Variable</b>                | A variable is bound to the parameter                                                              |
| <b>Different</b>  | <b>Name</b>                    | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor               |

#### 7.7.11 Button

The **Button** element is designed to switch the state of a Boolean variable.



### Configuring Properties

| Group       | Parameter               | Description                                                                            | Additional features              |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Appearance  | Shape                   | The shape of the button to display: <b>rectangle</b> or <b>circle</b>                  |                                  |
|             | Frame thickness         | Button outline thickness                                                               |                                  |
|             | Rounding                | Rounding the corners of the frame. Available only when the Rectangle shape is selected |                                  |
|             | Frame color if TRUE     | The fill color of the frame if the value of the bound variable is "True"               |                                  |
|             | Frame color if FALSE    | The fill color of the frame if the bound variable is "False"                           |                                  |
|             | Fill color for "True"   | The fill color of the shape if the value of the bound variable is "True"               |                                  |
|             | Fill color for "False"  | The fill color of the shape if the bound variable is "False"                           |                                  |
| Data        | Variable                | A variable is bound to the parameter                                                   |                                  |
| Actions     | Set up actions          | Select an action to navigate between screens                                           |                                  |
|             | Short press "OK" button | List of actions performed by short pressing the "OK" button                            |                                  |
|             | Long press "OK" button  | List of actions performed by long pressing the "OK" button                             |                                  |
|             | Hold "OK" button        | List of actions performed when holding the "OK" button                                 |                                  |
| Coordinates | X                       | Position value of the element along the X-axis. Element position is determined by top- | Coordinates can be set by moving |

| Group         | Parameter            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Additional features                                                                             |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|               |                      | left corner coordinates. Coordinate counting starts at 0 and goes left to right; final value is determined by element dimensions and screen width                                                                                        | the object on the screen field                                                                  |
|               | Y                    | Position value of the element along the Y-axis. Element position is determined by top-left corner coordinates. Coordinate counting starts at 0 and goes top to bottom; final value is determined by element dimensions and screen height |                                                                                                 |
| Text settings | Horizontal alignment | Alignment of the text displayed in the element: left, center, right                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                 |
|               | Vertical alignment   | Alignment of the text displayed in the element: top, center, bottom                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                 |
|               | Font size            | Size of text displayed in element: 16, 32, 48                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                 |
|               | Text "True"          | The text to display when the button is pressed                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                 |
|               | Text "False"         | The text to display when the button is released                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                 |
|               | Text color "True"    | The color of the text displayed when the button is pressed                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                 |
|               | Text color "False"   | The color of the displayed text when the button is released                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                 |
| Behavior      | Visibility           | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which will determine the visibility of the element.                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                 |
| Different     | Name                 | Displayed in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                 |
| Dimensions    | Width                | Width of element along X-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                            | The size of an element can be set by changing the boundaries of the object on the screen field. |
|               | Height               | Height of element along Y-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                 |

#### 7.7.12 Switch

The **Switch** element is designed to control the state of a Boolean variable, as well as to display its current state.

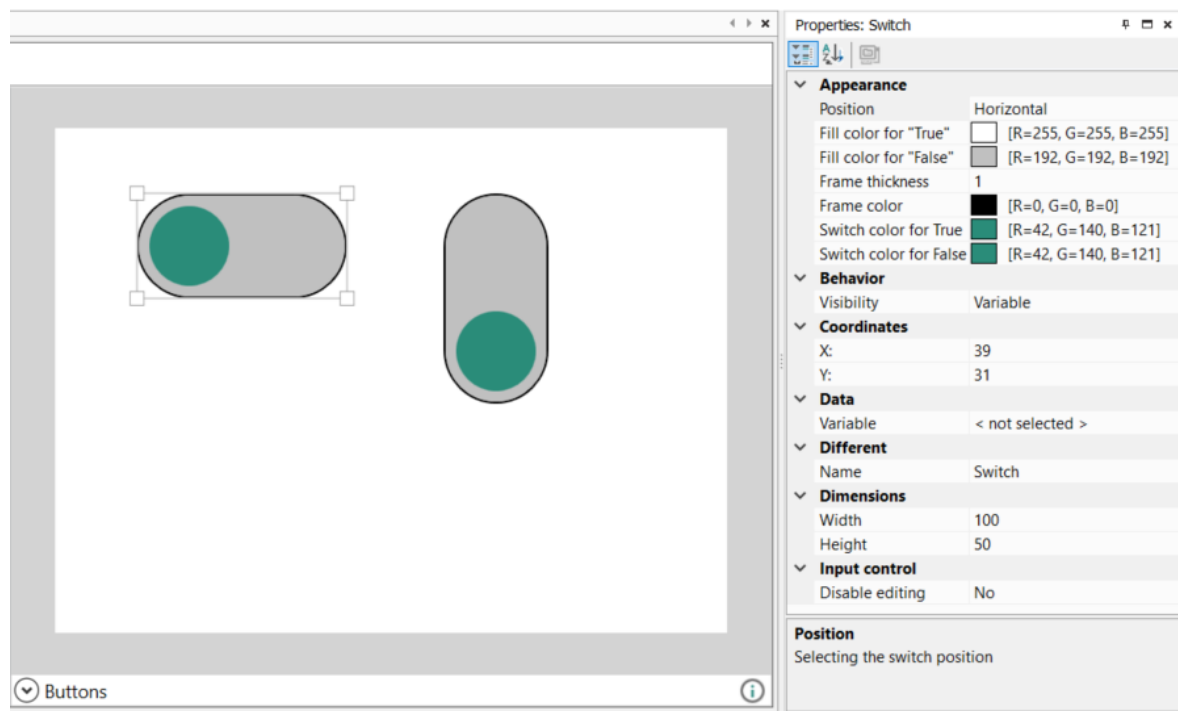


Fig. 7.3 Appearance and Properties of the Switch element

### Coordinates

The location of the button is determined by the coordinates of its center along the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set in the properties panel or by moving the object across the screen. The coordinates for both axes start at 0:

- along the X axis - from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen;
- along the Y axis - from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen.

### Dimensions

The dimensions of an element are determined by the X and Y axes and are set in the properties panel or by changing the boundaries of the element on the screen.

### Properties

To configure the required type of **Switch** element on the device screen, the following properties are available:

| Group      | Parameter              | Description                                      | Additional Options |
|------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Appearance | Position               | Vertical or horizontal switch placement          |                    |
|            | Fill color for "True"  | Fill color of the element if the switch is on    |                    |
|            | Fill color for "False" | Fill color of the element when the switch is off |                    |
|            | Frame thickness        | Element outline thickness                        |                    |
|            | Frame color            | Element outline color                            |                    |
|            | Switch color for True  | The color of the switch when it is on            |                    |
|            | Switch color for False | The color of the switch when it is off           |                    |

| Group         | Parameter       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Additional Options                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data          | Variable        | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Input control | Disable editing | Enabling or disabling the ability to change the switch value from the device screen                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Coordinates   | X               | Position value of the element along the X-axis.<br>Element position is determined by top-left corner coordinates. Coordinate counting starts at 0 and proceeds left to right; final value is determined by element dimensions and screen width  | Coordinates can be set by moving the object on the screen field.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|               | Y               | Position value of the element along the Y-axis.<br>Element position is determined by top-left corner coordinates. Coordinate counting starts at 0 and proceeds top to bottom; final value is determined by element dimensions and screen height |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Behavior      | Visibility      | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which controls the element's visibility                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Different     | Name            | It appears in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Dimensions    | Width           | Width of element along X-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Element dimensions can be set by changing object boundaries on the screen field.<br>Switch proportions are maintained according to the following rules:<br>– horizontal position:<br>Length = Width × 2<br>– vertical position:<br>Length = Width / 2 |
|               | Height          | Height of element along Y-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

### 7.7.13 Switch group

The **Switch group** element is designed to manage parameter lists and display the status of these lists:

- **Radio button** – allows selection of only one parameter from the list.
- **Checkbox** – allows selection of one or multiple parameters from the list.

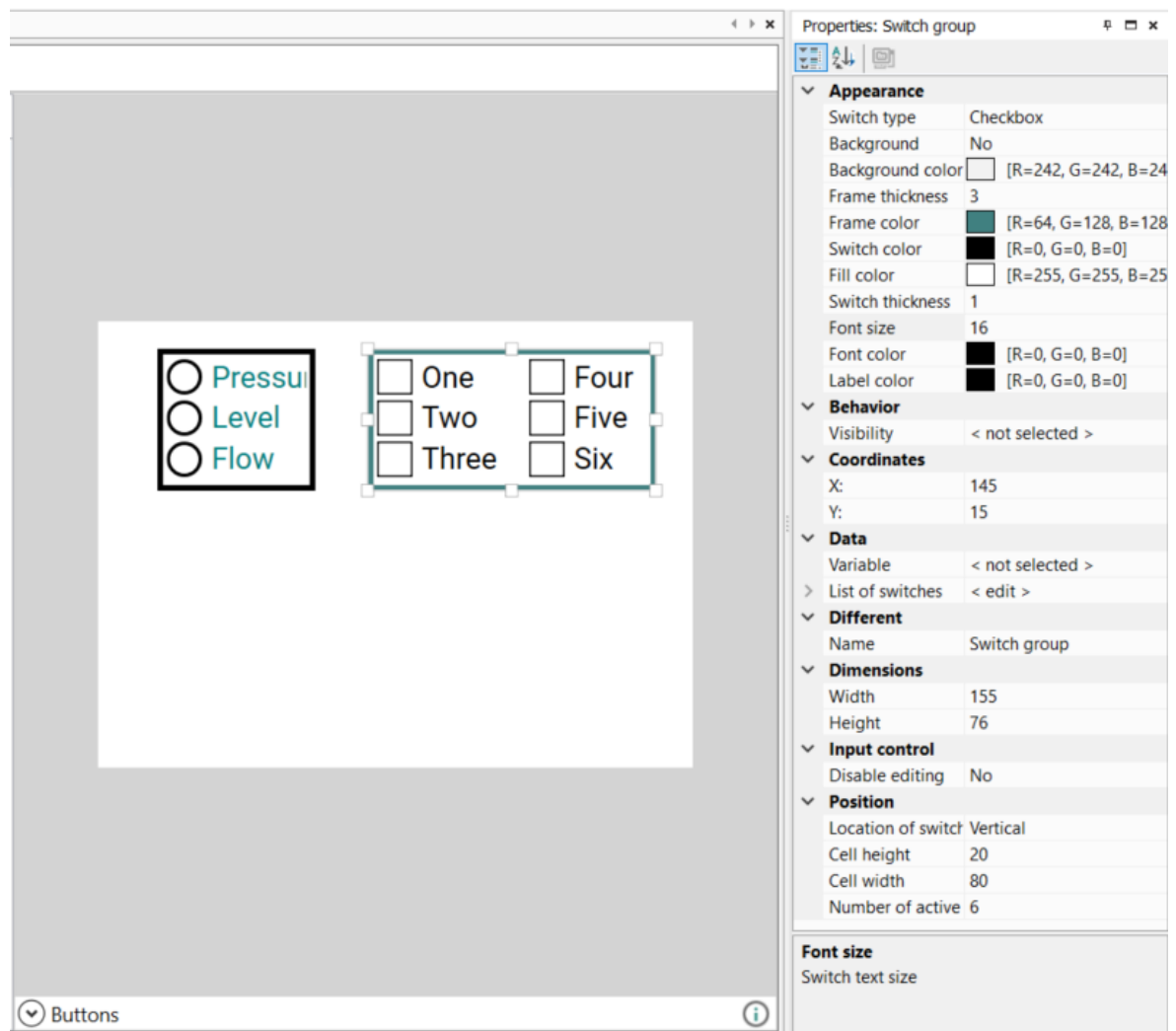
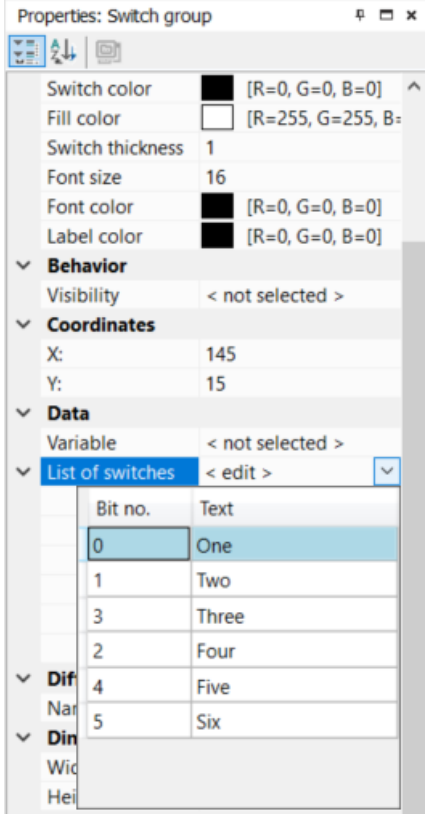


Fig. 7.4 Appearance and Properties of the Switch Group element

### Configuring Properties

| Group      | Parameter        | Description                                                                | Additional Options |
|------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Appearance | Switch type      | Select the switch type: radio button or checkbox                           |                    |
|            | Background       | Presence or absence of a background for the text displayed in the element. |                    |
|            | Background color | The background color of the text displayed in the element                  |                    |
|            | Frame thickness  | Element frame thickness                                                    |                    |
|            | Frame color      | Element frame color                                                        |                    |
|            | Switch color     | Label field border color                                                   |                    |
|            | Fill color       | Radio button/checkbox fill color                                           |                    |
|            | Switch thickness | Label field border thickness                                               |                    |
|            | Font size        | Size of text displayed in element: 16, 32, 48                              |                    |

| Group         | Parameter                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Additional Options                                              |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data          | Font color                          | The color of the text displayed in the element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                 |
|               | Label color                         | The color of the label being set                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                 |
|               | Variable                            | An integer variable is bound to the parameter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                 |
|               | List of switches<br>(max. 32 lines) | <p>The variable's values and their corresponding text to be displayed in the element.<br/>To add rows, click "Edit" and use the context menu of the opened table:</p>  <p>Adding rows to the parameter list is also available on the screen field:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Double-click LMB on the element placed on the screen</li> <li>2. To add rows, use the context menu of the opened table:</li> </ol>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Specify the variable value, as well as text for display in the element</li> </ol> <p>Specify the variable value, as well as text for display in the element</p> |                                                                 |
| Input control | Disable editing                     | <p>Enabling/disabling the ability to interact with the element from the device screen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switching between list parameters (for the radio button element)</li> <li>– Enabling/disabling list parameters (for the checkbox element)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                 |
| Coordinates   | X                                   | <p>Position value of the element along the X-axis.<br/>Element position is determined by top-left corner coordinates.<br/>Coordinate counting starts at 0 and proceeds left to right; final value is</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Coordinates can be set by moving the object on the screen field |

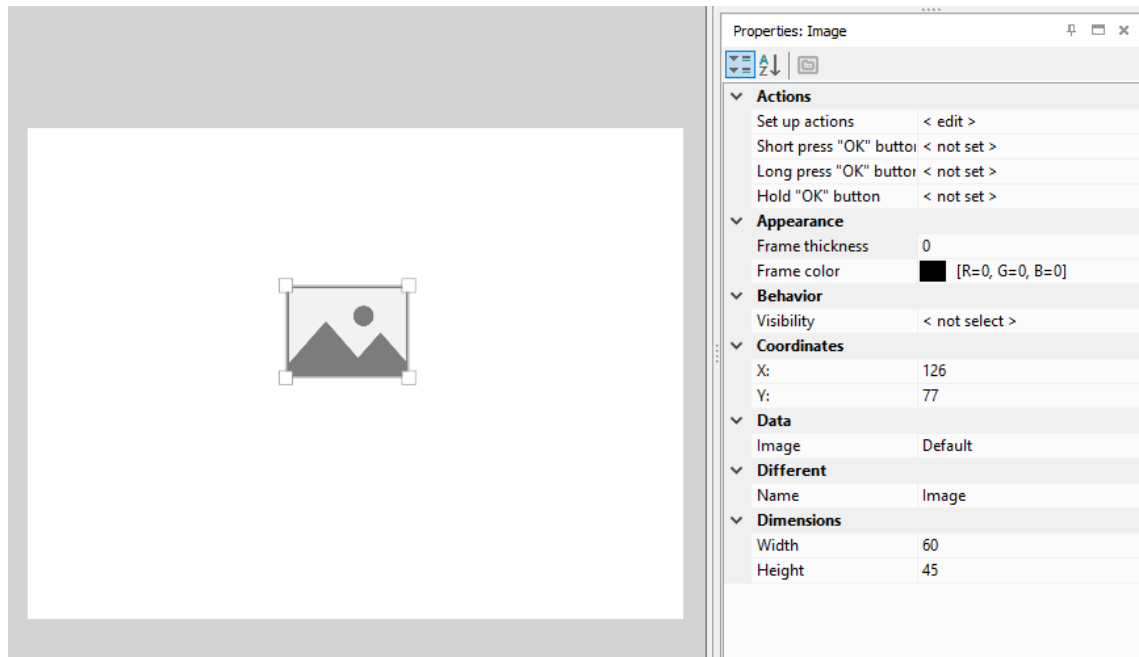
| Group      | Parameter                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Additional Options                                                              |
|------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            |                             | determined by element dimensions and screen width                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                 |
|            | Y                           | Position value of the element along the Y-axis.<br>Element position is determined by top-left corner coordinates.<br>Coordinate counting starts at 0 and proceeds top to bottom; final value is determined by element dimensions and screen height |                                                                                 |
| Behavior   | Visibility                  | A Boolean variable is bound to the parameter, which controls the element's visibility                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                 |
| Position   | Location of switches        | Selection of the list layout: horizontal or vertical                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                 |
|            | Cell height                 | The height of the cell for arranging list items                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                 |
|            | Cell width                  | The width of the cell for arranging list items                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                 |
|            | Number of active checkboxes | Restricts the simultaneous selection of multiple parameters from the list. The limit cannot exceed the number of rows added to the Switch List. Available only when the switch type "Checkbox" is selected.                                        |                                                                                 |
| Different  | Name                        | It appears in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                 |
| Dimensions | Width                       | Width of element along X-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Element dimensions can be set by changing object boundaries on the screen field |
|            | Height                      | Height of element along Y-axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                 |

#### 7.7.14 Image

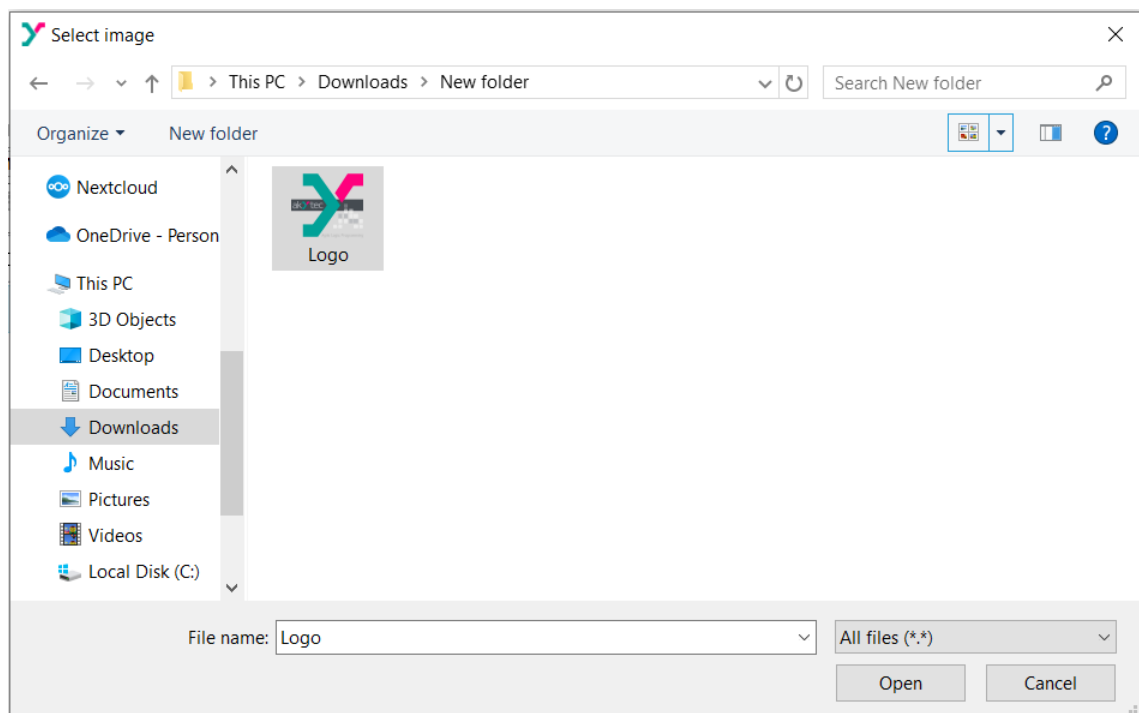
##### Adding a Custom Image to a Project

To add a custom image:

1. Place an **Image** object on the workspace.



2. Double-click the placed object with the left mouse button. The image selection window will open.

**NOTE**

Supported file types: \*.jpg, \*.jpeg, \*.jpe, \*.bmp.

The maximum image size is limited by the device's screen resolution. Images can be scaled down within the ALP editor if necessary.

3. Select an image and click **Open**.

**Configuring Properties**

To ensure the image displays correctly on the device screen, configure its location, dimensions, and other parameters in the properties panel.

## Coordinates

The element's position is determined by the coordinates of its center along the X and Y axes. Coordinates can be set in the properties panel or by dragging the object on the screen. The coordinate origin (0,0) is the top-left corner:

- **X-axis:** Increases from left to right. The maximum value is constrained by the element's size and the screen width.
- **Y-axis:** Increases from top to bottom. The maximum value is constrained by the element's size and the screen height.

## Dimensions

The element's size is defined by its width (X-axis) and height (Y-axis). Dimensions can be set numerically in the properties panel or adjusted visually by dragging the element's boundaries on the screen.

## Parameters

| Group             | Parameter               | Description                                                                                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Appearance</b> | <b>Frame thickness</b>  | Sets the thickness of the image's border.                                                                      |
|                   | <b>Frame color</b>      | Sets the color of the image's border.                                                                          |
| <b>Behavior</b>   | <b>Visibility</b>       | Bind a Boolean variable to control the element's visibility. The element is visible when the variable is TRUE. |
| <b>Data</b>       | <b>Image</b>            | Selects the image file to display.                                                                             |
| <b>Different</b>  | <b>Name</b>             | The name displayed for this element in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor. |
| <b>Actions</b>    | <b>Set up actions</b>   | Select an action to execute, such as navigating to another screen.                                             |
|                   | <b>Short press "OK"</b> | Defines actions triggered by a short press of the <b>OK</b> button.                                            |
|                   | <b>Long press "OK"</b>  | Defines actions triggered by a long press of the <b>OK</b> button.                                             |
|                   | <b>Hold "OK"</b>        | Defines actions triggered by holding down the <b>OK</b> button.                                                |



### NOTE

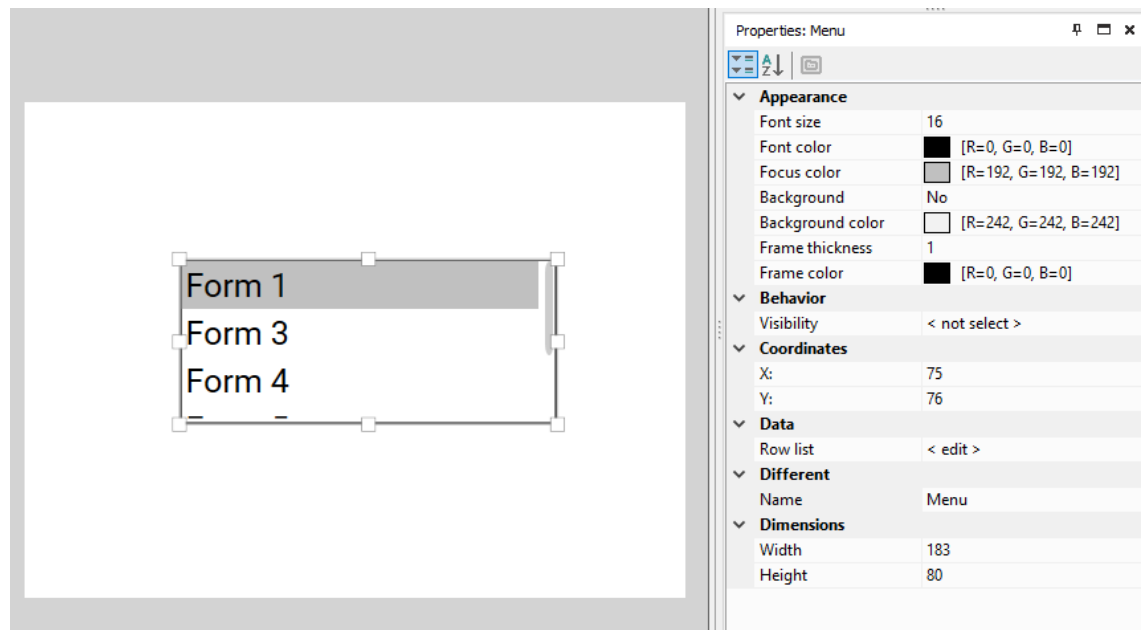
If the same image file is linked to multiple elements, it only occupies space once in the user visualization ROM. This is reflected in the **User visualization ROM** indicator in the status bar.

### 7.7.15 Menu

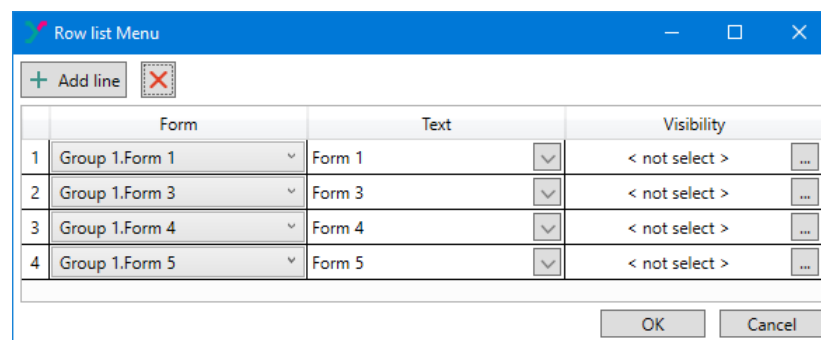
The **Menu** element is designed for navigation between visualization screens. Each menu item is linked to a specific screen.

To add a **Menu** object to a visualization screen:

1. Place a **Menu** object on the workspace.



- Double-click the placed object with the left mouse button (LMB). The line editing window will open.



- Add the required number of menu items (lines).

**NOTE**  
Maximum: 128 lines.

- In the **Screen** column, select the screen to navigate to when the menu item is selected.

**NOTE**  
All project screens except the current one are available for selection.

- The name of the selected screen is automatically displayed in the **Text** column. To change the text, click the marker  located at the end of the row, and enter the text to be displayed for the menu item in the field that opens.
- Set the visibility for each item by binding Boolean variables in the **Visibility** column.
- Click the **OK** button to confirm and close the window.

### Configuring Properties

| Group      | Parameter  | Description                                           | Additional features |
|------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Appearance | Font size  | Size of the text displayed in the element: 16, 32, 48 |                     |
|            | Font color | Color of the text displayed in the element            |                     |

| Group              | Parameter               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Additional features                                            |
|--------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
|                    | <b>Focus color</b>      | Background color of the focused menu row                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                |
|                    | <b>Text background</b>  | Enables or disables a background behind the text                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                |
|                    | <b>Background color</b> | Color of the text background                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                |
|                    | <b>Frame thickness</b>  | Thickness of the element's border                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                |
|                    | <b>Frame color</b>      | Color of the element's border                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                |
| <b>Data</b>        | <b>Row list</b>         | Opens the line editing window to configure menu items                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                |
| <b>Coordinates</b> | <b>X</b>                | The value of the element's position along the X axis.<br>The location of the element is determined by the coordinates of the upper left corner.<br>The coordinates are counted starting from 0 and going from left to right, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the width of the screen.  | Coordinates can be set by moving the object across the screen. |
|                    | <b>Y</b>                | The value of the element's position along the Y axis.<br>The location of the element is determined by the coordinates of the upper left corner.<br>The coordinates are counted starting from 0 and going from top to bottom, the final value is determined by the size of the element and the height of the screen. |                                                                |
| <b>Behavior</b>    | <b>Visibility</b>       | If you select <b>Yes</b> , the <b>Menu</b> element will have focus after entering the screen.<br>Only one element with the value <b>Focused by default</b> is allowed on a single screen - <b>Yes</b>                                                                                                               |                                                                |
| <b>Different</b>   | <b>Name</b>             | The name displayed for this element in the list of used elements on the left side of the visualization editor.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                |
| <b>Dimensions</b>  | <b>Width</b>            | Element width along the X axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                |
|                    | <b>Height</b>           | Element width along the Y axis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                |

### 7.7.16 Chart

The **Chart** element is designed to display the change in variable values in graphical form on the device screen.

- Up to four variables can be displayed simultaneously (data types – int and float).
- The polling time interval for drawing the chart can be configured (the maximum allowed value is 23h59m59s).
- The polling period is calculated automatically, depends on the maximum value of the x-axis, the width of the **Chart** element, and the border thickness, and must not be less than 1 second.
- The number of slices is determined by the following formula:

*Number of slices = max.  $X / t_{poll}$ , where:*

- max.  $X$  – maximum value of the x-axis;
- $t_{poll}$  – polling time.

**NOTE**

Chart plotting is only available for devices with color LCD. Chart operation in simulation mode is not supported.

To add a graph to the screen, select the  **Chart** element in the Library Box and place it in the working area.

The coordinate axes will appear with the scale and grid displayed. The X axis is the time axis, the Y axis is the axis of variable values (uint or float).

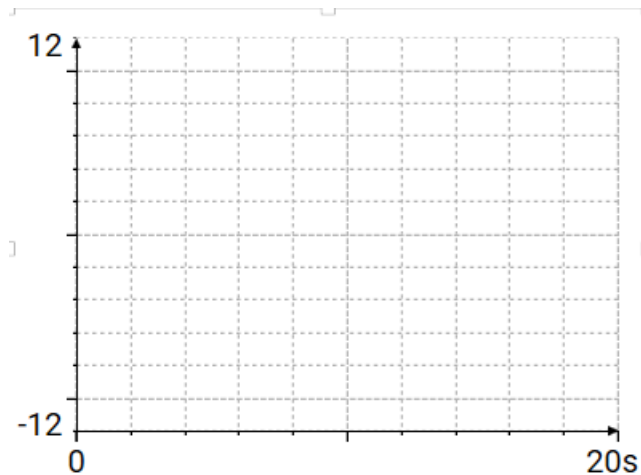


Fig. 7.5 Coordinate axes with default values

To configure parameters and add variables, use the **Property Box**:

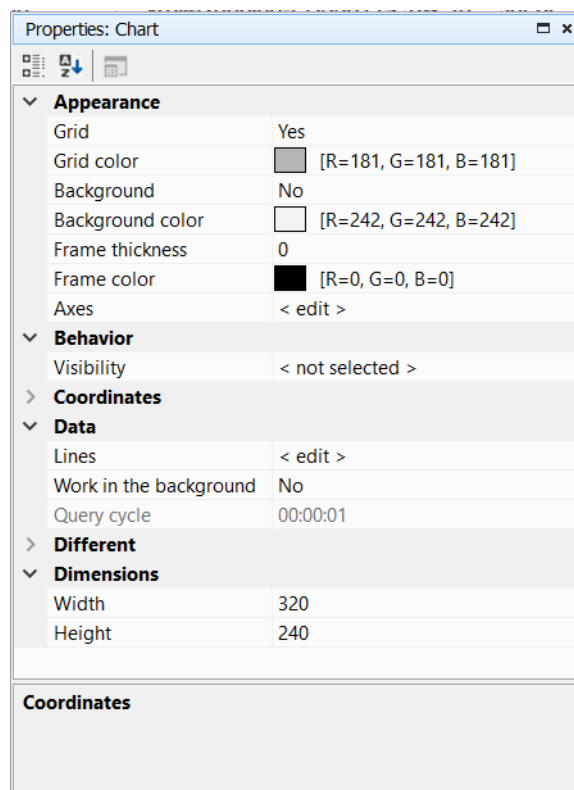


Fig. 7.6 Graph Properties Window

Customize the **Appearance** of the graph:

- presence and color of the grid

- presence and color of background
- presence, thickness and color of the frame
- axes:

Select the Axes line and left-click on <Edit> and then on the button that appears . The Axes Graph window will open:

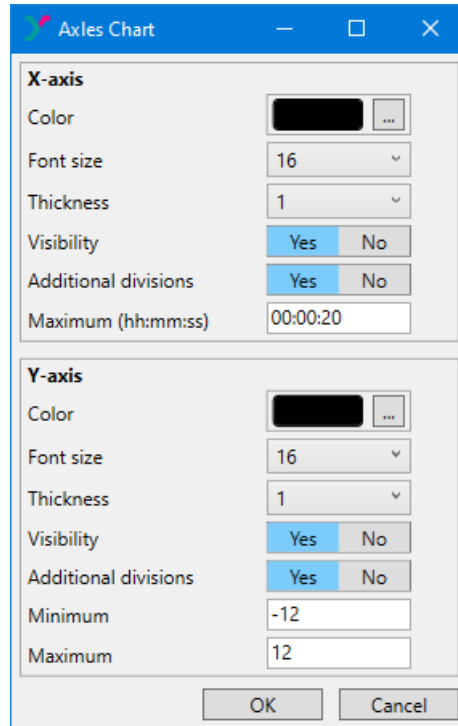


Fig. 7.7 Axis Window

If necessary, adjust the color and thickness of the axes, font size, visibility of the axes and additional tick marks. Enter the desired maximum value of the X-axis in the format hh:mm:ss. The maximum allowed value is 23:59:59. The default value is 20 seconds.



**NOTE**

Minimum value of X axis = 0 – non-editable parameter.

Enter the minimum and maximum values for the Y-axis. Default value: -12, 12.

If you enter an incorrect value, an error message will appear and the OK button will become inactive:

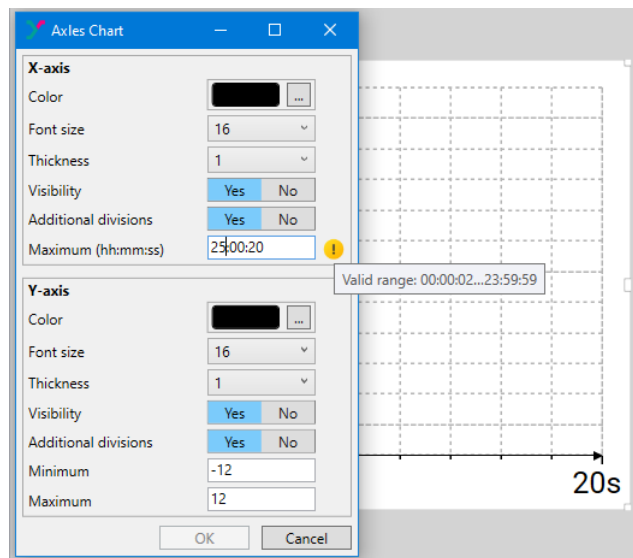


Fig. 7.8 Data entry error

To add variables to the chart, in the **Data** section of the Graph Properties window, select the Lines line and left-click on <Edit> and then on the button that appears , or double-click on the chart field. The List of lines Chart window will open:

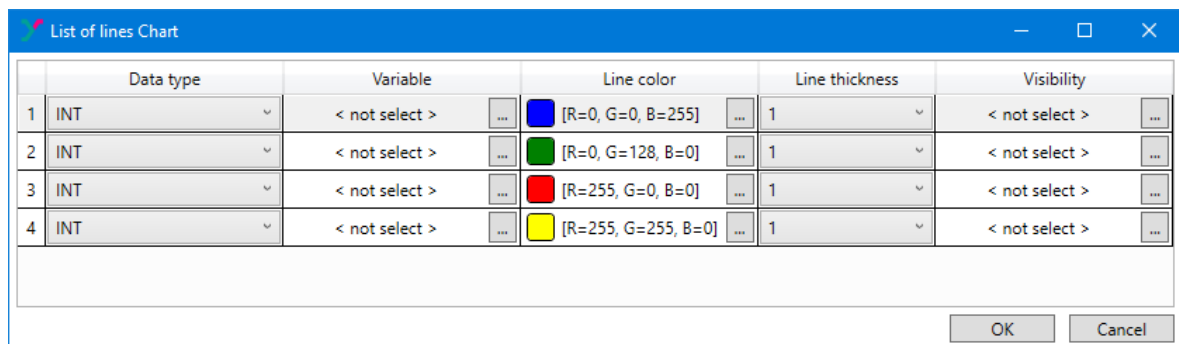


Fig. 7.9 List of lines – Chart window

In the window that opens, select:

- data type – integer / floating point
- variable
- color and thickness of the line
- visibility – it is possible to select a Boolean type variable from the Standard Variable Tables category.

#### NOTE

Maximum number of variables on a graph - 4.

In order to easily show the number of added variables and the settings for the lines' appearance on the chart, the lines are displayed with an offset along the Y axis relative to each other.

The Run in background (Yes/No) option in the **Data** section affects the saving of data when switching to another screen.

The polling period is a non-editable parameter, it depends on the maximum value of the X-axis, the width of the Chart element and the thickness of the frame.

#### NOTE

The polling period cannot be less than 1 second.

The position of the chart is determined by the coordinates of the upper left corner along the X and Y axes. The coordinates are set by moving the object across the screen. If you need a precise position

of the graph on the device screen, set the coordinates of the Property Box in the **Coordinates** section.

If necessary, in the **Behavior** section, configure the visibility of the entire graph depending on the Boolean variable.

You can change the name of a chart in the **Different** section of the Property Box.

To scale the chart, move the mouse over the corner or side marker holding down the left mouse button or set the required graph size on the screen. You can also change the size in the **Dimensions** section: the width and height are set in pixels.

After uploading the program the device screen will display a graph with the added variables:

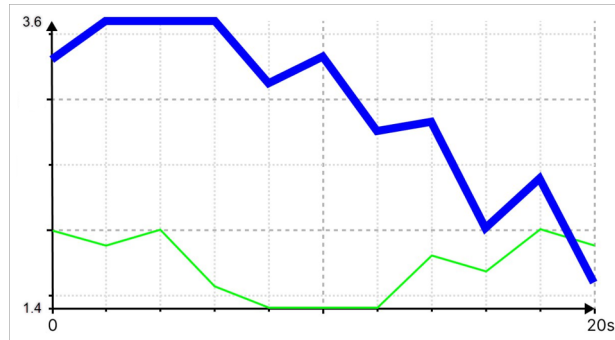


Fig. 7.10 Chart on the device screen



#### NOTE

If the parameter value goes beyond the minimum or maximum value of the Y axis on the device screen, the line on the chart will continue to move along the corresponding boundary.

If a variable added to the graph is deleted from the project, an information window will appear:

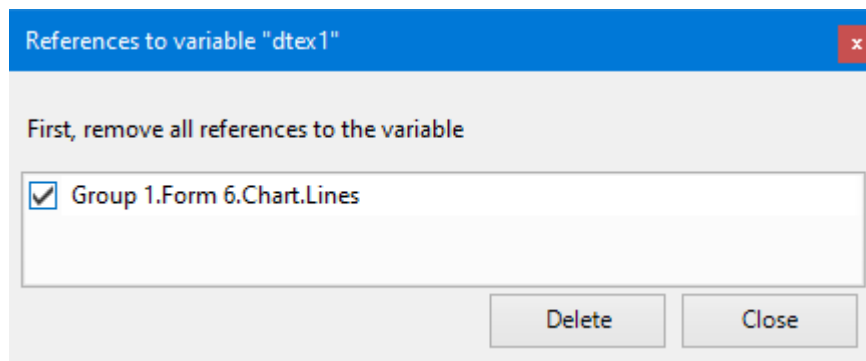


Fig. 7.11 Information window

If you select **Delete** in the Lines Graph window, the variable binding is deleted.

## 8 Device

This section describes the operating functions and configuration of the device:

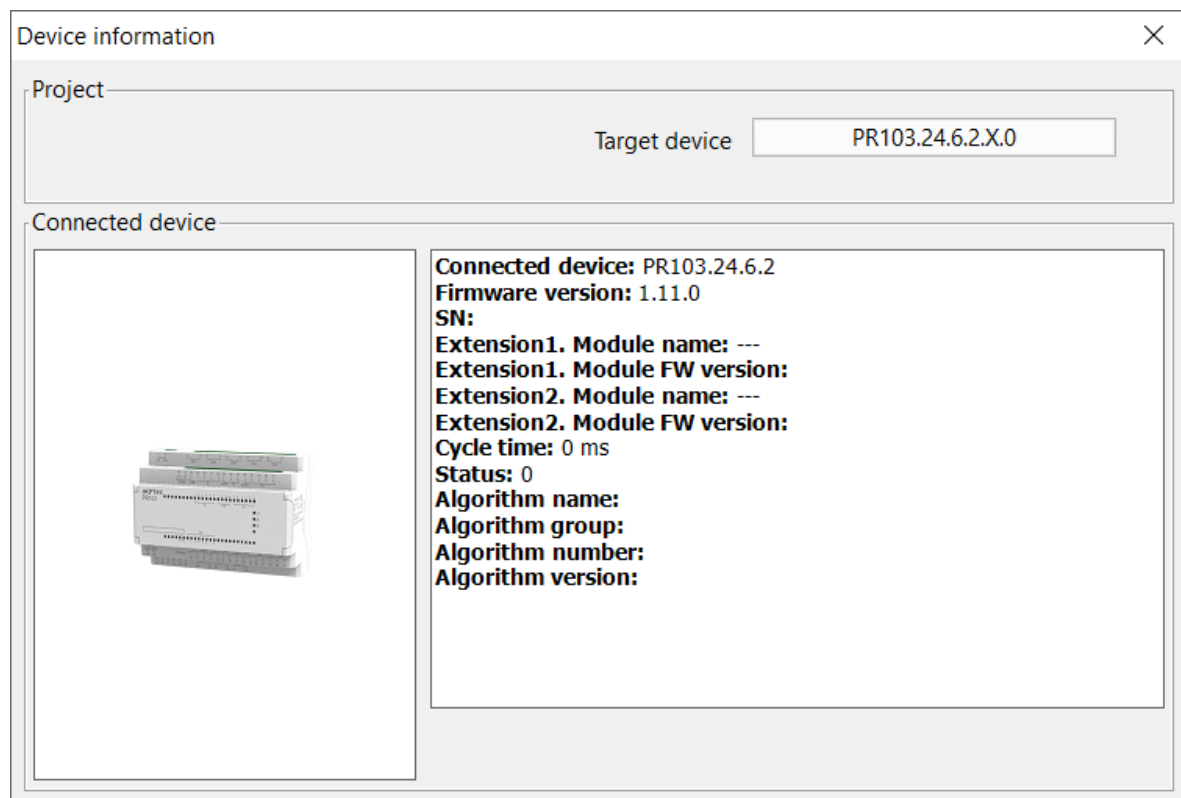
- Device information
- Cycle time
- Firmware update
- Calibration

### 8.1 Device information

To view information about the software, the target device and the connected device use the menu

item **Device** → **Information...** or the icon  in the toolbar.

A window containing information about the connected device appears:



The window **Device Information** contains the following information:

**Target device** – the device for which the project was created

**Connected device** – the information about the device connected to the PC

Alternatively, the type of each output can be manually changed in **Property Box** in accordance with the hardware.

#### Information about the device on the new hardware platform

For devices on the new platform, the information displayed in the window differs.

Project information:

- **Selected device model** - the model and modification of the device selected when creating the project.

Information about the connected device:

- **Device name** – model and modification of the connected device
- **Firmware version** – firmware version of the connected device
- **S/N** – unique device identifier
- **PRM Slot. Module name** – model of the extension module, connected to the device

- **PRM Slot. Module Firmware Version** – firmware version of the extension module, connected to the device.

## 8.2 Cycle time

Cycle time is the time it takes to complete the operating cycle of the device, namely:

- polling the state of the physical inputs of the device and copying their values into memory cells
- program processing
- read/write program network variables
- writing the results of the program to the physical outputs of the device

The default cycle time is **1 ms**. The device adjusts the cycle time depending on the complexity of the program.

Conditions for increasing cycle time:

- the complexity of the algorithm increases (a large number of FBs and macros are involved)
- the program uses a large number of network variables
- the project uses a large number of data controls via the device display

The user cannot set the cycle time. If the device is equipped with a display, the current cycle time can be viewed in the system menu of the device. If the device is connected to a PC, the cycle time is shown in the Device Information window.

## 8.3 Firmware update / repair

If a new ALP version includes a new version of the firmware for the connected device or extension module, a prompt appears to update the firmware before uploading a user program to the device. No internet connection is needed. Click **Yes** to start the update.



### NOTE

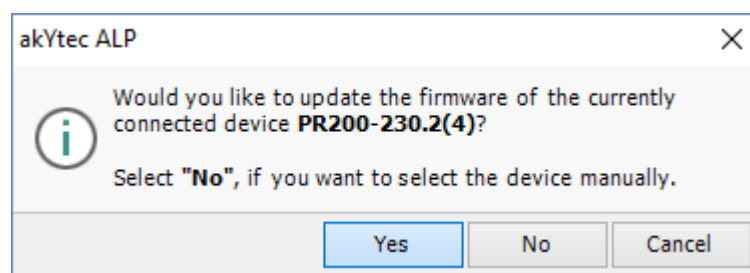
*Ensure the power supply of the device and extension modules (if any) and the safe connection between the PC, the device and the extension modules (if any) during the update process.*

You can also update the firmware manually using the menu item **Device > Firmware update**. This way the firmware can be repaired when the firmware damage is detected (see respective user guide, table “Error indication”).



### NOTE

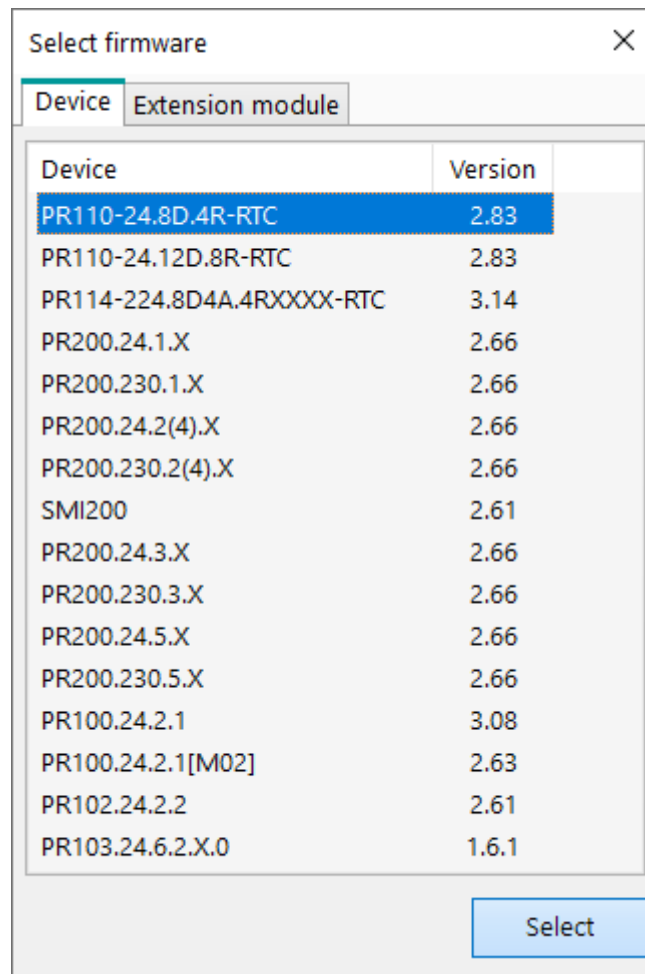
*The user program will not be affected by firmware update.*



If you select **Yes**, the firmware of the currently connected and recognized device will be updated (repaired).

If you select **No**, lists of devices and extension modules will be offered to select from. The opened window has two tabs: **Device** and **Extension Module**. This way a forced firmware update can be made.

Click **Select** to confirm the selection and start the update (repair) process. The message about the update result is shown upon the update completion.



#### Forced firmware update / repair

If the firmware is damaged (see respective user guide, table "Error indication") and device automatic recognition is not possible, a forced firmware update should be used. Proceed as follows:

1. set the device in the forced download mode (see the device user guide)
2. select the menu item **Device > Firmware update**, lists of devices and extension modules will be offered to select from
3. select the device (extension module)
4. click **Select** to confirm the selection and start the update (repair) process.

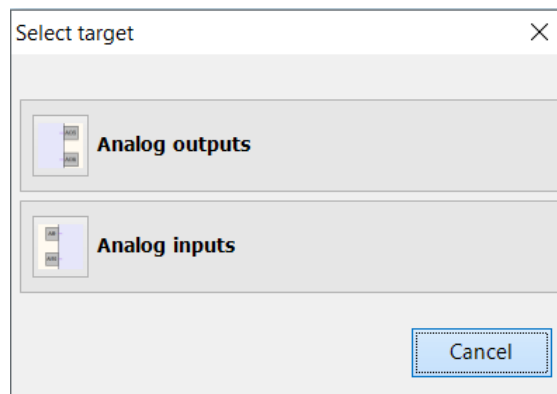
The message about the update result is shown upon the update completion.

If the device and the extension module have incompatible firmware versions and the user program is uploaded to the device without the extension module connected, this may lead to an expansion module error being displayed. To fix the error, use forced firmware update for the expansion module as described, skipping step 1.

#### 8.4 Calibration

Only general information about calibration of analog inputs or outputs is given in this section. For detailed information about calibration refer to the user guide of the device.

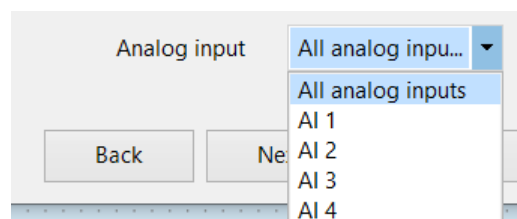
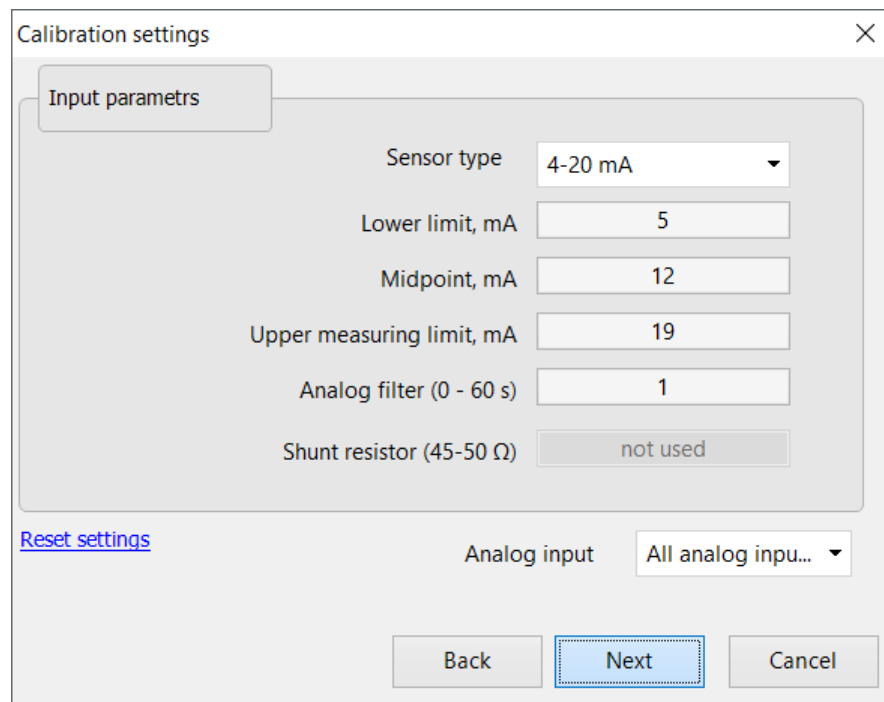
If calibration of analog inputs or outputs is necessary, use the menu item **Device → Calibration...**. The item is active only if a device is connected. Select the calibration target (inputs or outputs) in the opened dialog.



After selecting the calibration target, device stops the execution of the program. The program starts again when the calibration completes successfully.

#### 8.4.1 Input calibration

To calibrate inputs, connect a reference signal source to them. Start calibration, select the type of signal connected to the input and set the calibration parameters in the opened dialog.



Use the item **Reset settings** to apply the default settings for calibration. Use the list **Select input** to select the input to calibrate, click the button **Next** and follow the instructions.

### 8.4.2 Output calibration

Before calibrating an analog output, prepare the appropriate measuring device, then start calibration and follow the instructions. Measure the signal at the output indicated at the top right of the window and enter the value in the input field.

Proceed the same way with the other outputs if needed. The message about the calibration results will appear after the completion of the calibration.

Lower limit calibration

Output A01

Step 1. Applied to the output: **5mA**.  
Measure the output signal, enter the measured value in the input field and click "Next"

Measured value

Back

Next

Cancel

Upper limit calibration

Output A01

Step 2. Applied to the output: **19mA**.  
Measure the output signal, enter the measured value in the input field and click "Next"

Measured value

Back

Next

Cancel

Proceed the same way with the other outputs if needed. The message about the calibration results will appear when the calibration is complete.

akYtec ALP

Calibration has been successfully completed

OK

### 8.5 Change target device

The **Change Target device** function is designed to transfer a project to another model of a device from the same generation of devices.

The change of target platform occurs according to the following rules:

- The canvas automatically adjusts to changes in the number of inputs/outputs.

- The user-configured I/O layout remains. New I/O are added after the existing I/O of the original project.
- Input/output connections whose data type has changed are broken.
- If the number of inputs/outputs increases but the data type of the original set of inputs/outputs does not change, then the connections remain.
- If the number of inputs/outputs decreases compared to the original, then the connections of remote inputs/outputs are broken.
- If extension modules were added to the original device, they are transferred to the target device, the connections for them remain. If an extension module cannot be connected to the target device, a window will open with the information that the references to the variables bound to the extension modules will be deleted.
- Analog input/output settings are transferred (if there are analog outputs on the target device).
- Communication interfaces are transferred without changes. If the target device for the project transfer does not support an interface, a window will open with the information that the interface, network variables and references to the variables will be deleted.
- All screens and their settings are transferred from one target platform to another. If the target device for the project transfer does not have a display, a window will open with information about the removal of references to variables bound to the visualization elements.

**NOTE**

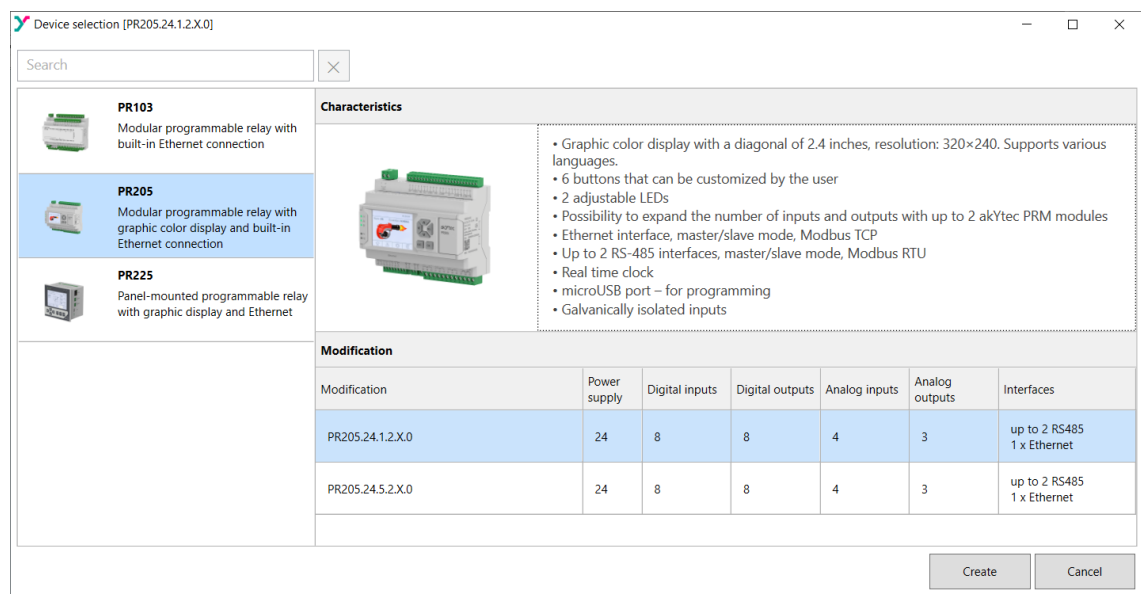
When changing the target platform from PR225 to PR205, visualization elements will be scaled proportionally to the change in screen size.

When changing the target platform from PR205 to PR225, visualization elements are transferred without scaling.

- All variables are transferred to the target device. If the variables are assigned to the parameters not available in the target device, then a window will open with the information that the references to the variables bound to the parameters will be deleted.
- If the target device does not support the FB contained in the source project, an information window will appear notifying you of the need to delete the FB.

To change the target platform, you should:

1. Open the project to be transferred to another device or device model.
2. Select **File** → **Change Target device** from the menu. ALP will prompt you to save the project before changing the device. Next, a menu will appear with a list of available device models:



3. Select the new device. Click the **OK** button.
4. Check and restore broken connections, if any. You can check program's operation in the Simulator.
5. Save the modified project.

## 9 Plugins

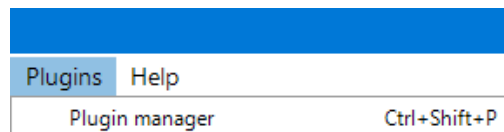
Plugins are used to create complex projects and integrate them with other akYtec services.  
Plugins in ALP:

- Replication master. With this plugin you can load a program into the device without ALP and protect it from copying
- Exporting the device to akYtec Cloud. Allows you to export network variable configuration for polling in akYtec Cloud service

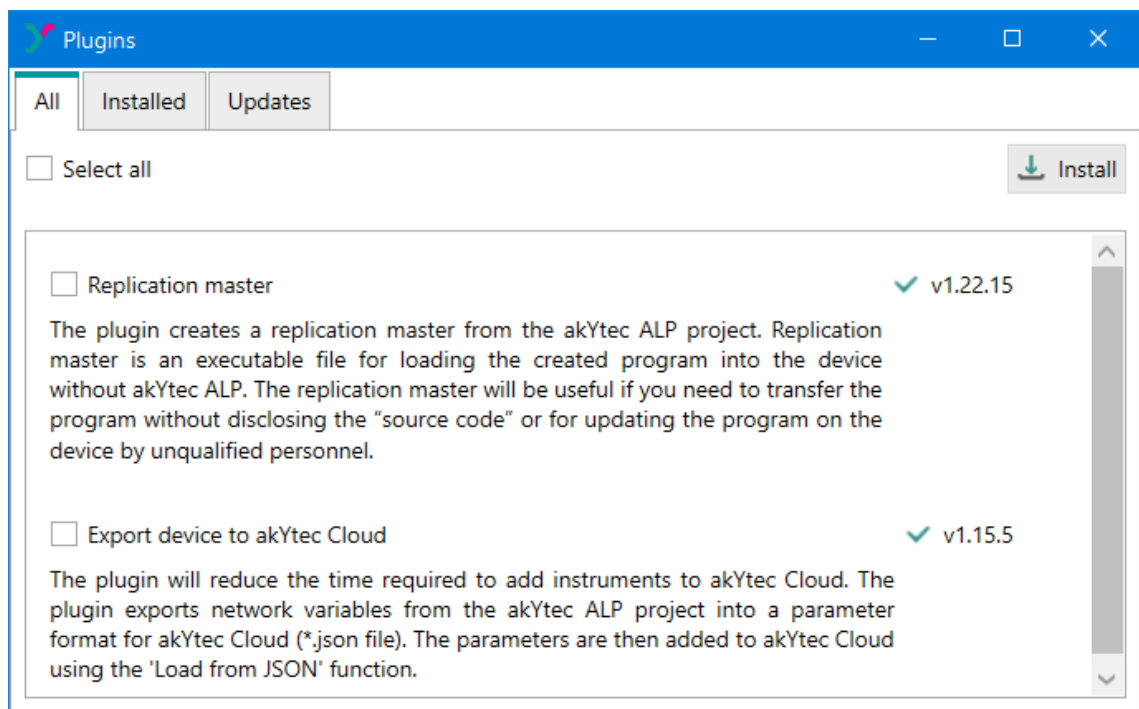
### Installing plugins

To install plugins:

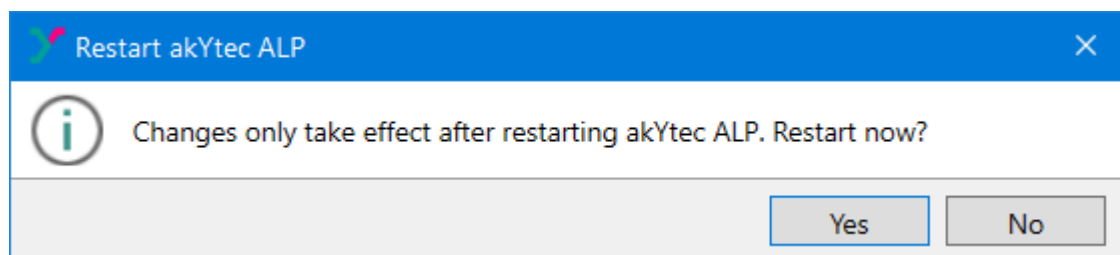
1. Select **Plugins** → **Plugin manager** at the main menu.



2. Check the required extensions in the **Plugins** window.



3. Click the **Install** button.
4. A green check mark ✓ next to the selected extensions shows that the installation is complete.
5. Close **Plugins** window. ALP restart dialog box appears.



After restarting ALP, the extensions will be ready for use.

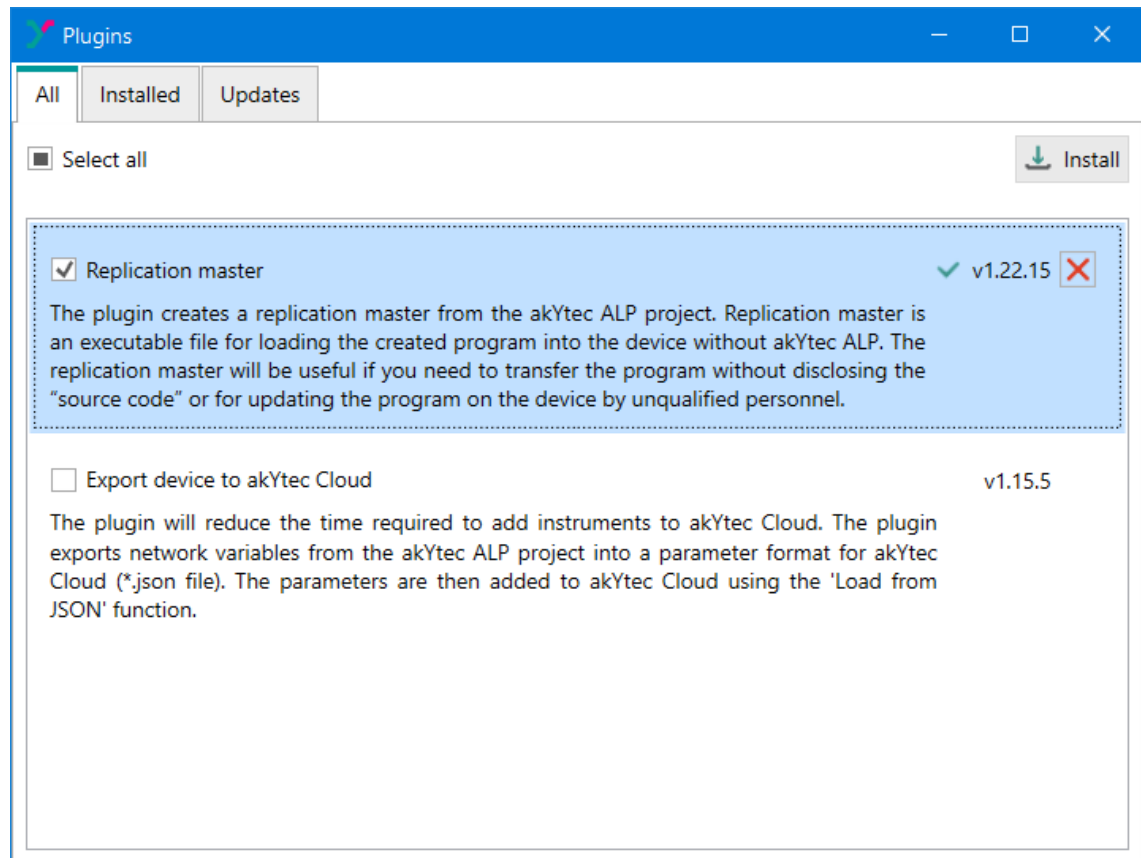
**NOTE**

If no extensions are installed, you should check if port 8084 is open.

**Deleting extensions**

To delete an extension:

1. Select **Plugins** → **Plugin Manager** at the main menu.
2. Check the box  next to the desired extension in the **Plugins** window.



3. The delete icon will change to the install icon.
4. Close **Plugins** window. ALP restart dialog box appears. After ALP is restarted, the deleted extensions will no longer be available in the main menu.

**9.1 Replication master**

The Replication master allows you to create a program file from an ALP project with one of the extensions:

\*.exe – for Windows;

\*.dll – for Linux.

The file can be used to load the program into the device without using the ALP.

**CAUTION**

The program can only be replicated between identical device modifications.

The result of writing a program to the device using the Replication master depends on whether the key is available in the device and the Replication master. The key can be written to the device using ALP.

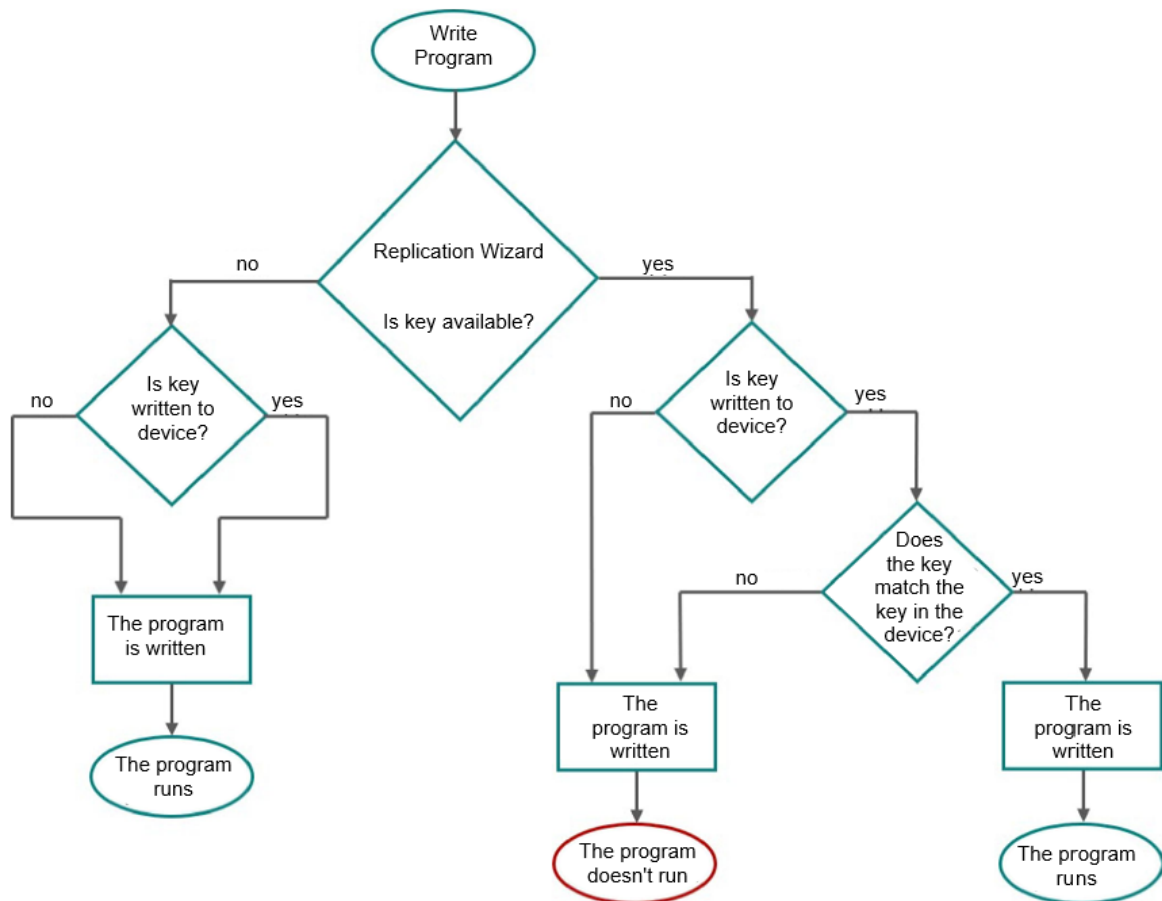


Fig. 9.1 Writing a program using the Replication master

### Creating a Replication master

Before creating the Replication master for Windows, it is recommended to create an \*.rtf text file with the project description. The project description will be displayed during the Replication master startup before the program is loaded into the device.

To create a Replication master for Linux, you must install the .NET 6 SDK. This can be done when installing ALP. To do this, check the **Install .NET6 SDK** checkbox in the installation window:

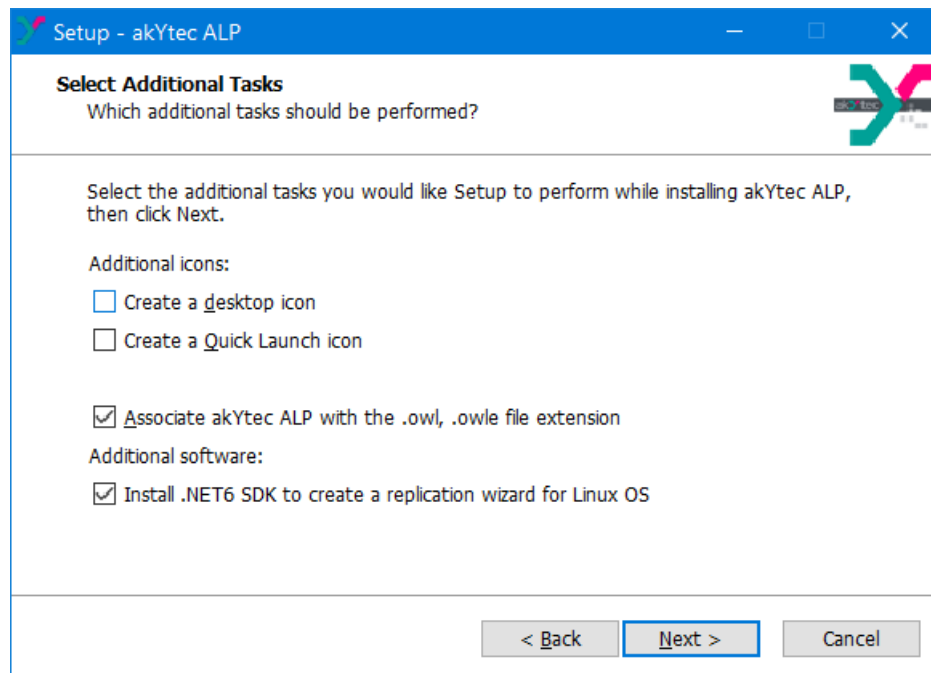


Fig. 9.2 ALP installation window

If the .NET 6 SDK has not been installed, an error will occur when creating the Replication master for Linux and the file will not be created. At the bottom of the window you will see a note about the installation being required and a link to download the package:

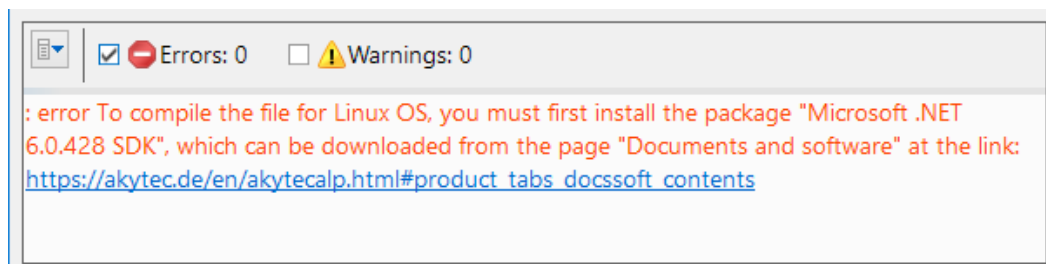
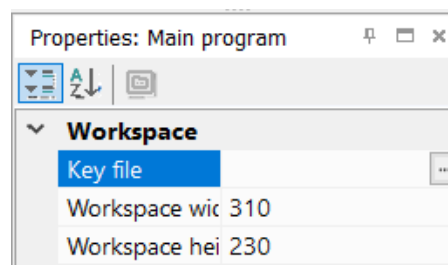


Fig. 9.3 File creation error

To create a Replication master:

1. In the **Key file name** field of the project properties panel, specify the file containing the key, stored on the PC. To download the program without a key, leave this field blank.



If after specifying the path to the key file, the key is deleted, the Replication master will not be created, and error information will be displayed at the bottom of the window:

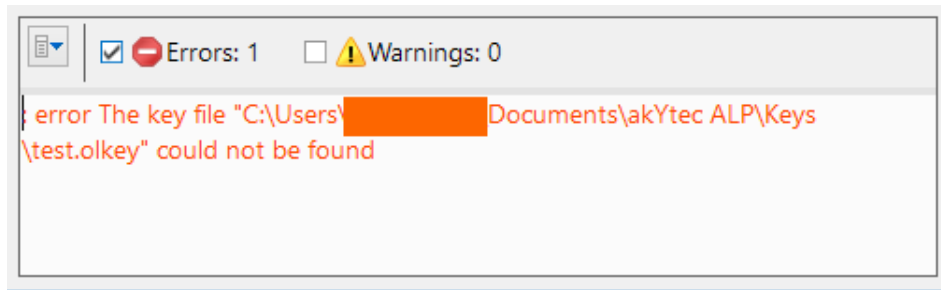


Fig. 9.4 File creation error

2. Select **Create Replication master** from the **Extensions** main menu.
3. A window will be opened for the Replication master creation. If a key is connected to the project, the message **User program is protected by a key!** will be displayed. Otherwise, the message **Device supports user program protection, but no key is selected for the project** will be summoned.

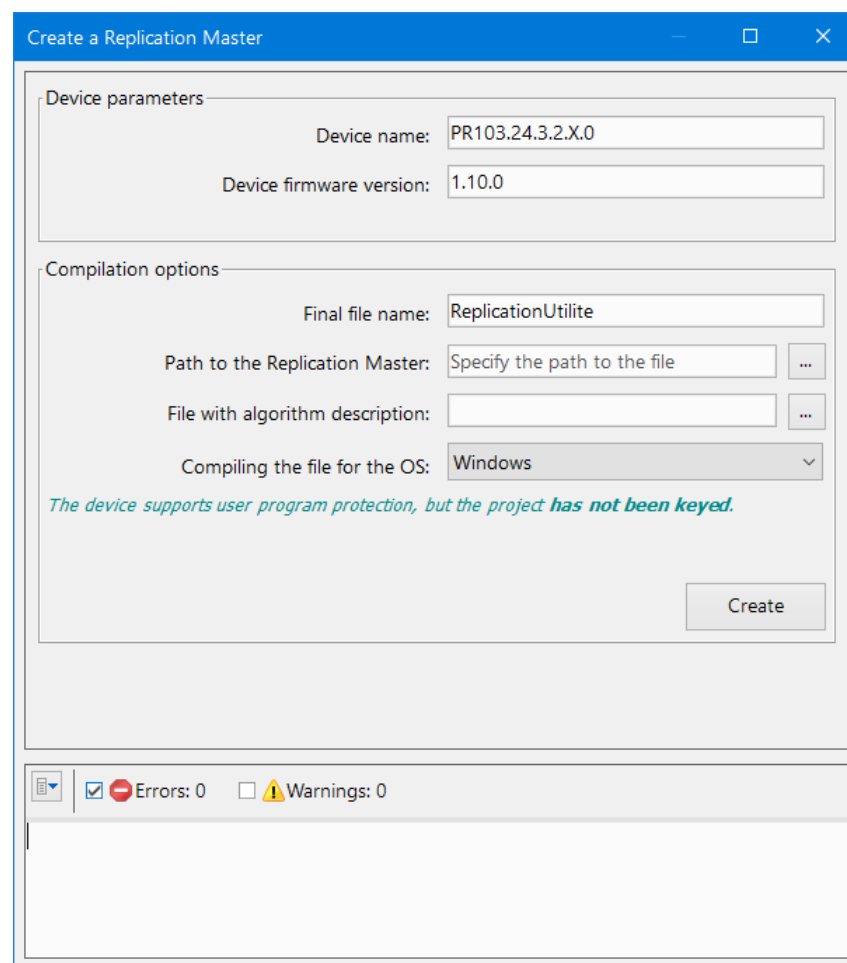


Fig. 9.5 Creating the Replication master

The **device parameters** are read from the device and filled in automatically.

In the compilation parameters window, fill in the fields:

- *Final file name* – name of new Replication master file
- *Path to the Replication master* – location of new file
- *File with algorithm description (For Windows)* – path to the text file with the project description in \*.rtf format (optional)
- *Compiling the file for the OS* – target operating system

- Click the **Create** button. If there are no errors, a file with the specified name and extension \*.exe or \*.dll will be created.

**NOTE**

Creating a Replication master for Linux can take a long time.

**NOTE**

The \*.dll file extension may not be displayed in Windows unless the option to display system files is enabled:

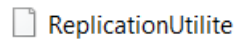


Fig. 9.6 Displaying a file with \*.dll extension

The file creation report is displayed at the bottom of the window.

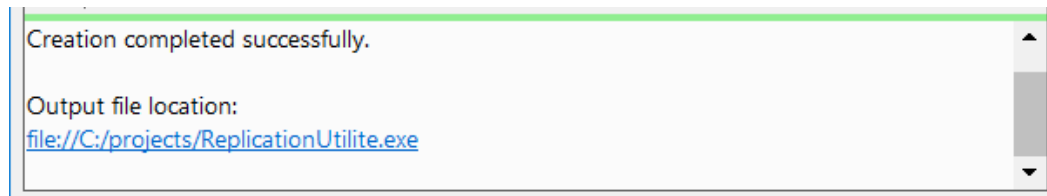


Fig. 9.7 File Creation Report

To hide or unhide the report display area, click the button. Information about warnings and errors is displayed if the corresponding checkboxes are checked.

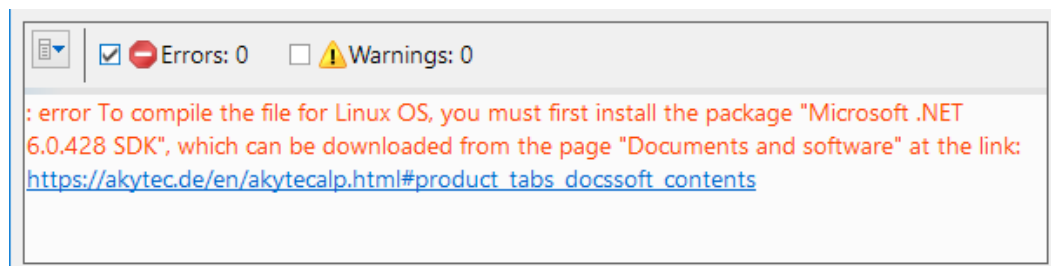


Fig. 9.8 Examples of warnings

### 9.1.1 Writing a program to the device via the Replication master on Windows

To write a program to the device using the Replication master, you should:

- Run the created Replication master file.

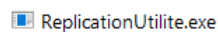


Fig. 9.9 Replication Master File

**NOTE**

When the master opens, the project description text from the attached file with the \*.rtf extension will be displayed. If the file was not attached when the master was created, the project description will be empty.

- Follow the instructions of the replication master.

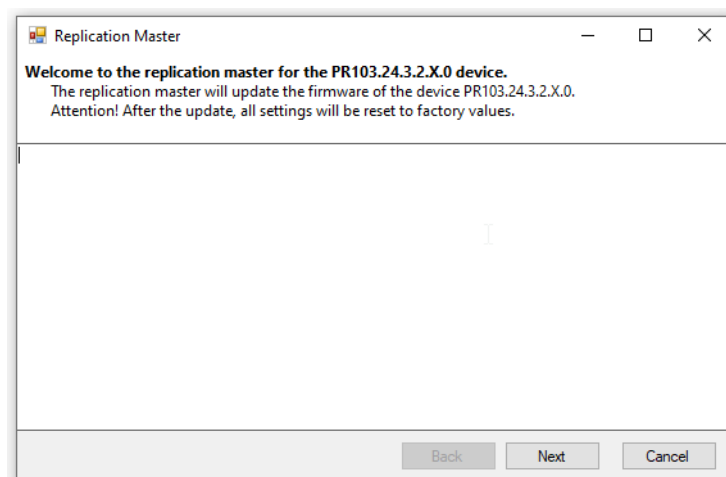


Fig. 9.10 Replication master window

3. In the Port settings section Replication master shows the number of the connected COM port. How to find out the port number is described in the section [Connection to device](#).
4. If the device is password protected, enter the password in the Replication master window. If the password is missing or entered incorrectly, the **Next** button will be inactive. When the port is selected, connection status is shown in the lower right corner.

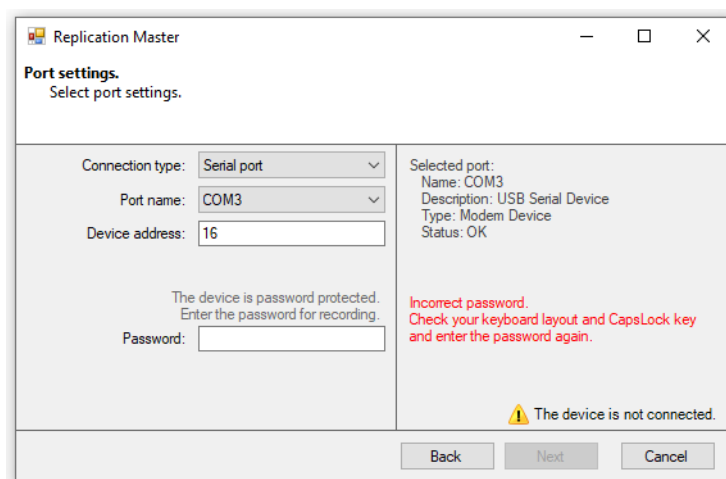
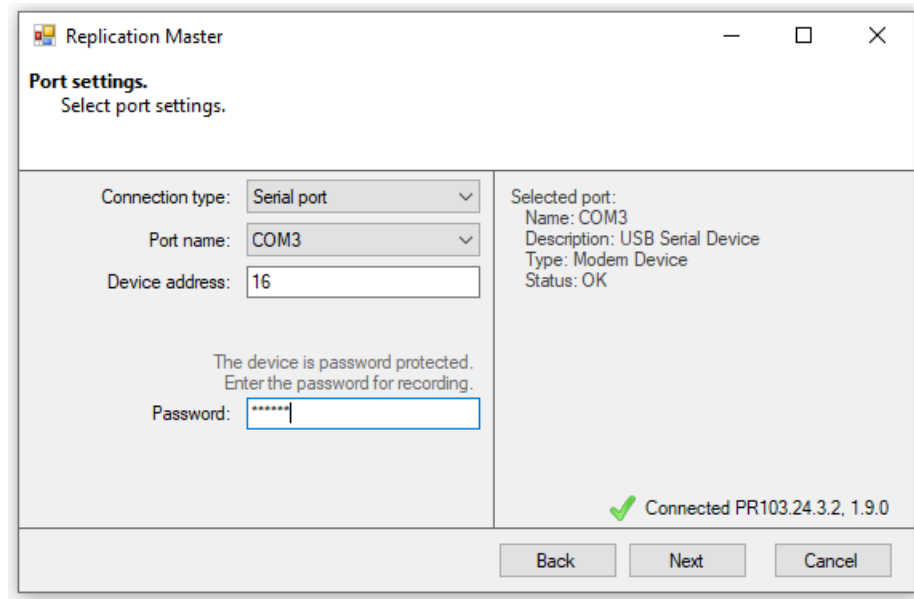


Fig. 9.11 Device connection error

In case of connection error, the error sign  and text will be displayed. When you hover over the sign  a tooltip will appear describing the error.

| Error                       | Possible reasons                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The device is not connected | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– COM port selected incorrectly;</li> <li>– USB driver not installed;</li> <li>– connection break</li> </ul>              |
| Another device is required  | The connected device does not match the project. You need to replace the device in the project and create a new replication master, or connect a suitable device |

If there are no errors, there is a green check mark near the device name.



If the connection with the device is constantly interrupted (the check mark is blinking), then another application may be occupying the USB port. This may happen if an ALP program is running and a connection to the same port is configured in it. In this case, to load the project into the device, the other application should be closed or switched to OFFLINE.

5. If the connection is stable, you should click the **Next** button.

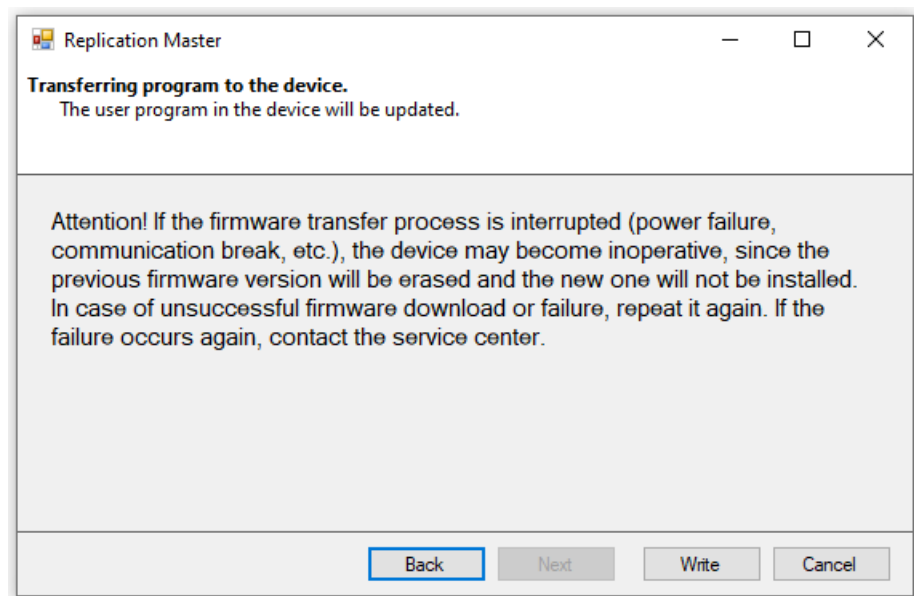


Fig. 9.12 Writing the program

6. To write the program into the device, click the **Write** button. The writing status line will be displayed at the bottom of the window. During the process, the connection between the PC and the device must not be interrupted. When the transfer is complete, the message will be displayed.

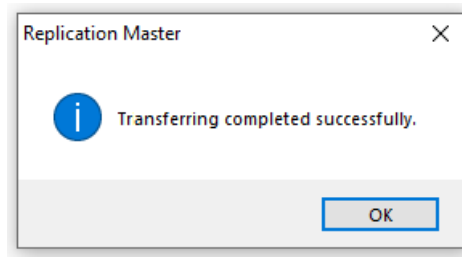


Fig. 9.13 Download complete

**"Silent" installation mode****NOTE**

The "silent" installation mode is available when working with the Replication master version 1.21.14 and later.

The Replication master supports the "silent" firmware mode for devices. To launch it, use the following command line arguments:

- **/silent** – "silent" installation argument;
- **/password:** – password, required if the device was password protected;
- **/ip:** – IP address of the connected device (if the device is connected via the Ethernet interface);
- **/portname:** – COM port number (if the device is connected via USB interface);
- **1>> File\_Name.txt** – text file displaying the firmware process in percentage;
- **2>> File\_Name.txt** – text file displaying errors during the firmware process.

An example of a command to run Replication master file (*ReplicationUtilite.exe*) located on the desktop when connected via an Ethernet interface:

**C:\Users\User\_name\Desktop\ReplicationUtilite.exe /silent /IP:10.2.3.204**

Example of a command to run Replication master file (*ReplicationUtilite.exe*) located on the desktop when connected via USB to a device with password 1234:

**C:\Users\User\_name\Desktop\ReplicationUtilite.exe /silent /portname:COM7 /password:1234**

Example of a command to run the ReplicationUtilite.exe Replication master file located on the desktop when connected via USB to create a text file displaying errors during the firmware process:

**C:\Users\User\_name\Desktop\ReplicationUtilite.exe /silent /portname:COM7 2>> File\_Name.txt**

**9.1.2 Writing a program to a device via the Replication master on Linux****PC requirements:**

- Ubuntu 22.04 or 24.04, x86/32 or x64 processor architecture
- .NET 6

To write a program to a device on Linux, open a command line and enter the command:

- **./ReplicationUtilite -ip:192.168.1.100** – when connecting the device via Ethernet, where 192.168.1.100 is the IP address of the device.
- **./ReplicationUtilite -portname:/dev/ttyACM0** – when connected via a serial port, where ACM0 is the port address.

**NOTE**

To determine the device port, use the commands:

- **lsusb** – for USB;
- **dmesg | grep tty** – for serial port.

An example of a command to launch the replication master file when connecting the device via a serial port with the address ACM0:

```
:-$ ./ReplicationUtilite -portname:/dev/ttyACM0
```

Fig. 9.14 Command to write a program

If the actions are performed correctly, the command line will display the status line of the program loading into the device:



Fig. 9.15 Status bar

Table 9.1 Possible errors

| Error                                                                        | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| You do not have permission to run the file<br>Permission denied              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– contact the administrator</li> <li>– use the command<br/><b>sudo ./ReplicationUtilite - portname:/dev/ttyACM0</b>, where ACM0 is the port address</li> </ul> |
| Entering an invalid command<br>Incorrect string arguments are specified      | Please enter a valid command to run the file                                                                                                                                                          |
| The device is password protected<br>Incorrect string arguments are specified | Enter the command <b>-password:.</b>                                                                                                                                                                  |

## 9.2 Exporting the device to akYtec Cloud

Exporting a device to akYtec Cloud reduces the time to add a device configured in Slave mode to the akYtec Cloud service.

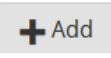
Working with akYtec Cloud requires a special device, a gateway, to be connected to the device. Let's assume that the gateway is already configured and connected to the control panel, the settings are given in the *Operation Manual* for the gateway.

To export the configuration of Modbus parameters of the device, proceed as follows:

1. Create a project with settings in Slave mode and network variables.
2. Select **Export Device to akYtec Cloud** from the **Plugins** main menu.
3. In the menu that opens, select the location and specify the file name in \*.json format.

Further steps require a personal account in akYtec Cloud.

After logging in to your personal account:

1. Click the button .
2. On the page that opens, click the  button.
3. In the menu that appears, set the **ID**: IMEI / serial number of the network gateway (indicated on the gateway housing). In the **Device Type** drop-down list, select **PR103** in list **Programmable relays**. Enter the address of the device that was set in ALP. Fill in the remaining fields. Next, click the **Create** button.

Device registration ×

**Device type\***

**ID\***

**Network address\***

**Serial number**

**Device name\***

**Categories**

**Time zone\***

akYtec devices
▾

- ▢ Programmable controllers
- ▢ Programmable relays
  - ▢ PR103
    - PR103 over Ethernet - Autodetection
    - PR103 over Ethernet - Manual setting
  - ▢ PR200
  - ▢ PR102
  - ▢ PR100
- ▢ I/O Modules
- ▢ Arbitrary modbus device

Cancel
Create

4. On the **General/General Settings** tab, specify the polling rate and COM port settings of the device according to the settings in ALP. Click the **Save** button to apply the new settings.

**Time zone\***

GMT+1:00 ▾

Time on the device page will be shifted according to the time zone.

**Log retention period\***

90

days

Not more than 90 days

**"Operational" polling period\***

60

sec

Polling interval for operation parameters

**"Configuration" polling period\***

70

sec

Polling interval for configuration parameters

**"Manageable" polling period\***

80

sec

Polling interval for manageable parameters

**Offline period\***

91

sec

The value must be greater than the minimum interval for polling parameters

**COM-port baud rate\***

9600 ▾

5. On the page that appears, click the **Parameter Settings** button. Click on the **Import** drop-down list and select the **Load from JSON** option. In the menu that opens, select the previously created file in \*.json format and click **Load Parameters**.

Export to JSON
Clear all parameters

Import... ▾

Settings ⚙

| Parameter      | Register address | Unit of measurement | Data format | Wi-Fi | Bluetooth | Modbus | Alarm |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------|-------|-----------|--------|-------|
| All parameters |                  |                     |             |       |           |        |       |

Import from JSON

Import from Codesys v.2.3

6. Modbus variables of the device will be added to akYtec Cloud.

## 10 Keyboard shortcuts

| Keyboard shortcut                     | Action                                      |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>Menu/File</b>                      |                                             |
| Ctrl + N                              | Create a new project                        |
| Ctrl + O                              | Open an existing project                    |
| Ctrl + Alt + S                        | Save an open project under a different name |
| Ctrl + S                              | Save an open project                        |
| Ctrl + P                              | Print                                       |
| Ctrl + Shift + C                      | Open Component Manager                      |
| <b>Menu/View</b>                      |                                             |
| Ctrl + Z                              | Undo last change                            |
| Ctrl + Y                              | Return (restore) a canceled action          |
| <b>Menu/Device</b>                    |                                             |
| Ctrl + F7                             | Transfer the application to the device      |
| Ctrl + Shift + V                      | Open Variable Table                         |
| Ctrl + Shift + S                      | Open device configuration                   |
| <b>Menu/Service</b>                   |                                             |
| Shift + F5                            | Go to simulation mode                       |
| F6                                    | Start simulation                            |
| F7                                    | Stop simulation                             |
| F8                                    | Pause simulation                            |
| F10                                   | Single cycle                                |
| Ctrl + F5                             | Go to debug mode                            |
| <b>Menu/Plugins</b>                   |                                             |
| Ctrl + Shift + P                      | Open plugins manager                        |
| <b>Menu/Help</b>                      |                                             |
| F1                                    | Open Help                                   |
| <b>Insert panel</b>                   |                                             |
| Ctrl + Shift + F                      | Create an ST function                       |
| Ctrl + Shift + M                      | Create a macro                              |
| Ctrl + Shift + B                      | Create an ST function block                 |
| Ctrl + M                              | Create a macro from a selection             |
| <b>Usage location panel</b>           |                                             |
| F5                                    | Refresh usage locations                     |
| <b>Keys for working with elements</b> |                                             |
| Ctrl + C                              | Copy an element                             |
| Ctrl + V                              | Paste from clipboard                        |
| Delete                                | Deleting a selected item                    |

| Keyboard shortcut            | Action                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Element resizing keys</b> |                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Ctrl + →                     | Increasing the width of a selected element                                                                                                                            |
| Ctrl + ←                     | Decreasing the width of a selected element                                                                                                                            |
| Ctrl + ↓                     | Increasing the height of a selected element                                                                                                                           |
| Ctrl + ↑                     | Decreasing the height of a selected element                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Scaling the workspace</b> |                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Ctrl + Mouse wheel           | When you rotate the mouse wheel away from you, the scale of the workspace increases. When you rotate the mouse wheel toward you, the scale of the workspace decreases |
| Ctrl + «+»                   | Increase scale                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ctrl + «-»                   | Decrease scale                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Switch between tabs</b>   |                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Tab + →                      | Switch between tabs                                                                                                                                                   |
| Tab + ←                      |                                                                                                                                                                       |

## 11 Program examples

These examples with simple tasks explain the creation of a circuit program in the ALP programming software.

- Light switch with automatic switch-off
- Mixer control
- Direct connection of PR103 to akYtec Cloud

### 11.1 Task 1: Light switch with automatic switch-off

The task is to switch the light on for a certain time, e.g. for a house entry.

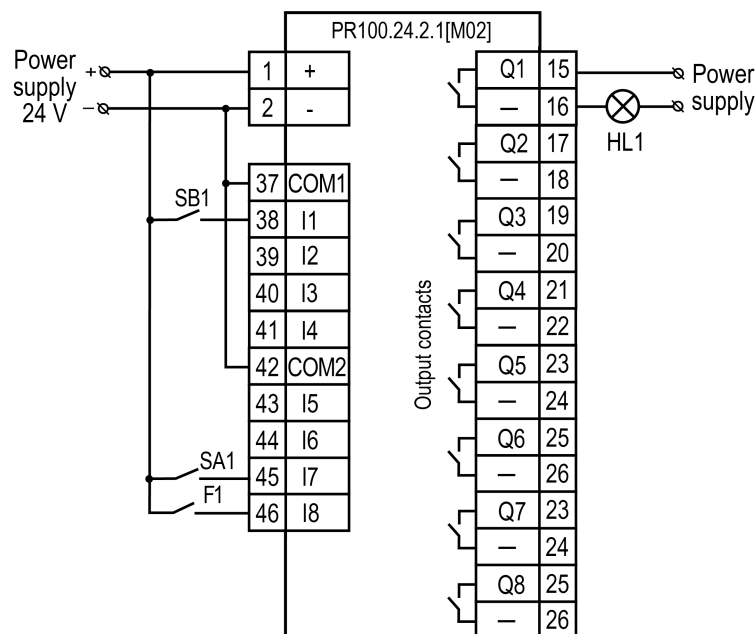
Task definition:

1. The light sensor F1 and the light button SB1 "TIME" are installed in front of the entrance door.
2. If the button SB1 is shortly pressed and the ambient light is insufficient, the light switches on for 1 minute – this time should be enough to find a key hole and to open the door.
3. If the button SB1 is pressed for 2 seconds, the light switches on for 3 minutes regardless of the ambient light – this mode can be useful for entrance cleaning.
4. Provide the possibility to control the light by commands from external devices or with the switch SA1 "CONST" regardless of the ambient light. This mode can be useful during the reception of guests or for further automation of the apartment as part of the "smart house" program.
5. Provide the possibility to switch on the light only at a certain time.

Device selection:

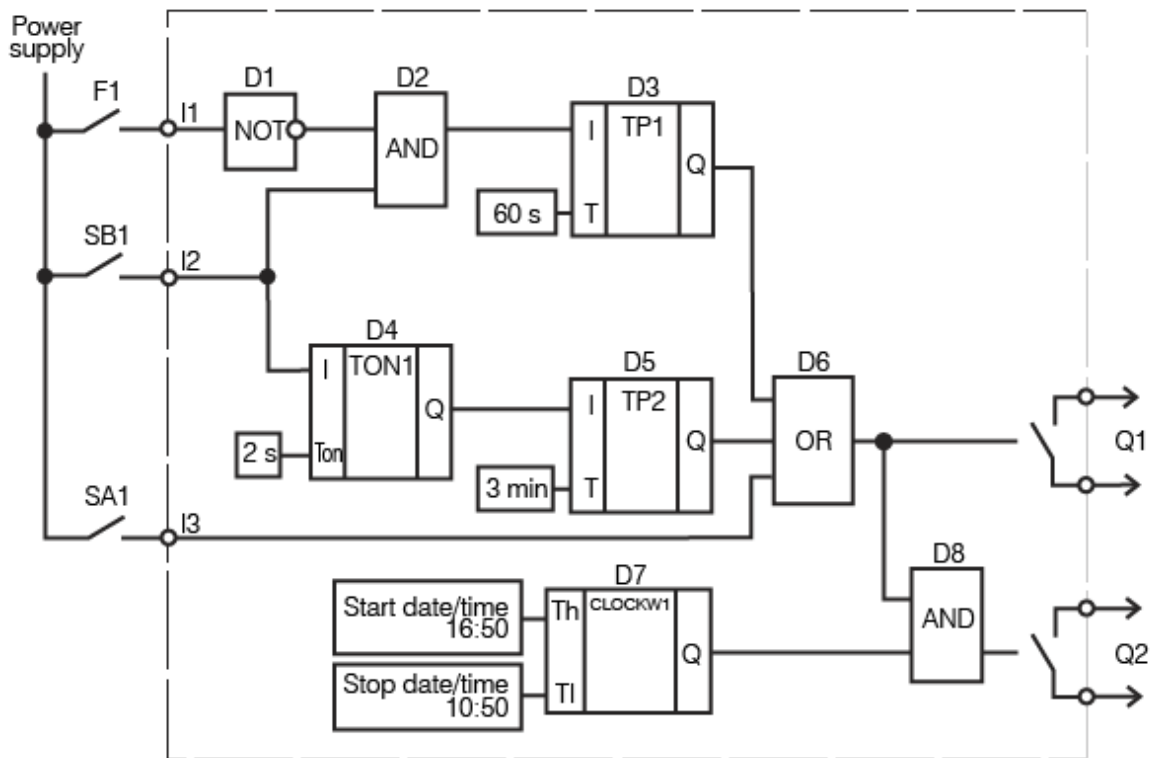
The control device must have minimum two digital inputs, one digital output and an integrated real-time clock to implement this task. These features can be provided by devices of PR100 series.

The task implementation with PR100.24.2.1(M02):



### Circuit program

The circuit program can be implemented in the way shown in figure below.



Input I1 – connected to light sensor F1

Input I2 – connected to SB1 button

Input I3 – connected to SA1 switch

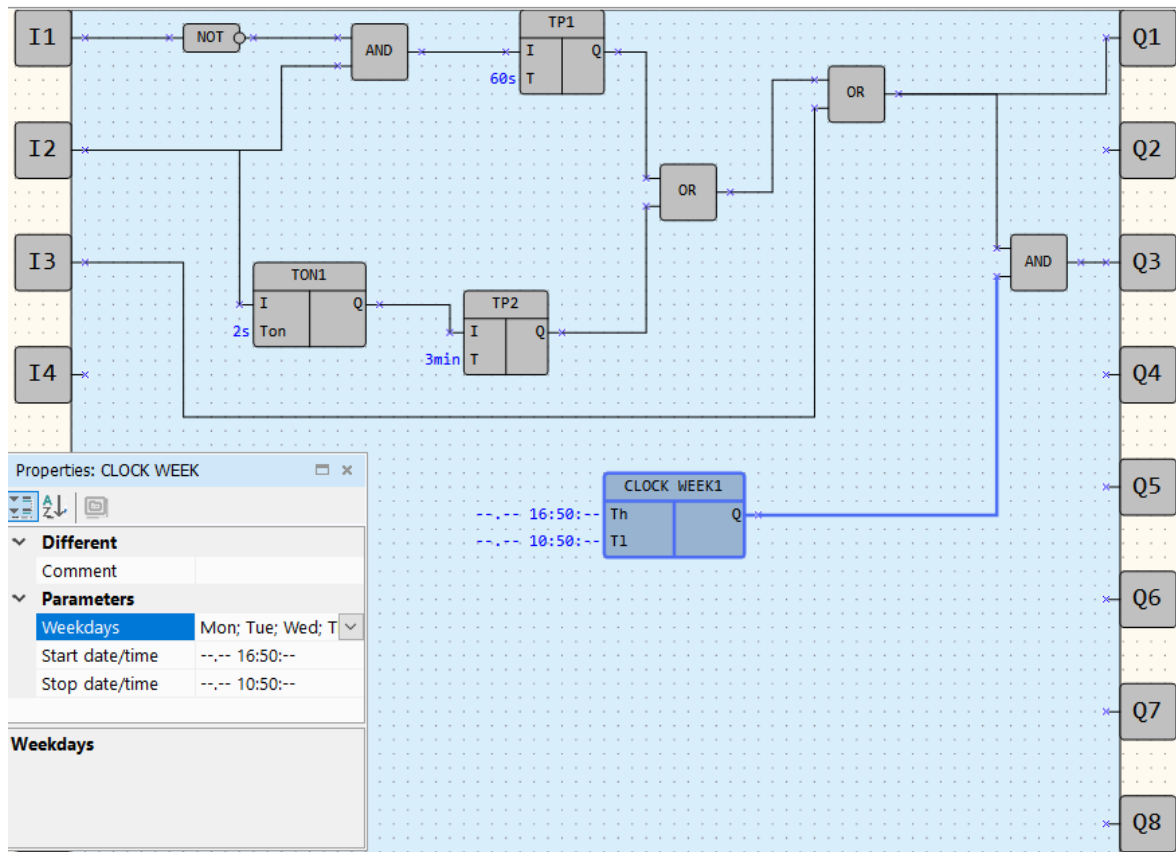
Output Q1 – output to implement the task points 1-4

Output Q2 – output to implement the task point 5

Program description:

1. If the button SB1 is shortly pressed (< 2 s), the logical AND (D2) is enabled. If the ambient light is insufficient, the first input of D2 is also **True** and the timer TP "Pulse" (D3) forms a pulse with 1 minute duration. This pulse activates the output Q1 over the logical OR (D6) and the light switches on for 1 minute.
2. If the button SB1 is pressed for > 2 s, the on-delay timer TON (D4) activates the timer TP "Pulse" (D5), a pulse with the duration of 3 minutes activates the output Q1 over logical OR (D6) and the light switches on for 3 minutes.
3. If the ambient light is sufficient, the contact of the sensor F1 closes, the logical AND (D2) is disabled and the timer TP "Pulse" (D3) is blocked.
4. If the switch SA1 "CONST" is closed, the output Q1 activates over the logical OR (D6) and the light is switched on constantly.
5. If you want to use the light only on certain weekdays at certain times, you can use the output Q2. With the weekly timer CLOCKW (D7) you can set the start and the stop time and the weekdays for lighting.

The circuit program created in ALP is shown in figure below.



## 11.2 Task 2: Mixer control

The task is to implement an industrial mixer with simple control functions.

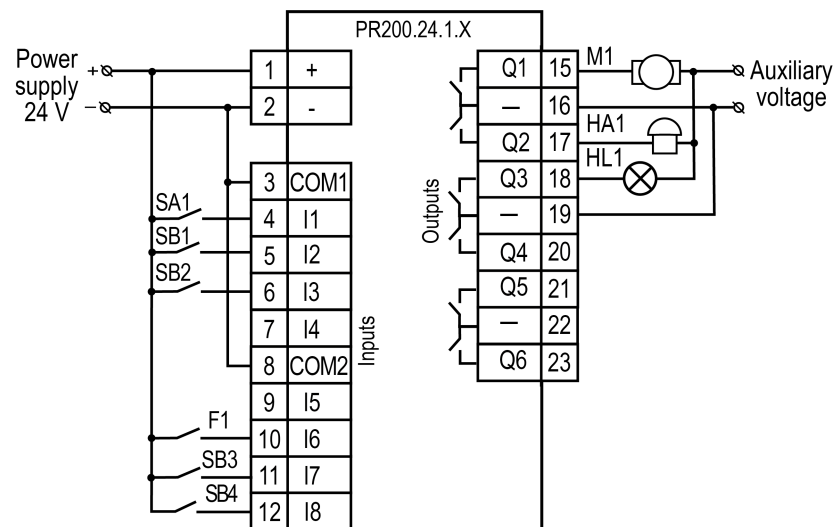
Task definition:

1. Automatic and Manual operation modes are required. The switch SA1 "MODE" is installed to switch between the modes.
2. In Automatic mode the operating cycle can be started with the button SB1 "START" and stopped automatically with the end of the cycle or manually with the button SB2 "STOP". The cycle duration is 5 minutes. During the cycle the motor of the mixer is on for 15 seconds and off for 10 seconds alternately. All settings can be changed in the program.
3. In Manual mode the motor can be started with the button SB1 "START" and stopped with the button SB2 "STOP".
4. When the motor is overloaded (overload switch F1), it switches off automatically. Signal lamp HL1 "Overload" indicates an operating error. Intermittent warning signal (HA1) sounds with 3-second interval.
5. The acoustic signal can be switched off with the button SB3 "RESET".
6. The button SB4 "CONTROL" is used for the functional test of the lamp HL1 and the acoustic signal HA1.

Device selection:

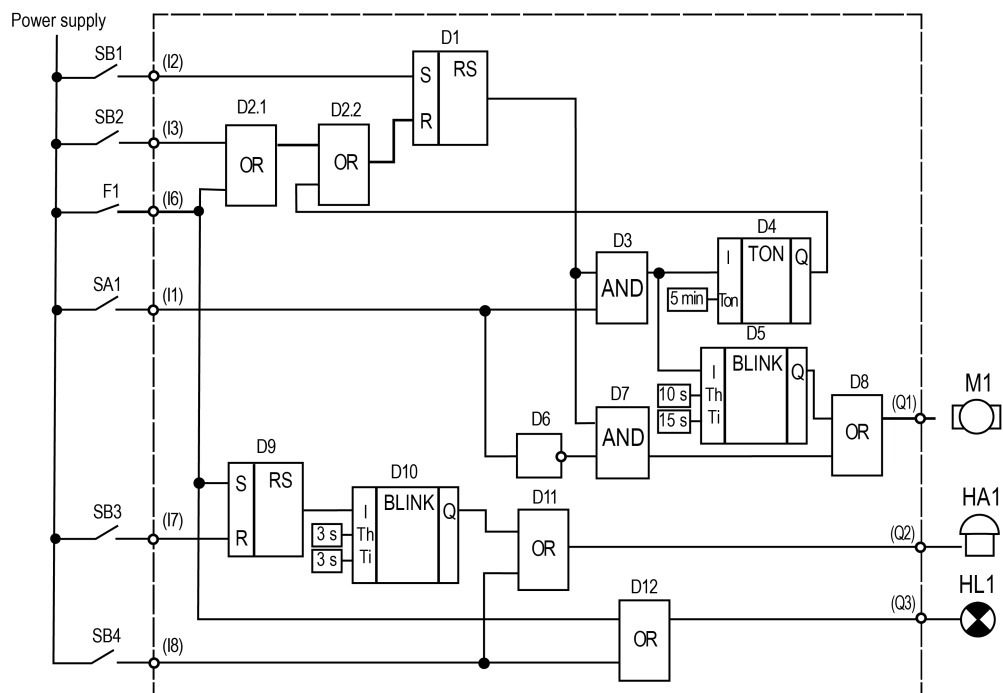
The control device must have minimum 6 digital inputs and 3 digital outputs to implement this task. These features can be provided by devices of PR200 series.

The task implementation with PR200.230.1.X:



## Circuit program

The circuit program can be implemented in the way shown in figure below.



Input I1 – connected to SA1 “MODE” switch  
 Input I2 – connected to SB1 “START” button  
 Input I3 – connected to SB2 “STOP” button  
 Input I6 – connected to F1 overload switch  
 Input I7 – connected to SB3 “RESET” button  
 Input I8 – connected to SB4 “TEST” button  
 Output Q1 – connected to motor  
 Output Q2 – connected to HA1 acoustic signal  
 Output Q3 – connected to HL1 signal lamp

**Program description:**

## 1. Input I2 (SB1 "START")

If the button SB1 is pressed, the RS trigger D1 becomes **True** as long as there is no reset signal at the input R. Subsequent signal path depends on the state of the switch SA1 "MODE":

- If SA1 is open (Manual mode), the logical AND (D7) and the logical OR (D8) are enabled and the motor M1 (output Q1) is switched on.
- If SA1 is closed (Automatic mode), the logical AND (D7) is disabled and the start signal can only activate the pulse generator BLINK (D5) to start the operating cycle (15 s on / 10 s off) and the on-delay timer TON (D4) to stop it (in 5 min).

## 2. Input I3 (SB2 "STOP")

If the button SB2 is pressed or the switch F1 is activated, the RS trigger D1 is reset over the input R and the output Q1 is disabled.

## 3. Input I1 (SA1 "MODE")

- If the switch SA1 is open (Manual mode), the logical AND D3 is disabled and D7 is enabled, the timer D4 and the pulse generator D5 are disabled and the motor M1 can be only started with SB1 and stopped with SB2.
- If the switch SA1 is closed (Automatic mode), the logical AND D3 is enabled and D7 is disabled, thus the motor M1 can be only started by the pulse generator D5 (15 s on / 10 s off cycle) and stopped by the timer D4 in 5 minutes.

## 4. Input I6 (overload switch F1)

When the motor is overloaded, the F1 contact is closed, the RS trigger D1 is reset and the motor is stopped.

Concurrently the signal lamp HL1 is switched on over the logical OR (D12) and the acoustic signal HA1 is activated over the RS trigger D9. The pulse generator D10 provides an intermittent acoustic signal with the cycle 3 s on / 3 s off.

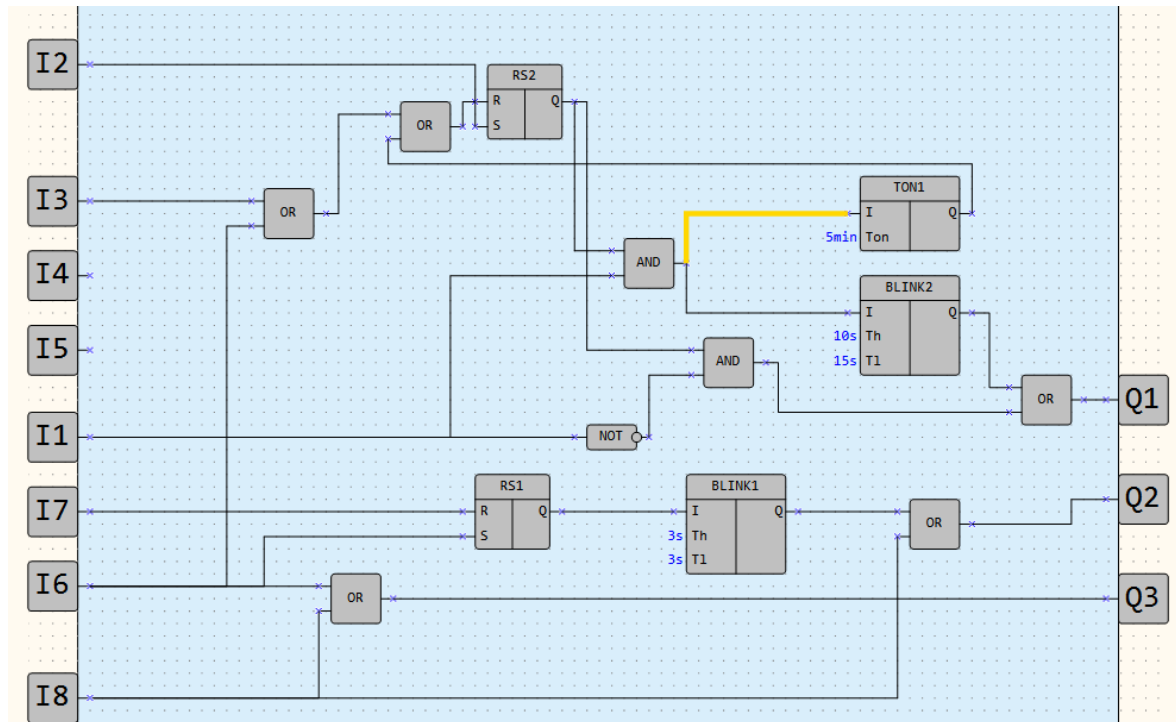
## 5. Input I7 (SB3 "RESET")

The button RESET is used to reset the acoustic signal HA1. If the button SB3 is pressed, the RS trigger D9 is reset and the pulse generator D10 for the acoustic signal HA1 is stopped.

## 6. Input I8 (SB4 "TEST")

The button TEST is used to test the acoustic signal HA1 and the signal lamp HL1. If the button SB4 is pressed, the logical ORs D11 and D12 are enabled, the outputs Q2 and Q3 activated, the acoustic signal and the lamp switch on.

The circuit program is shown in the figure below.

**NOTE**

1. The remaining two unused inputs and one output can be used for implementation of additional functions. For example, to switch between different time settings for automatic motor operation or to switch other operating parameters of the mixer.
2. The technological cycle of operation can be completely automated by implementation of an incremental counter (CT) to switch off the RS trigger D1.

### 11.3 Task3. Direct connection of PR103 to akYtec Cloud

Direct connection to akYtec Cloud is available for devices on the new platform

**NOTE**

For a list of devices on the new platform, see the About the program section..

The device must be configured for operation and connected to the network.  
To connect to akYtec Cloud you should:

1. Connect the device to the PC and create a project using network variables.
2. Set a password to access the device.
3. In the settings device window, allow access to akYtec Cloud.

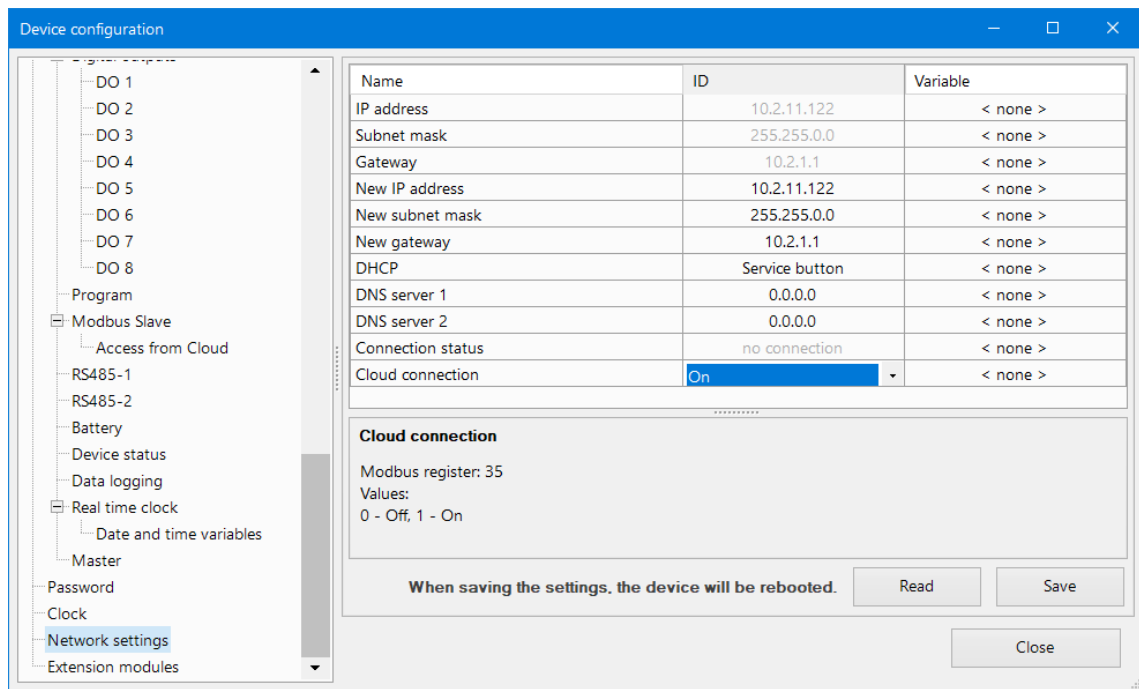


Fig. 11.1 Device configuration window

**NOTE**

The value of the **Cloud connection** status parameter can be read via Modbus or a user program variable can be linked. The parameter description is given in the table below..

Table 11.1 Possible states of the Cloud connection parameter

| State            | Value | Description                                                  |
|------------------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| no connection    | 0     | Cloud sharing is disabled                                    |
| identification   | 1     | Establishing connection to Cloud                             |
| normal operation | 2     | Cloud controls the device, no errors                         |
| network error    | 3     | The device cannot establish a connection to the Cloud server |
| no password      | 4     | The password for the device is not set                       |

4. Allow remote access to Modbus registers.

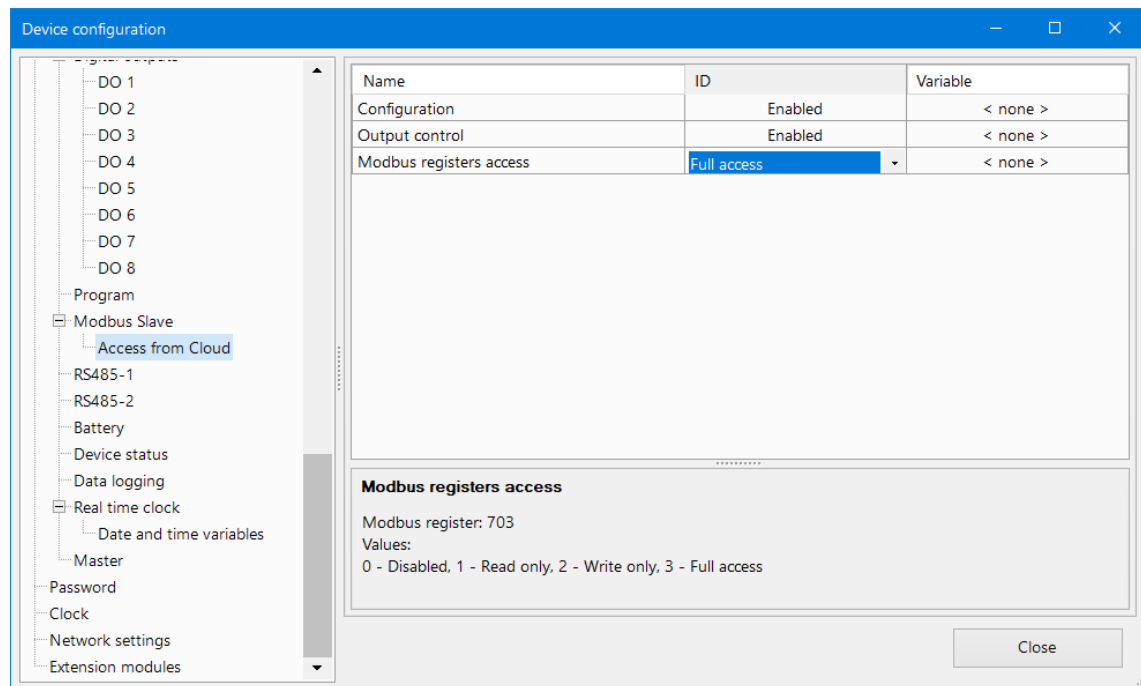


Fig. 11.2 Device configuration window

5. Load the program into the device (**Device** → **Load the program into the device**).
6. Go to the main page of the Cloud service. If you don't have an akYtec Cloud account, then go through the registration procedure.
7. Go to the **Administration** tab, open the **Devices** tab and click the **Add device** button (  **Add** ).
8. A window will appear with a choice of the device type.

**NOTE**

Direct connection to Cloud is performed with PR103 as an example. To connect other second generation devices, follow similar steps.

Device registration

Device type\*

ID\*

Network address\*

Serial number

Device name\*

Categories

Time zone\*

akYtec devices

- Programmable controllers
- Programmable relays
  - PR103
    - PR103 over Ethernet - Autodetection
    - PR103 over Ethernet - Manual setting
  - PR200
  - PR102
  - PR100
- I/O Modules
- Arbitrary modbus device

Cancel Create

Fig. 11.3 Selecting the device type

Option **PR103 via Ethernet – Autodetection**:

**NOTE**

With this method of adding a device, not only network variables are displayed, but also the entire tree of device parameters.

- Enter in the new window:
  - Identifier – device serial number
  - Network address – address 1, leave unchanged
  - Device name – name of the device;
  - Time zone – time zone in which the device is located
- Click **Add**. The basic settings interface of the device will open.
- Enter the password for the device. If necessary, you can change other settings (for example, the polling period).
- Click **Save** to apply the new settings.
- Cloud will connect to the device and read all parameters from it.

Option **PR103 via Ethernet – Manual setup**:

- Enter in the new window:
  - Identifier – device serial number
  - Network address – address 1, leaves unchanged
  - Device name – name of the device;
  - Time zone – time zone in which the device is located.
- Click **Add**. The general settings interface of the device will open.
- Enter the password for the device. If necessary, you can change other settings. Click **Create** to apply the new settings.
- Next, in the Parameters/Parameter settings tab, add the network parameters of the device using one of the available methods:
  - manually, in accordance with the network variables specified in PR103. It should be noted that the register addresses are specified in hexadecimal - therefore the values used differ from those given in ALP - 16384 (DEC) = 4000 (HEX).

- as a \*.json file, if you use the Device Export extension in akYtec Cloud ALP. To add parameters, click on the Import drop-down list and select the Load from JSON option. In the menu that opens, select the previously created file in \*.json format and click the Load parameters button.

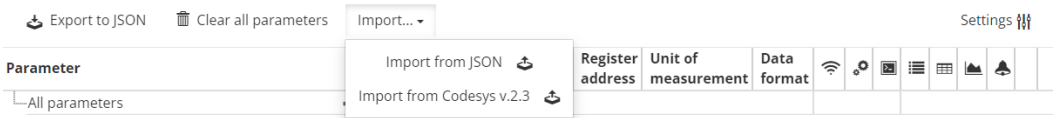


Fig. 11.4 Import parameters

If all settings were correct, then the **General Data** tab will show data from the device. If the device is not polled from Cloud, then you should check the network settings, the connection status to Cloud.

|                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| Connection status | normal operation |
|-------------------|------------------|

Fig. 11.5 Example display of connection to Cloud

If the values are not written to the device from Cloud, you should check if the checkbox in the **Managed Parameter** column is checked:



Fig. 11.6 Controlled parameter

## 12 ST language

ST (Structured Text) is a high-level text language. It is one of the five languages supported by the IEC 61131-3 standard.

ALP allows you to create functions and function blocks in the ST language.

- Syntax
- Data types
- Language structure

### 12.1 Syntax

Keywords can be entered in upper and lower case characters. Spaces and tabs do not affect the syntax and can be used everywhere.

The names of variables, functions and function blocks should follow the rules:

- The name must not contain spaces or special characters (for example, !, @, etc.). The exception is the underscore character ( \_ )
- The name must start with a letter
- The variable name can only contain letters of the Latin alphabet
- The name must not contain multiple underscore ( \_ ) characters in a row (i.e. the name **i\_\_Test** is not valid, but the name **i\_Te\_st** is valid)
- Object names are case insensitive (**ITest** and **ITEST** will be interpreted as the same name)
- There are no restrictions on name length
- The name must not match one of the reserved keywords (eg VAR, INT, etc.)
- It is recommended to use Hungarian notation and lowerCamelCase style for variable names

#### 12.1.1 Bitwise access to variables

Bitwise access is available for variables of type UDINT. To access a bit, use the following format:

`Variable.Bit_number`

##### Example

```
Variable.1 := TRUE;
```

```
Variable.31 := FALSE;
```

The bit number must be specified as an integer from 0 to 31. Using variables as bit numbers is not permitted.

#### 12.1.2 Using functions in other ST program elements

A function can be called within another function or function block. To do this, you need to use the following format (informal call):

*Function name (comma separated list of function inputs)*

##### Example

```
FUNCTION rFun1: REAL;
```

```
VAR_INPUT
```

```
    rIn1 : REAL;
```

```
    rIn2 : REAL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
    rFun1 := rIn1 + rIn2;
```

```
END_FUNCTION
```

There is a function **rFun1**:

Calling **rFun1** from **rFun2** function will look like this:

```
FUNCTION rFun2: REAL;
```

```
VAR_INPUT
```

```
    rIn1_0 : REAL;
```

```
    rInf1_1 : REAL;
```

```
    rInf1_2 : REAL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
    rFun2 := rIn1_0 * rFun1(rInf1_1, rInf1_2);
```

```
END_FUNCTION
```

**rFun2** function will return a number equal to the product of **rIn1\_0** and the sum of **rInf1\_1** and **rInf1\_2**, which are specified at the input of this function.

### 12.1.3 Using one function block in another

Instances of one function block can be created in another function block, namely in the local variable declaration area in the format:

**(short designation):(function block name)**

Once a function block is instantiated, you can begin working with its data. The inputs of a block instance are externally writable. Outputs are for reading.

You can call an instance in different ways. As an example, consider the call to a counter for forward counting, which is created as a template when creating a function block:

1. Through a formal call:

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK fb2
```

```
VAR_INPUT
```

```
    xIn : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT
```

```
    xAlarmMax : BOOL;
```

```
    udiQ : UDINT;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR
```

```
    fb1 : functionblock1; //declaration of a function block instance
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
    fb1 (U := xIn, Q => udiQ); //calling a function block instance
```

```
IF fb1.Q > 10 THEN
```

```
    xAlarmMax := TRUE;
```

```
END_IF
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

**NOTE**

Pay attention to the specific operator for copying a value from the block's output variables ("=>").

- By accessing the inputs/outputs of a function block (variable declarations are similar):

```
fb1.U := xIn; //write data to FB input
fb1 (); //call a FB instance
udiQ := fb1.Q; //read the output of the FB instance
IF fb1.Q > 10 THEN
    xAlarmMax := TRUE;
END_IF
```

The **fb2** output will indicate that 10 pulses have been exceeded and the accumulated counter value.

**NOTICE**

You cannot declare an instance of a function block in the body of a function.

**NOTICE**

In an ST functional block, the maximum nesting of blocks is no more than 8.

**NOTICE**

ST function blocks do not support RETAIN type variables.

**NOTICE**

ST function blocks reserve space in ROM memory after they are added to the project library, regardless of whether they are used in the project or not.

#### 12.1.4 Comments in ST editor

The ST editor in ALP supports the commenting feature. Two types of comments are available:

- Single-line. Its marker is a double slash – //
- Multiline. Its marker is:
  - (\* – beginning of comment
  - \*) – end of comment

#### 12.1.5 Copying ST elements between projects

To copy ST components between projects:

- Select the ST elements that need to be copied on the original project diagram.
- Copy the selected elements using the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl+ C** or the context menu.
- Open the project to paste the copied elements.
- Paste elements into the second project diagram using the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl + V** or the context menu

As a result, templates of all copied elements will be added to the corresponding section of the project component library.

**NOTE**

- If the component library does not contain the group that was specified for the copied component, it will be created.
- If the copied component group is not specified, the template will be added to the **Other** folder.

When copying, all connections between all components that were included in the copy operation are preserved.

**NOTICE**

If any of the copied elements contains an error, the pasting of the elements into the project diagram will be canceled.

An error message will be displayed indicating the name of the incorrect element.

Other components will appear in the component library in the appropriate sections.

**12.2 Documentation in the ST editor**

ST editor supports documentation function.

The documentation marker is the triple slash “///”.

Documentation is added above objects: function/function block declaration, input/output variable declaration.

Tags for documentation are listed in the table below.

| Tag                                            | Description                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <Description>...<br></Description>             | Description of the program element (function, function block, input and output (function block only) variable) |
| <Author>...</Author>                           | Name of the creator of the function or function block                                                          |
| <GroupName>...<br></GroupName>                 | Group name for grouping a function or function block in a content library                                      |
| <OutputDescription>...<br></OutputDescription> | Function output description                                                                                    |

**Documenting the function**

```

///<Description>Resistance temperature detector (Pt1000)</Description>
///<OutputDescription>Temperature</OutputDescription>
///<Author>akYtec</Author>
///<GroupName>Temperature sensor</GroupName>

```

```

FUNCTION f_PT1000: REAL; // function for PT1000 RTD sensor

```

```

VAR_INPUT

```

```

    ///<Description>Resistance</Description>

```

```

    R : REAL;

```

```

END_VAR

```

```

VAR_OUTPUT

```

```

    ///<OutputDescription>Temperature</OutputDescription>

```

```

    Q : REAL;

```

```

END_VAR

```

**Documenting the function block**

```

///<Description>Counter for direct counting</Description>
///<Author>akYtec</Author>
///<GroupName>Timers and counters</GroupName>

```

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK fb_Counter
```

```
VAR_INPUT
```

```

    ///<Description>Pulse detector</Description>
    U : BOOL; //bool input variable

    ///<Description>Counter reset flag</Description>
    Res : BOOL; //bool input variable

    ///<Description>Preset counter value</Description>
    N : UDINT; //bool input value

```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT
```

```

    ///<Description>Counter value</Description>
    Q : UDINT; //uint output value

```

```
END_VAR
```

### 12.3 Data types

Data types, supported in akYtec ALP:

| Data type | Description             | Valid range                                                                                            | Size    |
|-----------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| BOOL      | Boolean                 | FALSE, TRUE                                                                                            | 4 bytes |
| UDINT     | Unsigned double integer | 0...4294967295                                                                                         | 4 bytes |
| REAL      | Floating-point          | $-1.2 \times 10^{-38} \dots 3.4 \times 10^{38}$                                                        | 4 bytes |
| TIME      | Time interval           | T#0...4294967295ms<br>T#0..4294967s<br>T#0..71582m<br>T#0..1193h<br>T#0..49d<br>T#0..49d17h02m47s295ms | 4 bytes |
| DT        | Time of day and date    | DT#2000-01-01-00:00:00..2136-02-07-6:28:15                                                             | 4 bytes |
| ARRAY     | Array                   | —                                                                                                      | —       |

The data type of a variable determines the type of information, the range of representations, and the set of allowed operations.

The variable can be used only after its declaration. It is possible to assign the value of one variable to another variable only if they are of the same type. Otherwise, type converter should be used.



#### NOTE

Converting a larger type to a smaller one can result in loss of information.

## 12.3.1 Reserved keywords

**NOTE**

In the table, words available for use are highlighted in **bold**.

|                           |                       |                              |                      |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>ABS</b>                | END_TRANSITION        | <b>RETURN</b>                | <b>SYS.TOF</b>       |
| ACTION                    | END_TYPE              | SEL                          | <b>SYS.TON</b>       |
| <b>AND</b>                | <b>END_VAR</b>        | <b>SHL</b>                   | <b>SYS.TP</b>        |
| <b>ARRAY</b>              | <b>END_WHILE</b>      | <b>SHR</b>                   | TASK                 |
| AT                        | ENO                   | SINT                         | <b>THEN</b>          |
| BEGIN                     | <b>EXIT</b>           | STEP                         | <b>TIME</b>          |
| <b>BOOL</b>               | F_EDGE                | STRING                       | TIME_OF_DAY          |
| <b>BOOL_TO_REAL</b>       | <b>FALSE</b>          | STRUCT                       | <b>TIME_TO_UDINT</b> |
| <b>BOOL_TO_UDINT</b>      | <b>FOR</b>            | <b>SYS.ACOS</b>              | <b>TO</b>            |
| <b>BY</b>                 | <b>FROM</b>           | <b>SYS.ASIN</b>              | TOD                  |
| <b>CASE</b>               | <b>FUNCTION</b>       | <b>SYS.ATAN</b>              | TRANSITION           |
| <b>CD32</b>               | <b>FUNCTION_BLOCK</b> | <b>SYS.BLINK</b>             | <b>TRUE</b>          |
| CONFIGURATION             | <b>GET_DATE_TIME</b>  | <b>SYS.CLOCK</b>             | TYPE                 |
| <b>CONTINUE</b>           | <b>GET_TIME</b>       | <b>SYS.CLOCKWEEK</b>         | <b>UDINT</b>         |
| DATE                      | <b>IF</b>             | <b>SYS.COMPARE_DATE_TIME</b> | <b>UDINT_TO_BOOL</b> |
| <b>DATE_AND_TIME</b>      | INITIAL_STEP          | <b>SYS.COS</b>               | <b>UDINT_TO_DT</b>   |
| <b>DC32</b>               | INT                   | <b>SYS.CT</b>                | <b>UDINT_TO_REAL</b> |
| DINT                      | LINT                  | <b>SYS.CTN</b>               | <b>UDINT_TO_TIME</b> |
| <b>DO</b>                 | LREAL                 | <b>SYS.CTU</b>               | UINT                 |
| <b>DT</b>                 | LWORD                 | <b>SYS.DTRIG</b>             | ULINT                |
| <b>DT_TO_UDINT</b>        | <b>MOD</b>            | <b>SYS.EXP</b>               | <b>UNTIL</b>         |
| DWORD                     | NON_RETAIN            | <b>SYS.FACT</b>              | USINT                |
| <b>ELSE</b>               | <b>NOT</b>            | <b>SYS.FMAX</b>              | <b>VAR</b>           |
| <b>ELSIF</b>              | <b>OF</b>             | <b>SYS.FMIN</b>              | VAR_ACCESS           |
| EN                        | ON                    | <b>SYS.FTRIG</b>             | VAR_CONFIG           |
| <b>END</b>                | <b>OR</b>             | <b>SYS.IS_LEAP_YEAR</b>      | VAR_EXTERNAL         |
| END_ACTION                | <b>POW</b>            | <b>SYS.LG</b>                | VAR_GLOBAL           |
| <b>END_CASE</b>           | PROGRAM               | <b>SYS.LN</b>                | VAR_IN_OUT           |
| END_CONFIGURATION         | R_EDGE                | <b>SYS.LOG</b>               | <b>VAR_INPUT</b>     |
| <b>END_FOR</b>            | READ_ONLY             | <b>SYS.MAX</b>               | <b>VAR_OUTPUT</b>    |
| <b>END_FUNCTION</b>       | READ_WRITE            | <b>SYS.MIN</b>               | VAR_TEMP             |
| <b>END_FUNCTION_BLOCK</b> | <b>REAL</b>           | <b>SYS.RS</b>                | <b>WHILE</b>         |

|              |               |           |         |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|---------|
| END_IF       | REAL_TO_BOOL  | SYS.RTRIG | WITH    |
| END_REPEAT   | REAL_TO_UDINT | SYS.SIN   | WORD    |
| END_RESOURCE | REPEAT        | SYS.SQRT  | WSTRING |
| END_STEP     | RESOURCE      | SYS.SR    | XOR     |
| END_STRUCT   | RETAIN        | SYS.TAN   |         |

### 12.3.2 Arrays

#### Array declaration syntax

The following syntax is used to declare an array:

```
<Array name>:[Index1..IndexN] OF <ELEMENT TYPE>:=[Default value of the element1,
Default value of the element2, Default value of the elementN];
```

Where:

Index1 – number of the first element of the array;

IndexN – number of the last element of the array.

Rules for indices:

- The value of IndexN cannot be less than or equal to the value of Index1.
- Indices must be of integer type only and cannot take negative values.

Examples of array declaration:

```
Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT; //declaration of an array consisting of
two elements
```

UDINT type

```
Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT :=[1, 5]; //initialization of array elements
when declaring an array
```

```
Mass1: ARRAY[0] OF UDINT :=[1, 5]; /error: array dimension must be
specified as <uint>...<uint>
```

```
Mass1: ARRAY[] OF UDINT; //error: array dimension must be specified in
<uint>...<uint>
```

Errors when declaring an array:

```
Mass1: ARRAY[0] OF UDINT :=[1, 5]; //error: array dimension
must be specified as <integer>...<integer>
```

```
Mass1: ARRAY[] OF UDINT; //error: array dimension
must be specified as <integer>...<integer>
```

#### Syntax for accessing array elements

To access array elements, use the following syntax:

```
<Array name>[Index1];
```

Examples of working with array elements:

```
VAR:=Mass1[5]; //assigning the value from the fifth element
of the array to the variable Var
```

```
VAR:=Mass1[5]+5*2;
```

```
VAR:=UDINT_TO_BOOL(Mass1[5]); //assigning the converted
value to the variable Var
```

from the five element

```
VAR:=(Mass1[i]); //assigning the value from the i element
of the array to the variable Var,
where i is a variable (local/input)
```

The following rules apply when working with arrays:

1. An array can only be one-dimensional.
2. The number of array elements is limited to 32768 elements.
3. Array elements can be of the following types: BOOL, UDINT, FLOAT, TIME, and DT.
4. Array support for functions:
  - A function can return a variable of the Array data type.

Example of a function that returns an array:

```
//function MyFunction will return a variable of Array type
function MyFunction: ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
    var_input
        //input variables of array type
        Mass1 : ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
    end_var
        //forming the return array in the function body
MyFunction [0]:= Mass1 [0];
MyFunction [1]:= Mass1 [1];
end_function
```

- Declaring an array-type variable within a function occurs in the VAR...END\_VAR and/or VAR\_INPUT...END\_VAR sections.

Example of declaring array-type variables in different sections of a function:

```
//function MyFunction will return a variable of array type
function MyFunction: ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
    var_input
        //input variables of array type
        Mass1 : ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
    end_var
    var
        //local variables of array type
        Mass2 : ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
    end_var
end_function
```

For function blocks:

- Declaring an array-type variable in an FB occurs in the VAR...END\_VAR, VAR\_INPUT...END\_VAR, and/or VAR\_OUTPUT...END\_VAR sections.

```
function_block MyFunctionblock
    var_input
        //declaration of an input variable of array type
        Mass1 : ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
    end_var
    var_output
```

```

//declaration of an output variable of array type
Mass2 : ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
end_var
//declaration of a local variable of array type
Mass3 : ARRAY [0..1] OF UDINT ;
end_var
end_function_block

```

5. The sequence of default values for array elements is enclosed in square brackets.
6. When initializing array elements, the number of default values must match the number of array elements.

Example:

```

VAR
    Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT:=[1,5]; //no error
    Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT:=[1,5,7]; //error
    Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT:=[1]; //error
END_VAR

```

Limitations when working with arrays:

1. Bitwise access to array elements is not supported.

Example:

```

Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT:=[1,5];
Mass1[1].1 : = TRUE; //error

```

2. Repeating a sequence of array elements is not supported.

Example:

```

Mass1: ARRAY[0..1] OF UDINT:=[1,5,7(2)]; //where (2) stands
for repetition
sequences [1, 2, 7] 2 times)

```

3. Repeating a sequence of array elements is not supported.

Example:

```

Mass1[1, 5]:=1; //error: assigning value 1 to first and fifth
array elements

```

Example of using arrays.

## 12.4 Language structures

ST language structures include:

- arithmetic operations
- bit operations
- data type conversion operations
- logical operations
- relational operations
- assignment operation
- IF – ELSIF – ELSE statement
- CASE statement
- RETURN statement
- FOR statement

- WHILE statement
- REPEAT – UNTIL statement

**NOTE**

When writing expressions, it is permissible to use variables (input, output and local) and constants.

**12.4.1 Operations****12.4.1.1 Arithmetic operations**

| Operation      | Operator                                 | Data types              | Example                |
|----------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| addition       | +                                        | IN, OUT: UDINT/<br>REAL | OUT := IN1 + IN2 + ... |
| multiplication | *                                        |                         | OUT := IN1 * IN2 * ... |
| subtraction    | -                                        |                         | OUT := IN1 - IN2       |
| division       | /                                        |                         | OUT := IN1 / IN2       |
| modulo         | MOD                                      |                         | OUT := IN1 MOD IN2     |
| absolute value | ABS (IN)                                 | IN, OUT: REAL           | OUT := ABS (IN1)       |
| exponentiation | POW (IN, N)<br>IN – base<br>N – exponent | IN, N, OUT: REAL        | OUT := POW (IN1, N)    |

The result of the arithmetic operation is the mathematical result of the expression.

The priority of an operation determines the order of its execution in the expression. Parentheses are allowed to define the calculation order in arithmetic expressions.

**12.4.1.2 Bit operations**

| Operation                                              | Operator    | Data types                 | Example             |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| Bitwise shift left                                     | SHL (IN, N) | IN, OUT: UDINT<br>N: 1..32 | OUT := SHL (IN1, N) |
| Bitwise shift right                                    | SHR (IN, N) |                            | OUT := SHR (IN1, N) |
| Decoder.<br>Converts binary code<br>to positional code | DC32 (IN)   | IN, OUT: UDINT             | OUT := DC32 (IN1)   |
| Encoder<br>Converts positional<br>code to binary code  | CD32 (IN)   | IN, OUT: UDINT             | OUT := CD32 (IN1)   |

**12.4.1.3 Data type conversion operations**

| Operation     | Operator              | Data types             | Example                   |
|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| UDINT to REAL | UDINT_TO_REAL<br>(IN) | IN: UDINT<br>OUT: REAL | OUT := UDINT_TO_REAL (IN) |
| UDINT to BOOL | UDINT_TO_BOOL<br>(IN) | IN: UDINT<br>OUT: BOOL | OUT := UDINT_TO_BOOL (IN) |
| UDINT to TIME | UDINT_TO_TIME (IN)    | IN: UDINT<br>OUT: TIME | OUT := UDINT_TO_TIME (IN) |
| UDINT to DT   | UDINT_TO_DT (IN)      | IN: UDINT<br>OUT: DT   | OUT := UDINT_TO_DT (IN)   |

| Operation     | Operator           | Data types             | Example                   |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| REAL to UDINT | REAL_TO_UDINT (IN) | IN: REAL<br>OUT: UDINT | OUT := REAL_TO_UDINT (IN) |
| REAL to BOOL  | REAL_TO_BOOL (IN)  | IN: REAL<br>OUT: BOOL  | OUT := REAL_TO_BOOL (IN)  |
| BOOL to REAL  | BOOL_TO_REAL (IN)  | IN: BOOL<br>OUT: REAL  | OUT := BOOL_TO_REAL (IN)  |
| BOOL to UDINT | BOOL_TO_UDINT (IN) | IN: BOOL<br>OUT: UDINT | OUT := BOOL_TO_UDINT (IN) |
| TIME to UDINT | TIME_TO_UDINT (IN) | IN: TIME<br>OUT: UDINT | OUT := TIME_TO_UDINT (IN) |
| DT to UDINT   | DT_TO_UDINT (IN)   | IN: DT<br>OUT: UDINT   | OUT := DT_TO_UDINT (IN)   |

#### 12.4.1.4 Logical operations

| Operation                           | Operator | Data type     | Example                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| Logical negation                    | NOT      | IN, OUT: BOOL | OUT := NOT IN1                         |
| Boolean multiplication              | AND<br>& |               | OUT := IN1 AND IN2<br>OUT := IN1 & IN2 |
| Boolean addition                    | OR       |               | OUT := IN1 OR IN2                      |
| logical (bitwise)<br>"exclusive OR" | XOR      |               | OUT := IN1 XOR IN2                     |

#### 12.4.1.5 Relational operations

| Operation                | Operator | Data types                  | Example           |
|--------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| greater than             | >        | IN: UDINT/REAL<br>OUT: BOOL | OUT := IN1 > IN2  |
| greater than or equal to | >=       |                             | OUT := IN1 >= IN2 |
| equal to                 | =        |                             | OUT := IN1 = IN2  |
| less than or equal to    | <=       |                             | OUT := IN1 <= IN2 |
| less than                | <        |                             | OUT := IN1 < IN2  |
| not equal to             | <>       |                             | OUT := IN1 <> IN2 |

#### 12.4.1.6 Operation priorities



##### NOTE

The operations in the table are ordered **from highest to lowest priority**. The higher the priority of an operation, the sooner it is executed.

| Operation                             | Operator                              |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Brackets                              | (expression)                          |
| Calling a function and function block | Example: fb1();<br>function1 := ... ; |
| Bit operations                        |                                       |
| Unary minus                           | –                                     |

| Operation                                   | Operator  |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Logical negation                            | NOT       |
| Exponentiation                              | POW       |
| Multiplication                              | *         |
| Division                                    | /         |
| Modulo                                      | MOD       |
| Addition                                    | +         |
| Subtraction                                 | -         |
| Relational operations                       | >,<,<=,>= |
| Equal to                                    | =         |
| Not equal to                                | <>        |
| Conjunction<br>Logical multiplication "AND" | &<br>AND  |
| Exclusive OR                                | XOR       |
| Disjunction<br>Logical addition "OR"        | OR        |

#### 12.4.2 Assignment operation

The paired symbol ":= " is used to indicate assignment. The right and left sides of the expression must contain operands of the same type (automatic type casting is not provided). On the left side of the expression (receiving side) only a variable can be used. The right side can contain an expression or a constant.

#### 12.4.3 IF statement

The **IF** operator allows you to test one or more conditions, and, if at least one of the conditions is true, execute the specified expression conditions. After executing the expressions, the operator exits the statement – that is, the remaining conditions are no longer checked.

Let's consider the operator's work using the example of signaling that the temperature value exceeds the permissible limits:

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK fb //function block name

VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
    rTemp : REAL;
END_VAR

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    xHigh : BOOL;
    xLow : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR //declaration of local variables
    rHighTemp : REAL := 20;
    rLowTemp : REAL := 10;
END_VAR
```

```
//coding area

IF rTemp > rHighTemp THEN
    xHigh := TRUE;
ELSIF rTemp < rLowTemp THEN
    xLow := TRUE;
ELSE
    xHigh := FALSE;
    xLow := FALSE;
END_IF
```

#### END\_FUNCTION\_BLOCK

If the condition in the **IF** statement is true (the value of the variable **rTemp** is greater than **rHighTemp**), then the variable **xHigh** will be assigned the value **TRUE** and the statement will exit the statement (the next condition will not be checked). If the condition is not met, then the next condition placed in the nested **ELSIF** statement will be checked. If the condition in **ELSIF** is satisfied (the value of the variable **rTemp** is less than **rLowTemp**), then the variable **xLow** will be assigned the value **TRUE** and the statement will exit the statement (the next condition will not be checked). If none of the conditions in **IF** and **ELSIF** are met (that is, the temperature value is within acceptable limits), then the expressions placed in the nested **ELSE** statement will be executed – the assignment of value **FALSE** to the **xHigh** and **xLow** variables.

The use of nested **ELSIF** and **ELSE** statements is optional. An arbitrary number of **ELSIF** statements can be placed inside an **IF** statement.

The construction allows nesting, that is, inside one **IF** there can be another one, etc. Also inside the **IF** operator, loops and the **CASE** operator can be used.

#### 12.4.4 CASE statement

The **CASE** operator allows you to compare the value of a given integer variable (selector) with a set of constants or integer values (labels), and if there is a match, execute the expressions specified for this label. After executing the expressions, the operator exits the statement.

**Example:**

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK fb1 //function block name

VAR_INPUT //declaratio of input variables
    udiSel : UDINT;
END_VAR

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    xOut1 : BOOL;
    xOut2 : BOOL;
    xOut3 : BOOL;
    xOut4 : BOOL;
END_VAR

//coding area

xOut1 := FALSE;
xOut2 := FALSE;
xOut3 := FALSE;
```

```

xOut4 := FALSE;

CASE udiSel OF
    0:
        xOut1 := TRUE;
    1..3:
        xOut2 := TRUE;
    4, 6:
        xOut3 := TRUE;
ELSE
    xOut4 := TRUE;
END_CASE

```

#### END\_FUNCTION\_BLOCK

If the **udiSel** value is:

- Equal to 0, then **xOut1** will take the value **TRUE**;
- Falling into the range 1..3, then **xOut2** will take the value **TRUE**;
- Equal to 4 or 6, then **xOut3** will take the value **TRUE**;
- Not falling into any of the specified values, then **xOut4** will take the value **TRUE**;

As can be seen from the example, a label can include several values, listed, separated by commas “4, 6”, or the range “1..3”. In this case, values of one of the labels should not coincide with the values of the others. Also, when specifying a range of values, the beginning of the range must be less than its end.

The nested **ELSE** statement is optional; the expressions placed in it are executed if the selector value does not match any of the labels.

The actions provided to handle each of the **CASE** statement cases can use loops, **IF** statements, and **CASE** statements.

#### 12.4.5 RETURN statement

The **RETURN** statement allows you to exit a program object.

Usage example:

```

IF xDone THEN
    RETURN;
END_IF;

```

```

udiCounter := udiCounter + 1;

```

If the variable **xDone** takes the value **TRUE**, then the expression “**udiCounter := udiCounter + 1**” will not be executed will be (like everything that will be located below in the body of the program).

#### 12.4.6 FOR statement

The **FOR** operator is used to organize a loop with a predetermined number of iterations. It is usually used for operations on arrays of data.

The **IF** and **CASE** operators, as well as other loop operators, can be used inside a loop.

As an example, consider the implementation of bubble sort from smallest to largest:

```

FUNCTION_BLOCK MaxI_MinI
//Maximum and minimum numbers using bubble sort from smallest to largest

VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
    udiX1, udiX2, udiX3, udiX4, udiX5 : UDINT;

```

```

//Adding the required number of input variables and defining the data type
END_VAR

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    udiMaxI, udiMinI : UDINT;
END_VAR

VAR //declaration of local variables
    udiI, udiJ, udiN, udiK : UDINT;
    audiX : ARRAY [1..5] OF UDINT;
//Specifies the range of the array and the data type of the array
END_VAR

//coding area
//array declaration
audiX[1] := udiX1;
audiX[2] := udiX2;
audiX[3] := udiX3;
audiX[4] := udiX4;
audiX[5] := udiX5;
udiN := 5; // the number of numbers to sort is specified (array size)

FOR udiI := 1 TO udiN-1 DO
    FOR udiJ := 1 TO udiN-udiI DO
        IF audiX[udiJ] > audiX[udiJ+1] THEN
            udiK := audiX[udiJ];
            audiX[udiJ] := audiX[udiJ+1];
            audiX[udiJ+1] := udiK;
        END_IF;
    END_FOR;
END_FOR;

udiMaxI := audiX[udiN]; //the last (maximum) number of the array is displayed
udiMinI := audiX[1]; //the first (minimum) number of the array is displayed

```

#### END\_FUNCTION\_BLOCK

The **udiI** variable is called the loop iterator (counter). This variable must be a signed integer type (**UDINT**). After each execution of the loop body, the iterator value changes - by default to **+1**. The user can set the iterator "step" using the nested **BY** operator. After this, the transition immediately occurs to the next iteration - that is, the entire cycle is executed "from beginning to end". The structure will look like this:

```

// udiI will take the values 1, 4, 7, 10, etc.
FOR udiI := 1 TO udiN-1 BY 3 DO
    .. // loop code
END_FOR

```

The loop iterator (counter), its start and end values, and its increment are integer values. They are calculated before entering the loop, and changing the values of the variables included in any of these expressions will not change the number of iterations.

You can exit a loop early using the **EXIT** operator. Example structure:

```
FOR udiI := 1 TO udiN-1 DO
    IF audiX[2] > 100 THEN
        EXIT;
    ELSE
        .. // loop code
    END_IF
END_FOR
```

You can skip a loop step using the **CONTINUE** operator.

```
FOR udiI := 1 TO udiN-1 DO
    IF udiI = 3 THEN
        CONTINUE;
    ELSE
        .. // loop code
    END_IF
END_FOR
```

#### 12.4.7 WHILE statement

The **WHILE** operator is used to create a loop with an unknown number of iterations. The loop will terminate if the condition being tested returns **FALSE**. In this case, the condition is checked **BEFORE** the expression is executed (a loop with a precondition). Thus, if the condition immediately returns **FALSE**, then the loop will not be executed even once.

The **IF** and **CASE** operators, as well as other loop operators, can be used inside a loop.

**Example**

```
WHILE rVar < 100 DO
    rVar := rVar + 1;
END_WHILE
```

The result of executing this loop (with the initial value of the variable **rVar** := 10) will be the number 100.

You can exit a loop early using the **EXIT** statement.

You can skip a loop step using the **CONTINUE** operator.

#### 12.4.8 REPEAT UNTIL statement

The **REPEAT** statement is used to create a loop with an unknown number of iterations. The loop will terminate if the condition being tested returns **TRUE**. In this case, the condition is checked **AFTER** the expression is executed (a loop with a postcondition). Thus, if the condition immediately returns **TRUE**, then the loop will be executed once.

The **IF** and **CASE** operators, as well as other loop operators, can be used inside a loop.

**Example:**

```
REPEAT
    IF rVar > 100 THEN
        EXIT;
    END_IF;
    rVar := rVar + 1;
UNTIL rVar > 180
END_REPEAT;
```

The result of executing this loop (with the initial value of the variable **rVar** := 10) will be the number 101.

To exit a loop early, you can use the **EXIT** operator.

You can skip a loop step using the **CONTINUE** operator.

## 12.5 System functions

The ST editor supports the following system functions:

- Date and Time functions
- Mathematical functions
- Logarithmic functions
- Trigonometric functions

### 12.5.1 Date and Time functions

- GET\_TIME function
- GET\_DATE\_TIME function
- SYS.COMPARE\_DATE\_TIME function
- SYS.IS\_LEAP\_YEAR function

#### 12.5.1.1 GET\_TIME function

The **GET\_TIME** function returns a **TIME** type value (4 bytes) containing the time elapsed from the moment the device was last turned on, in milliseconds.

##### Example

```
VAR
    Time_1 : TIME := T#0ms;
    Time_2 : TIME := T#0ms;
    Q :      BOOL := FALSE;
END_VAR

IF Time_1 = T#0ms THEN
    Time_1 := GET_TIME();
END_IF

Time_2 := GET_TIME();

IF (Time_2 - Time_1) >= T#1000ms THEN
    Q := NOT Q;
    Time_1 := T#0ms;
    Time_2 := T#0ms;
END_IF
```

#### 12.5.1.2 GET\_DATE\_TIME function

The **GET\_DATE\_TIME** function returns a **DT** type value (4 bytes) containing real time clock data, in seconds from 00:00:00 01/01/2000, taking into account the time zone set in the device.

##### Example

```
VAR
    Ton_UDINT : UDINT;
    Ton_DT : DT;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Ton_DT := GET_DATE_TIME();
```

```
Ton_UDINT := DT_TO_UDINT(Ton_DT);
```

### 12.5.1.3 SYS.COMPARE\_DATE\_TIME function

The **SYS.COMPARE\_DATE\_TIME** function compares two UDINT values given as input using a given date/time mask and returns a UDINT value that evaluates to:

- 1 – value 1 is greater than value 2
- 2 – value 1 is less than value 2
- 0 – value 1 is equal to value 2

The comparison is made by the number of seconds starting from 00:00:00 01.01.2000

#### Example

```
FUNCTION udiCompare: UDINT;
```

```
VAR_INPUT
```

```
    udiValue1: UDINT; //value 1
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR
```

```
    udiValue2 : UDINT; //value 2
```

```
    udiMask : UDINT := 63; //date/time mask
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
    udiValue2 := DT_TO_UDINT (GET_DATE_TIME ());
```

```
    udiCompare := SYS.COMPARE_DATE_TIME (udiValue1, udiValue2, udiMask);
```

```
END_FUNCTION
```

Mask = 63 (0b111111) – all bits are used:

- 0 bit – if 1, then seconds are used.
- 1 bit – if 1, then minutes are used.
- 2 bits – if 1, then the hours are used.
- 3 bits – if 1, then days are used.
- 4 bits – if 1, then months are used.
- 5 bits – if 1, then years are used.

### 12.5.1.4 SYS.IS\_LEAP\_YEAR function

The **SYS.IS\_LEAP\_YEAR** function returns a BOOL value containing data on whether the UDINT number given as an input corresponds to a leap year (1 - leap year, 0 - not).

#### Example

```
FUNCTION xLeapYear: BOOL; //function name and output data type
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    udiYear : UDINT; //year being checked
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
xLeapYear := SYS.IS_LEAP_YEAR (udiYear);
```

```
END_FUNCTION
```

### 12.5.2 Mathematical functions

- Mathematical constants
- MIN/FMIN
- MAX/FMAX
- SQRT
- EXP
- FACT

#### 12.5.2.1 Mathematical constants (CONST.\*)

| Name          | Value     | Description             |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| CONST.PI      | 3.1415927 | the number Pi ( $\pi$ ) |
| CONST.E       | 2.7182817 | Euler number (e)        |
| CONST.POS_INF | $+\infty$ | positive infinity       |
| CONST.NEG_INF | $-\infty$ | negative infinity       |

#### 12.5.2.2 MIN/FMIN

The **MIN/FMIN** functions return the smallest value of two input variables.

Input variables and a return value for the function:

- **MIN** — for type UDINT (both arguments and a result)
- **FMIN** — for type REAL (both arguments and a result)

##### Example 1

```
VAR
```

```
Var_1: UDINT;  
Var_2: UDINT := 7;  
Var_3: UDINT := 5;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.MIN(Var_2, Var_3); // return value is 5
```

##### Example 2

```
VAR
```

```
Var_1: REAL;  
Var_2: REAL := 7.1;  
Var_3: REAL := 8.2;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.FMIN(Var_2, Var_3); // return value is 7.1
```

#### 12.5.2.3 MAX/FMAX

The **MAX/FMAX** functions return the largest value of two input variables.

Input variables and a return value for the function:

- **MAX** — for type UDINT (both arguments and a result)
- **FMAX** — for type REAL (both arguments and a result)

##### Example 1

```
VAR
```

```
    Var_1: UDINT;  
    Var_2: UDINT := 7;  
    Var_3: UDINT := 8;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.MAX(Var_2, Var_3); // return value is 8
```

### Example 2

```
VAR
```

```
    Var_1: REAL;  
    Var_2: REAL := 7.5;  
    Var_3: REAL := 5.2;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.FMAX(Var_2, Var_3); // return value is 7.5
```

#### 12.5.2.4 SQRT

The **SQRT** function returns the square root of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

##### Example

```
VAR
```

```
    Var_1: REAL;  
    Var_2: REAL := 4.0;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.SQRT(Var_2); // return value is 2.0
```

#### 12.5.2.5 EXP

The **EXP** function returns the exponent value raised to the power of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

##### Example

```
VAR
```

```
    Var_1: REAL;  
    Var_2: REAL := 1.0;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.EXP(Var_2); // return value is 2.7182817
```

#### 12.5.2.6 FACT

The **FACT** function returns the factorial of the input number. The function returns the correct values when the input variable value is within the range from 0 to 12. In all other cases, the function returns 0.

An input variable and a return value of type UDINT.

##### Example

```
VAR
```

```
    Var_1: UDINT;  
    Var_2: UDINT := 5;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.FACT(Var_2); // return value is 120
```

## 12.5.3 Logarithmic functions

- LOG
- LG
- LN

## 12.5.3.1 LOG

The **LOG** function returns the logarithm of the input number with an arbitrary base.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

| Base of logarithm | Number of logarithm | Result   |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------|
| < 0               | Any                 | NaN*     |
| NaN               | 1                   | 0        |
| + inf**           | 0                   | NaN      |
| + inf             | > 0                 | 0        |
| + inf             | + inf               | NaN      |
| 0                 | > 0, ≠ 1            | 0        |
| 0                 | 0                   | NaN      |
| 0                 | + inf               | NaN      |
| 0                 | 1                   | 0        |
| 1                 | Any                 | NaN      |
| NaN               | NaN                 | NaN      |
| > 0, ≠ 1          | > 0                 | Number   |
| > 0, ≠ 1          | 0                   | - inf*** |
| > 0, ≠ 1          | + inf               | + inf    |

\*NaN (Not-a-Number) — not a number

\*\*+ inf (infinity) — positive infinity

\*\*\*- inf (infinity) — negative infinity

**Example**

VAR

```

Var_1: REAL;
Var_2: REAL := 2; // Base of logarithm
Var_3: REAL := 8; // Number of logarithm

```

END\_VAR

```

Var_1 := SYS.LOG(Var_2, Var_3); // return value is 3

```

**12.5.3.2 LG**

The **LG** function returns the decimal logarithm of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

| Number of logarithm | Result |
|---------------------|--------|
| 0                   | - inf* |
| < 0                 | NaN**  |
| NaN                 | NaN    |
| + inf***            | + inf  |

\*- inf (infinity) — negative infinity

\*\*NaN (Not-a-Number) — not a number

\*\*\*+ inf (infinity) — positive infinity

**Example**

VAR

```

Var_1: REAL;
Var_2: REAL := 10;

```

END\_VAR

```

Var_1 := SYS.LG(Var_2); // return value is 1

```

**12.5.3.3 LN**

The **LN** function returns the natural logarithm of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

| Number of logarithm | Result |
|---------------------|--------|
| 0                   | - inf* |
| < 0                 | NaN**  |
| NaN                 | NaN    |
| + inf***            | + inf  |

\*- inf (infinity) — negative infinity

\*\*NaN (Not-a-Number) — not a number

\*\*\*+ inf (infinity) — positive infinity

**Example**

VAR

```

Var_1: REAL;
Var_2: REAL := 2.718281;

```

END\_VAR

```

Var_1 := SYS.LN(Var_2); // return value is ~1

```

#### 12.5.4 Trigonometric functions

- SIN
- COS
- TAN
- ASIN
- ACOS
- ATAN

##### 12.5.4.1 SIN

The **SIN** function returns the sin (sine) value of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

**Example**

```
VAR
    Var_1: REAL;
    Var_2: REAL := 1.5708; // in radians
END_VAR
Var_1 := SYS.SIN(Var_2); // return value is 1
```

##### 12.5.4.2 COS

The **COS** function returns the cos (cosine) value of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

**Example**

```
VAR
    Var_1: REAL;
    Var_2: REAL := 1.0472; // in radians
END_VAR
Var_1 := SYS.COS(Var_2); // return value is 0.49999794
```

##### 12.5.4.3 TAN

The **TAN** function returns the value of the tan (tangent) of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

**Example**

```
VAR
    Var_1: REAL;
    Var_2: REAL := 1.3734; // in radians
END_VAR
Var_1 := SYS.TAN(Var_2); // return value is 4.999982
```

##### 12.5.4.4 ASIN

The **ASIN** function returns the value of the arcsin (arcsine) of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

**Example**

```
VAR
    Var_1: REAL;
    Var_2: REAL := 0.5;
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.ASIN(Var_2); // return value is 0.52359825
```

**NOTE**

The relative error of the function result is 1e-5.

**12.5.4.5 ACOS**

The **ACOS** function returns the arccos (arccosine) value of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

**Example**

```
VAR
```

```
Var_1: REAL;
Var_2: REAL := 0.5;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.ACOS(Var_2); // return value is 1.047198
```

**12.5.4.6 ATAN**

The **ATAN** function returns the arctg (arctangent) value of the input number.  
An input variable and a return value of type REAL.

**Example**

```
VAR
```

```
Var_1: REAL;
Var_2: REAL := 1.73205; // 3^(1/2)
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
Var_1 := SYS.ATAN(Var_2); // return value is 1.0471973
```

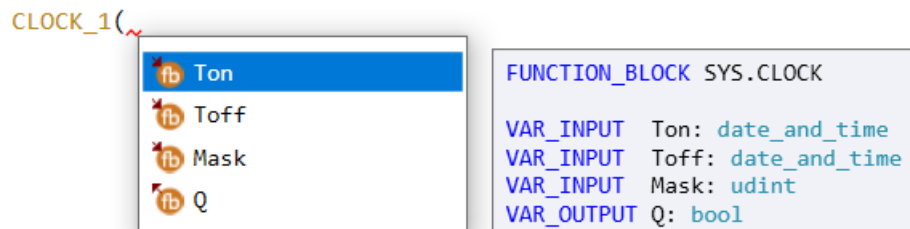
**12.6 System Function Blocks**

The ST editor supports the following system function blocks:

- Triggers
- Timers
- Generators
- Counters

The use of system function blocks in other program elements is similar to using custom function blocks.

For each system function block, the editor provides a hint on how to use it.

**12.6.1 Triggers**

- RS trigger reset dominant (SYS.RS)
- SR trigger set dominant (SYS.SR)
- Rising edge (SYS.RTRIG)
- Falling edge (SYS.FTRIG)
- D-trigger (SYS.DTRIG)

**12.6.1.1 RS trigger reset dominant (SYS.RS)**

The RS trigger reset dominant (SYS.RS) is used to switch with state fixation during the receipt of short pulses at the corresponding input. The output Q will show HIGH level signal at the edge of the signal from the input S.

| Designation    | Data type | Description    |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                |
| S              | BOOL      | SET input      |
| R              | BOOL      | RESET input    |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                |
| Q              | BOOL      | Trigger output |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK RS_trigger //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    R_in : BOOL;
```

```
    S_in : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR //declaration of local variables
```

```
    RS_1: SYS.RS;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
    RS_1(R := R_in, S := S_in, Q => Q_out);
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

To prevent simultaneous receipt of signals at both inputs, the signal of input R takes priority.

**12.6.1.2 SR trigger set dominant (SYS.SR)**

The SR trigger set dominant (SYS.SR) is used to switch with state fixation during the receipt of short pulses at the corresponding input. The output Q will show HIGH level at the edge of the signal from the input S.

| Designation    | Data type | Description    |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                |
| S              | BOOL      | SET input      |
| R              | BOOL      | RESET input    |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                |
| Q              | BOOL      | Trigger output |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK SR_trigger //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    S_in : BOOL;
```

```
    R_in : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR //declaration of local variables
```

```
    SR_1: SYS.SR;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
SR_1(S := S_in, R := R_in, Q => Q_out);
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

To prevent simultaneous receipt of signals at both inputs, the signal of input S takes priority.

### 12.6.1.3 Rising edge (SYS.RTRIG)

The rising edge (SYS.RTRIG) is used when it is necessary to have a reaction to a change in the state of a digital input signal. Output Q generates a single pulse on the rising edge of the input I.

| Designation   | Data type | Description    |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| <b>Input</b>  |           |                |
| I             | BOOL      | Trigger input  |
| <b>Output</b> |           |                |
| Q             | BOOL      | Trigger output |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK R_trigger //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    RT_in : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    RT_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR //declaration of local variables
```

```
    RTrig_1: SYS.RTRIG;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area

RTrig_1(I := RT_in, Q => RT_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

#### 12.6.1.4 Falling edge (SYS.FTRIG)

The falling edge (SYS.FTRIG) is used when it is necessary to have a reaction to a change in the state of a digital input signal. Output Q generates a single pulse on the leading edge of the input I.

| Designation   | Data type | Description    |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| <b>Input</b>  |           |                |
| I             | BOOL      | Trigger input  |
| <b>Output</b> |           |                |
| Q             | BOOL      | Trigger output |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK F_trigger //Function block name

VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables

    FT_in : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    FT_out : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR //declaration of local variables
    FTrig_1: SYS.FTRIG;
END_VAR

//code area

FTrig_1(I := FT_in, Q => FT_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

#### 12.6.1.5 D-trigger (SYS.DTRIG)

D-trigger (SYS.DTRIG) is used to generate a pulse to turn on the output for the time interval of the pulse at the D input. Output interval synchronizes with the clock frequency at the C input.

At the Q trigger output, a HIGH level signal will appear on the front of the clock pulses at the C input if there is a HIGH level signal at the D input. Output Q returns to the LOW level signal on the front of the clock pulses at the C input if there is a HIGH level signal at the D input.

Input S forces output Q to a HIGH level state.

Input R is the priority input and sets output Q to LOW level.

| Designation    | Data type | Description     |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                 |
| S              | BOOL      | SET input       |
| D              | BOOL      | Trigger input   |
| C              | BOOI      | Clock frequency |
| R              | BOOL      | RESET input     |
| <b>Oupputs</b> |           |                 |
| Q              | BOOL      | Trigger output  |

```

FUNCTION_BLOCK D_trigger //Function block name

    VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
        S_in : BOOL;
        D_in : BOOL;
        C_in : BOOI;
        R_in : BOOL;
    END_VAR

    VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
        Q_out : BOOL;
    END_VAR

    VAR //declaration of local variables
        DTrig_1: SYS.DTRIG;
    END_VAR

    //code area

    DTrig_1(S := S_in, D := D_in, C := C_in, R := R_in, Q => Q_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

```

### 12.6.2 Timers

- Pulse (SYS.TP)
- ON-delay timer (SYS.TON)
- OFF-delay timer (SYS:TOF)
- Timer (SYS.CLOCK)
- Weekly timer (SYS:CLOCKWEEK)

#### 12.6.2.1 Pulse (SYS.TP)

The pulse (SYS.TP) is used to generate a pulse to turn on the output for a specified time interval. A HIGH level signal appears at the output Q of the block at the edge of the input signal I. After starting, the output Q does not respond to a change in the value of the input signal during the interval T. When the interval T has expired, the output signal is reset to LOW level.

| Designation    | Data type | Description          |
|----------------|-----------|----------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                      |
| I              | BOOL      | Turning on the timer |
| T              | TIME      | Pulse duration       |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                      |
| Q              | BOOL      | Timer output         |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK TP_timer //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR
```

```
    TP_1: SYS.TP;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
TP_1(I := I_in, T := T#1000ms);
```

```
//where ms is milliseconds, s is seconds, m is minutes, h is hours, d is days
```

```
Q_out := TP_1.Q;
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK TP_timer //milliseconds
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
```

```
    T_in : UDINT := 5000; //milliseconds
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR
```

```
    TP_1: SYS.TP;
```

```
    T_time: TIME;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
T_time := UDINT_TO_TIME(T_in);
TP_1(I := I_in, T := T_time, Q => Q_out);
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

### 12.6.2.2 ON-delay timer (SYS.TON)

The ON-delay timer (SYS.TON) is used to delay the signal transmission.. The timer output Q will produce a HIGH level signal with a delay relative to the input signal front I for time more than T and will turn off at the input signal fall.

| Designation    | Data type | Description                  |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                              |
| I              | BOOL      | Timer start (on rising edge) |
| T              | TIME      | Delay on power-on            |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                              |
| Q              | BOOL      | Timer output                 |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK TON_timer //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR
```

```
    TON_1: SYS.TON;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
TON_1(I := I_in, T := T#1000ms);
```

```
//where ms is milliseconds, s is seconds, m is minutes, h is hours, d is days
```

```
Q_out := TON_1.Q;
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK TON_timer //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
```

```
    Ton_in : UDINT := 5000;//milliseconds
```

```
END_VAR
```

```

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    Q_out : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR
    TON_1: SYS.TON;
    Ton_time: TIME;
END_VAR

//code area

Ton_time := UDINT_TO_TIME(Ton_in);
TON_1(I := I_in, T := Ton_time, Q => Q_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

```

### 12.6.2.3 OFF-delay timer (SYS.TOF)

The OFF-delay timer (SYS.TOF) is used to delay the output off. The timer output Q will show a HIGH level signal on the rising edge of the signal at the input I, the countdown of the off-delay time T will start on each falling edge of the input signal. After the input signal is off, the output will show a LOW level signal with a delay of T.

| Designation    | Data type | Description                   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                               |
| I              | BOOL      | Timer start (on falling edge) |
| T              | TIME      | Delay on power-on             |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                               |
| Q              | BOOL      | Timer output                  |

```

FUNCTION_BLOCK TOF_timer //Function block name

VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
    I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
END_VAR

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    Q_out : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR
    TOF_1: SYS.TOF;
END_VAR

//code area

```

```

TOF_1(I := I_in, T := T#1000ms);
//where ms is milliseconds, s is seconds, m is minutes, h is hours, d is days
Q_out := TOF_1.Q;

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

FUNCTION_BLOCK TOF_timer //Function block name

    VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
        I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
        Tof_in : UDINT := 5000; //milliseconds
    END_VAR

    VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
        Q_out : BOOL;
    END_VAR

    VAR
        TOF_1: SYS.TOF;
        Tof_time: TIME;
    END_VAR

    //code area

    Tof_time := UDINT_TO_TIME(Tof_in);
    TOF_1(I := I_in, T := Tof_time, Q => Q_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

```

#### 12.6.2.4 Timer (SYS.CLOCK)

The timer (SYS.CLOCK) is used to generate a pulse to turn on the Q output according to the real-time clock. The output turn-on time  $T_{on}$  and turn-off time  $T_{off}$  are set as timer parameters.

| Designation   | Data type | Description                        |
|---------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b> |           |                                    |
| Ton           | DT        | Turn-on time                       |
| Toff          | DT        | Shutdown time                      |
| Mask          | UDINT     | Selection of quantities to be used |
| <b>Output</b> |           |                                    |
| Q             | BOOL      | Timer output                       |

**NOTE**

Specifying the Mask variable is optional.

If the value of the Mask variable is not specified, the block defaults to a Mask = 63 (0b111111),

Where:

Mask = 63 (0b111111)

0 bit – if 1, then seconds are used

1 bit – if 1, then minutes are used

2 bits – if 1, then the hours is used

3 bits – if 1, then days are used

4 bits – if 1, then months are used

5 bits – if 1, then years are used

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK CLOCK_timer //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    I_in : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR
```

```
    CLOCK_1: SYS.CLOCK;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
CLOCK_1(Ton := DT#2023-09-28-7:20:55, Toff := DT#2023-09-28-12:30:59);
```

```
Q_out := CLOCK_1.Q;
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

### 12.6.2.5 Weekly timer (SYS.CLOCKWEEK)

The weekly timer (SYS.CLOCKWEEK) is used to generate a pulse to turn on the output Q according to the real-time clock, taking into account the days of the week. The time of turning on  $T_{on}$  and turning off  $T_{off}$  from the output Q and the days of the week of operation are set as timer parameters.

| Designation   | Data type | Description                        |
|---------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b> |           |                                    |
| Ton           | DT        | Turn-on time                       |
| Toff          | DT        | Shutdown time                      |
| DayOfWeekMask | UDINT     | Selecting the days to use          |
| DateTimeMask  | UDINT     | Selection of quantities to be used |

| Designation    | Data type | Description  |
|----------------|-----------|--------------|
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |              |
| Q              | BOOL      | Timer output |

**NOTE**

Specifying the DayOfWeekMask and DateTimeMask variables is optional.  
 If the value of the DayOfWeekMask variable is not specified, then the block defaults to a DayOfWeekMask = 127 (0b1111111),  
 If the value of the DateTimeMask variable is not specified, then the block defaults to a DateTimeMask = 63 (0b111111),  
 Where:  
 DayOfWeekMask = 127 (0b1111111)  
 0 bit – if 1, then Mondays are taken into account  
 1 bit – if 1, then Tuesdays are taken into account  
 2 bits – if 1, then Wednesdays are taken into account  
 3 bits – if 1, then Thursdays are taken into account  
 4 bits – if 1, then Fridays are taken into account  
 5 bits – if 1, then Saturdays are taken into account  
 6 bits – if 1, then Sundays are taken into account  
  
 DateTimeMask = 63 (0b111111)  
 0 bit - if 1, then seconds are used  
 1 bit - if 1, then minutes are used  
 2 bits - if 1, then hours are used  
 3 bits - if 1, then days are used  
 4 bits - if 1, then months are used  
 5 bits - if 1, then years are used

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK CLOCKWEEK_timer //Function block name

VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
    I_in : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
    Q_out : BOOL;
END_VAR

VAR
    CLOCKWEEK_1: SYS.CLOCKWEEK;
END_VAR

//code area

CLOCKWEEK_1(Ton := DT#2023-09-28-7:20:55, Toff := DT#2023-09-28-12:30:59);
Q_out := CLOCKWEEK_1.Q;
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

**12.6.3 Generators**

- Pulse generator (SYS.BLINK)

**12.6.3.1 Pulse generator (SYS.BLINK)**

The pulse generator (SYS.BLINK) is used to form rectangular pulses. At the output Q of the generator, pulses are formed with specified parameters of the duration of the on (Th – HIGH level signal) and off (TI – LOW level signal) state for the duration of the control signal at the input I (HIGH level signal).

| Designation    | Data type | Description                |
|----------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                            |
| I              | BOOL      | Work permission            |
| Th             | TIME      | Duration of a logical unit |
| TI             | TIME      | Logical zero duration      |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                            |
| Q              | BOOL      | Generator output           |

```

FUNCTION_BLOCK BLINK_generator //Function block name

    VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
        I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
    END_VAR

    VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
        Q_out : BOOL;
    END_VAR

    VAR
        BLINK_1: SYS.BLINK;
    END_VAR

    //code area

    BLINK_1(I := I_in, Th := T#1000ms, Tl := T#1000ms);
    //where ms is milliseconds, s is seconds, m is minutes, h is hours, d is days

    Q_out := BLINK_1.Q;

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

FUNCTION_BLOCK BLINK_generator //Function block name

    VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
        I_in : BOOL := FALSE;
        Th_in : UDINT := 5000;//milliseconds
        Tl_in : UDINT := 5000;//milliseconds
    END_VAR

    VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables

```

```

        Q_out : BOOL;
    END_VAR

    VAR
        BLINK_1: SYS.BLINK;
        Th_time: TIME;
        Tl_time: TIME;
    END_VAR

    //code area

    Th_time := UDINT_TO_TIME(Th_in);
    Tl_time := UDINT_TO_TIME(Tl_in);
    BLINK_1(I := I_in, Th := Th_time, Tl := Tl_time, Q => Q_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

```

#### 12.6.4 Counters

- Threshold counter with self-reset (SYS.CT)
- Universal counter (SYS.CTN)
- Threshold counter (SYS.CTU)

##### 12.6.4.1 Threshold counter with self-reset (SYS.CT)

The threshold counter with self-reset (SYS.CT) is used to count a specified number of pulses N (input N is the pulse number setting). At the output Q of the counter, a pulse of the HIGH level signal with the duration of the device working cycle (cycle time) will appear if the number of pulses arriving at the input C reaches the set value N.

| Designation    | Data type | Description                                       |
|----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                                                   |
| C              | BOOL      | Counter input                                     |
| N              | UDINT     | Counter setting                                   |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                                                   |
| Q              | BOOL      | Signaling of the setpoint reached (for one cycle) |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK CT_counter //Function block name
```

```

    VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
        C_in : BOOL;
        N_in : UDINT := 10;
    END_VAR

    VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
        Q_out : BOOL;
    END_VAR

    VAR //declaration of local variables

```

```

        CT_1: SYS.CT;
    END_VAR

    //code area

    CT_1(C := C_in, N := N_in, Q => Q_out);

END_FUNCTION_BLOCK

```

#### 12.6.4.2 Universal counter (SYS.CTN)

The universal counter (SYS.CTN) is used for direct and indirect counting. The "direct counting" operation is performed by the rising edge of the pulse at the direct counting input U, which increases the value of the output signal Q. Incoming pulse on the input D ("decrease counting") decrease the value of the output Q. If a logical "1" signal comes to the input R, the output of the counter Q is set to the value of the input N.

| Designation    | Data type | Description                       |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                                   |
| U              | BOOL      | Direct Counting                   |
| D              | BOOL      | Countdown                         |
| R              | BOOL      | Reset the output state to value N |
| N              | UDINT     | Setpoint                          |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                                   |
| Q              | UDINT     | Cumulative value of pulses        |

```

FUNCTION_BLOCK CTN_counter //Function block name

```

```

    VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
        U_in : BOOL;
        D_in : BOOL;
        R_in : BOOL;
        N_in : UDINT := 10;
    END_VAR

    VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
        Q_out : UDINT;
    END_VAR

    VAR //declaration of local variables

        CTN_1: SYS.CTN;
    END_VAR

    //code area

```

```
CTN_1(U := U_in, D := D_in, R := R_in, N := N_in, Q => Q_out);
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```

### 12.6.4.3 Threshold counter (SYS.CTU)

The threshold counter (SYS.CTU) is used to count the number of incoming pulse on the C input. A pulse of HIGH level signal will appear at the Q counter output if the number of incoming pulses on the input reaches the set value at the N input (N is the setpoint).

| Designation    | Data type | Description                   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Inputs</b>  |           |                               |
| U              | BOOL      | Direct Counting               |
| R              | BOOL      | Reset the counter state to 0  |
| N              | UDINT     | Setpoint                      |
| <b>Outputs</b> |           |                               |
| Q              | BOOL      | Signaling of setpoint reached |

```
FUNCTION_BLOCK CTU_counter //Function block name
```

```
VAR_INPUT //declaration of input variables
```

```
    C_in : BOOL;
```

```
    R_in : BOOL;
```

```
    N_in : UDINT := 10;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR_OUTPUT //declaration of output variables
```

```
    Q_out : BOOL;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
VAR //declaration of local variables
```

```
    CTU_1: SYS.CTU;
```

```
END_VAR
```

```
//code area
```

```
CTU_1(C := C_in, R := R_in, N := N_in, Q => Q_out);
```

```
END_FUNCTION_BLOCK
```